1509/038

THE Compleat Horſeman: OR, PERFECT FARRIER.

In TWO PARTS.

ART I. Diſcovering the ſureſt Marks of the Beauty, Goodneſs, Faults, and Imperfections of Horſes; the beſt Method of Breeding and Backing of Colts, making their Mouths; Buying, Dieting, and otherwiſe ordering of Horſes.

he Art of Shoeing, with the ſeveral ſorts of Shoes, adapted to the various defects of Bad Feet, and the preſervation of Good.

he Art of Riding and managing the great Horſe, *&c.*

ART II. Contains the Signs and Cauſes of their Diſeaſes, with the true Method of Curing them.

ritten in *French* by the *Sieur de SOLLEYSELL*, Querry to the late King of FRANCE, and one of the Royal Academy of *Paris*.

Abridged from the Folio done into *Engliſh* by Sir *WILLIAM HOPE*.

th the Addition of ſeveral excellent Receipts, by our beſt Farriers: And Directions to the Buyers and Sellers of Horſes.

The FOURTH EDITION Corrected.

Illuſtrated with ſeveral Copper Plates.

LONDON,

inted for J. WALTHOE, R. WILKIN, J. and J. BONWICKE, S. BIRT, T. WARD and E. WICKSTEED, and T OSBORN. 1729.

THE PREFACE.

OF all the Books of Horſemanſhip yet extant, Mr. SOLLEYSEL's *Compleat Horſeman* is juſtly accounted the beſt. The Reception it met with, not only in the Original *French*, but in the *Engliſh* and other Tranſlations, is ſufficient evidence of its diſtinguiſhing Merit. The Author was a Perſon who made it his buſineſs to improve all the Parts of Horſemanſhip, and ſucceeded ſo well in that Profeſſion, that not only the *French* Court, and the Academies of *Paris*, but even the Perſons of Quality of other Nations, particularly the incomparable Duke of NEWCASTLE, paid him the Deference that was due to the Character of a Maſter in that Way. Till the Eighth Edition of this Book was publiſh'd, the World was miſled by the falſe Opinions and Practices that blind Cuſtom had eſtabliſhed. Remedies were preſcribed by rote, and the Plea of Antiquity ſtifled the proper Preſcriptions. Had a Perſon of leſs Authority than our Author offer'd to withſtand the

Current, the Crowd of opinionative Farriers had been too hard for him: But the Character he bore, the weight of his Reasons, and the certainty of his Experience, were proof against all opposition.

To instance in one or two things: The Custom of *Gartering* for Foundering in the Feet, has been us'd among Farriers time out of Mind; but he makes it appear, that 'tis more prejudicial than serviceable. In like manner, when a Horse is strain'd in the Shoulder, they us'd to tie up the sound Leg to oblige him to make use of the affected one; and if he was strain'd in the Haunch they were wont to make him draw in the Harrows: Now he plainly makes out the Perniciousness of that Custom, which only redoubles the pain of a part that's already oppress'd. Farther, If a Horse vomits Matter at the Nose, they us'd to call it the Glanders, tho' perhaps 'tis nothing but a Cold: And even in the Glanders, they placed the Cure in removing the Kernels, which are only the effect, and not the cause of the Distemper; and then pretended to thwart the course of Nature by repeated Purgation. 'Twere easie to muster up an infinity of such Discoveries which are only owing to the Sieur de Solleysel.

That all Persons may enjoy the Benefit of so useful a Book, we here present the World with an Abridgment of it. Those who grudge the Price of the Original,

are ſcar'd by its length, may here gratifie their Curioſity, without any conſiderable loſs either of Money or Time.

The Firſt Part of this Performance contains the neceſſary Directions for *Buying*, *Keeping*, *Shoeing*, *Bitting*, and *Breeding*, all ſorts of Horſes for any Service whatſoever.

The Second Part contains the Deſcription and Cure of the Diſeaſes incident to Horſes. In regard, the excellency of this Part conſiſts in the Receipts, which are infinitely preferable to all others; we have taken a particular care to make ſuch a Collection as will anſwer all the Diſtempers of Horſes, by what Names ſoever they may be diſtinguiſhed. Where a Diſeaſe retains to another, or is not known in *England*, we paſs ſlightly over it. To multiply the Names of Diſtempers, and the Numbers of Receipts, does more harm than good: A few ſuch Remedies as theſe, if wiſely manag'd, will do more ſervice than all the numerous Preſcriptions of other Authors. 'Tis true ſome of theſe Receipts are very chargeable; but they are always accompany'd with others of an eaſier Purchaſe; beſides, thoſe who keep fine Horſes will not grudge to advance upon the Price, when they are ſure of having a good Medicine. Our Author, who liv'd in a Wine Countrey, commonly preſcribes Wine for a Vehicle: But in this Countrey that affords *Ale*, we may make uſe of it inſtead of *Wine*, in moſt caſes.

In fine, We have left out nothing that was material or uſeful; being directed in that point by a Perſon whoſe Judgment and Experience we could ſafely truſt.

Theſe Two Parts contain the Subſtance of Mr. SOLLEYSEL's *Compleat Horſeman*; to which we have added Two Supplements; one to the Firſt Part, being *A Treatiſe of the Art of Riding*, of which Mr. SOLLEYSEL has little or nothing: And another to the Second, containing an additional deſcription of ſome Diſeaſes, and the Receipts of ſome noted Medicines; both of them collected from the beſt Authors upon thoſe Subjects. Theſe were thought proper to be added, that nothing might be wanting to render this Performance the compleateſt of its kind.

THE

THE

CONTENTS.

OF

PART I.

THE *Introduction.* Page 1

Chap. I. *The Names of the Parts of a Horſe.* ibid.

Chap. II. *How the Parts of a Horſe ſhould be framed.* 4

Chap. III. *How to know a Horſe's Age while he hath Mark.* 14

Chap. IV. *How to know the Age of a Horſe which is paſt Mark, Shell-tooth'd, or Hollow-tooth'd, or whoſe Mark is counterfeited.* 17

Chap. V. *Of the Eyes.* 22

Chap. VI. *A Continuation of the Knowledge of Faults and Imperfections in Horſes, and what is to be obſerv'd in buying them.* 26

Chap. VII. *How to know when a Horſe's Legs are good.* 28

Chap. VIII. *How to know a Horſe's Feet.* 41

Chap. IX. *How to know if a Horſe be well bodied, or have a good Belly.* 47

The Contents.

Chap. X. *How to know when a Horſe's Flanks are altered and out of order.* 49

Chap. XI. *How to know when a Horſe is right planted on his Limbs; and if he Walks or Treads well.* 53

Chap. XII. *How to know if a Horſe's Mouth be good.* 57

Chap. XIII. *How to judge of a Horſe's Vigour and Agility.* 58

Chap. XIV. *After what manner a Man ſhould Mount, and try a Horſe he intends to buy.* 60

Chap. XV. *Of the different Colours of Horſes, with ſome Obſervations that may be drawn from them.* 63

Chap. XVI. *Of White Feet, Stars, Blazes, Feathers.* 66

Chap. XVII. *How to know if a Horſe have a good Appetite, or be ſubject to the Tick.* 68

Chap. XVIII. *Directions for preſerving Horſes ſound upon Travel.* 70

Chap. XIX. *Directions for preſerving Horſes after a Journey.* 78

Chap. XX. *How to recover Horſes which are haraſs'd and lean, after a long Journey.* 80

Chap. XXI. *Of the Art of Shoeing, or, The true and exact Method of Shoeing all ſorts of Feet, be they never ſo bad and deform'd.* 81

Chap. XXII. *How to pare the Feet well, fit the Shoes, and drive the Nails.* 85

Chap. XXIII. *Of low Heels, tender Feet, and other kinds of bad imperfect Feet.* 88

Cap. XXIV. *Of flat Feet, and ſuch as have their Soles round and high.* 89

Chap

The Contents.

Chap. XXV. *How Horſes that are Hoof-bound, or Narrow-heel'd, ſhould be ſhod.* 98
Chap. XXVI. *How Horſes which have Clefts in their Quarters, commonly call'd Falſe Quarters, are to be Shoed.* 107
Chap. XXVII. *Of Shoeing Horſes whoſe Fore-Legs, from the Knees to the Coronets, go in a ſtrait Line, and appear as if they were all one piece: As alſo of thoſe whoſe Paſtern-joints bend ſo far forwards that they appear to be diſlocate.* 110
Chap. XXVIII. *Of Arched Legs.* 115
Chap. XXIX. *How to Shoe Horſes which tread only upon the Toes of the Hind Feet; as alſo thoſe which Trip or Stumble.* 116
Chap. XXX. *How to Shoe Horſes which have been founder'd in the Feet.* 118
Chap. XXXI. *Of Calkins.* 119
Chap. XXXII. *How to Shoe Horſes which cut or interfere.* 120
Chap. XXXIII. *Of Purging.* 122
Chap. XXXIV. *Of Glyſters.* 125
Chap. XXXV. *Of Blooding Horſes, and Precautions to be obſerved therein.* 128
Chap. XXXVI. *How to judge of the Quantity and Quality of Blood.* 133
Chap. XXXVII. *Of Bits.* 135
Chap. XXXVIII. *Of Branches.* 139
Chap. XXXIX. *A Diſcourſe of Breeding, and how to raiſe a good and beautiful Race of Horſes.* 144
Chap. XL. *When Foals are to be wean'd, or ſeparated from their Dams, and how they are to be ordered.* 150

Chap.

The Contents.

Chap. XLI. *The Ancient Method of prepari Running Horſes.* 1
Chap. XLII. *The Modern Way of preparing R ning Horſes.* 1
Chap. XLIII. *Of Ambling.* 1
Chap. XLIV. *Of the Vices of Horſes, and h to prevent, correct, and remedy them.* 1

The Contents of the Tre tiſe of the Art of Riding.

Chap. I. *Of what Stature and Age a Ho ſhould be that is deſign'd for the Mana* 1
Chap. II. *A Deſcription of the Natural Paces a Horſe.* 1
Chap. III. *Of all the Artificial Motions which Horſe can make.* 1
Chap. IV. *Of the true Seat a Man ſhould keep Horſeback.* 1
Chap. V. *The true Method of ſuppling a Horſ Shoulders, or firſt riding him upon Circles.* 1
Chap. VI. *How to ſtop a Horſe and make him back.* 1
Chap. VII. *How to make a Horſe ſenſible and o dient to the Heels, and to anſwer exactly t Spurs.* 2
Chap. VIII. *The true and exact Method to ma a Horſe go* Terra à Terra. 2
Chap. IX. *Of changing upon Demi-Volts.* 2

The Contents.

Chap. X. *Of Peſates.* 210
Chap. XI. *For Corvets ſtrait forwards, ſideways, backwards, and upon the Volts.* 212
Chap. XII. *Of the Capriole, Croupade, Balotade, and a Step and a Leap.* 216
Chap. XIII. *Of the Piroyte.* 218
Chap. XIV. *Of Paſſades.* 219
Chap. XV. *A new Invention to dreſs Horſes upon all Ayres, by the help of one ſingle Pillar.* 221
Chap. XVI. *Of the ſeveral Helps and Corrections with the Spurs.* 223

THE

THE

CONTENTS

OF

PART II.

THE *Introduction.* Page 21

Chap. I. *Of the Diſorders of the Mouth, namely the Lampas, Barbs, Woolves-Teeth, and Wounds in the Mouth.* 22

Chap. II. *Of a loathing of Food, or want of Appetite.* 22

Chap. III. *Of the Strangles.* 23

Chap. IV. *Of a Cold and Cough.* 23

Chap. V. *Of the Glanders.* 23

Chap. VI. *Of the Diſeaſes of the Eyes.* 24

Chap. VII. *Of a Hæmorrhagy, or Bleeding.* 24

Chap. VIII. *Of the Vives.* 24

Chap. IX. *Of the Cholick, Fret, or Gripes.* 25

Chap. X. *of an immoderate Flux of Urine; and of a ſtaling or piſſing of Blood.* 25

Chap. XI. *Of the Stavers and Giddineſs.* 25

Chap. XII. *Of Strains or Wrenches in the Shoulders or Hips.* 26

Chap.

The Contents.

Chap. XIII. *Of broken, ſtiff, tir'd, decay'd bruis'd, or ſwell'd Legs.* 263
Chap. XIV. *Of Malenders, Selenders, Splents, Wind-galls, Farcey-knots, and other Swellings.* 270
Chap. XV. *Of an Attaint or Over-reach.* 275
Chap. XVI. *Of the Scratches.* 277
Chap. XVII. *Of the Ring-bone.* 278
Chap. XVIII. *Of Vices of the Feet and Hoofs; particularly ſurbated Feet; and of Pricks made with Stubs or Nails in Shoeing, or in the Streets.* 280
Chap. XIX. *Of ſcab'd Heels or Fruſh; and of the Crown-ſcab and Mange.* 285
Chap. XX. *Of the Hoof-bound, or of waſted and ſhrunk Feet.* 288
Chap. XXI. *Of all ſorts of Wounds and Hurts.* 290
Chap. XXII. *Of the bitings of Mad-Dogs and venemous Beaſts.* 304
Chap. XXIII. *Of a Cough.* 307
Chap. XXIV. *Of Obſtructions of the Lungs, Fevers, and other Sickneſſes occaſion'd by Foundering.* 309
Chap. XXV. *Of the Preparations and Virtues of* Crocus Metallorum, Sal Polychreſt, *and the Golden Sulphur of* Antimony. 312
Chap. XXVI. *The Method of fattening Horſes.* 318
Chap. XXVII. *Of the Palpitation of the Heart.* 319
Chap. XXVIII. *Of Fevers.* 322
Chap. XXIX. *Of the Farcin.* 325

Chap.

The Contents.

Chap. XXX. *Of the Ebullition of the Blood, Blood-running Itch.* 31
Chap. XXXI. *Of the Molten Greaſe.* 32
Chap. XXXII. *Of Worms, Botts, or Truncheons bred in the Body of a Horſe.* 33
Chap. XXXIII. *Of ſwaying of the Back, and Falls.* 33
Chap. XXXIV. *Of the Swelling of the Cods or Stones; and of bruis'd or hard Stones.* 33
Chap. XXXV. *Of the Lask, Looſneſs, or Flux of the Belly.* 34
Chap. XXXVI. *Of the Falling of the Fundament.* 34
Chap. XXXVII. *Of Warts, Chops, Pains, Rat-tails, Mules, and other foul and watery Sores in a Horſe's Legs; and of ſwollen and gouty Legs, occaſion'd by ſuch Sores: Together with a deſcription of the Compoſition and Vertues of the White Honey-Charge.* 34
Chap. XXXVIII. *Of Halter-Caſt.* 35

THE

The CONTENTS of the APPENDIX.

Of the Anticor. 353
Of Bleymes. 355
Of Seymes or False-Quarters. 356
Of the Curb. 357
Of a Jardon. ibid.
Of a String-halt. 358
Of the Bone-spavin. ibid.
Of the Blood-spavin. 359
Of the Hough-Bonny. 360
Of the Cramp. ibid.
Of the over-stretching or relaxation of a Sinew. 361
Of Gaunt-belly'd or Light-Belly'd Horses. ibid.
Of the Ambury. 362
Of the Cords. ibid.
Of the Hungry-Evil. 363
Of the Stag-Evil, or Palsy in the Jaws. ibid.
Of Crepances. 364
Of the Stones drawn into the Body. ibid.
Of the Head-Ach. 365
Of an Apoplexy or Palsie. ibid.
Of the falling of the Crest, Mangines in the Mane, or the shedding of the Hair. 366
Of a Canker in the Nose, Mouth, or any other part of the Body. ibid.
Of the Poll-Evil. ibid.
Of the Colt-Evil, or burning by a Mare. 367

Of

The Contents.

Of a Stoppage of Urine in Cholicks. ib
Of Gauling between the Legs. ib
Of Lice. 3
Of a foul'd or fur'd Yard. ib
Of the Stiffling. ib
Schmit's *Ointment for reſtoring the Hoof.* 3
Neatherd's Ointment for the Mange. 3
Counteſs's Ointment for healing Sores in the ha part of the Foot. 3
Duke's Ointment for all hot Swellings and Infla mations. 3
The ripening Ointment, call'd Baſilicum. 3
The Liquid Cauſtick. ib
The true Ointment of Montpelier. 3
An excellent Powder for purſive Horſes. ib

TH

In this Plate is contain'd First the Portrait of a Horse, by which is known the Names of all the particular Parts, which generally compose and frame a Horses Body, each part being markt with a distinct Figure, all which are explain'd in ye following Chapters: Secondly ye representation of ye most necessary Movables belonging to a Stable; as Comb, Brush, Shovel, Broom, &c.t

Plate. 1.

Part. 1. Chap 1:

A great Bitt

A watering Bitt. French or Snaffle. Big

A Masticadour or Slavering Bitt.

A Pair of Luggetts or Leather Spectacles for vicious Horses.

A Sieve.

A Sheet Main Cloath & Housing Girth

A Watering Saddle

A hard Hay Wisp for ye Leggs.

A Fork shod with Iron.

A Wooden Fork for dressing ye Litter.

A Shovel.

A Broom.

A Paile for water.

A Measure for Oats.

A Hair Cloth.

A Brush.

A Curry Combe.

A Pair of Sizars

A Mane Combe and a Sponge.

A Sweating Knife.

A Picking Iron for the feet.

THE
ompleat Horſeman:
OR,
Perfect FARRIER.

PART I.

The INTRODUCTION.

AMONGST all the Creatures, there is none which yields more Profit and Pleaſure to Man than the Horſe; yet oftentimes, for want of Skill to ride him, or through ligence in his Diet or Dreſſing, or by Watering unſeaſonably, or any other Accident, he be-s unſerviceable. The preventing of which, e Deſign of the enſuing Treatiſe.

CHAP. I.

The Names of the Parts of a Horſe.

O ſay nothing of the Ears, Eyes, *&c.* as be-ing Parts well known, I ſhall begin firſt with *Barrs* of his Mouth, which are a part of the s, but without any Teeth, ſo that Nature

ſeems to have appointed them as a Place for the Mouth of the Bitt to reſt upon.

The *Barrs* are properly the very Ridges or Upper parts of the Gums, betwixt the Under-Tuſhes and Grinders; for the outward ſides of them are always called the Gums.

The *Channel* is the Hollow betwixt the two *Barrs* or nether Jaw-bones, in which the Tongue is lodged.

The *Palate* is the Roof of the Mouth, where Horſes are commonly bled with a ſharp-pointed Horn to refreſh and give them an Appetite.

The Teeth are of five kinds.

1. The *Jaw-Teeth* or *Grinders*, in number twenty four, *viz.* twelve in the Upper-Jaw, and as many below.

2. The *Foal-Teeth*, which come forth before when he is about three Months old, and which he caſts about two Years and a half after.

3. The *Tuſhes*, which are placed alone in the Barrs betwixt the Fore-Teeth and Grinders; one upon each ſide below, and as many above. *Mares* have ſeldom any Tuſhes, and when they have them they are but ſmall: It is alſo thought an Imperfection in thoſe which have them.

4. The *Gatherers*, which grow before in the place of the Foal-Teeth, and with which Horſes draw their Fodder, or cut their Graſs, being ſix above and as many below, and are divided into three kinds *viz.* the *Nippers*, the *Middle-Teeth* or *Separaters*, and the *Outward* or *Corner ones*. The *Nippers* or two foremoſt Teeth above and below, are thoſe which a Horſe firſt changes. The Middle-Teeth or Separaters, (ſo called becauſe they ſeparate the Nippers from the Corner-Teeth) are the two next the Nippers, one upon each ſide of them both above and below, and are thoſe which change next. The Outward and Corner ones being thoſe next the Tuſhes above and below, and by which the Age of a Horſe

known, are thoſe which he caſteth laſt. The Age alſo known by the Middle-Teeth or Separaters. there being twelve Fore-Teeth, ſix above, and below, a Horſe hath in all forty Teeth, and a are but thirty-ſix.

The *Withers* begin where the Mane endeth, and joined to and end at the tip of the Shoulder-ades, marked 9.

The *Loyns* or *Fillets* begin at the Place where the nder-part of the Saddle reſteth.

The *Flanks* are the extremity of the Belly where Ribs are wanting, and below the Loyns, mark-15.

The *Shank* is that part of the Fore-Leg, which is twixt the Knee and ſecond Joint next to the Foot, led a Fetlock or Paſtern-joint, marked 19.

The *Paſtern-joint*, is the Joint next the Foot, rked 20.

The *Paſtern* is the diſtance between the ſaid Joint d the Coronet of the Hoof, marked 21.

The *Coronet* is that part round the very top of the ot, where the Hair grows and falls down upon Hoof, marked 22.

The *Foot* conſiſts of the *Hoof* or *Coffin*, which is the Horn that appears when the Horſe has his ot ſet to the Ground.

The *Quarters* are the two ſides of the Foot, from nty three to twenty four. The Foot muſt be en up, and then it will appear.

The *Fruſh* or *Frog*, which is placed from the mid- of the Sole towards the Heel upon both ſides, is art more ſoft and more elevate than the reſt of Sole, and terminates juſt at the Heel.

The *Sole* is as it were a Plate of Horn, which en- oning the Fleſh, covers the whole bottom of the ot. All People know it, becauſe when a Shoe ght placed, it ſhould not at all reſt upon it, and very ſeldom touch it.

The *Coffin-bone* is that Bone which is to the Foo as a Heart or Kernel. It is quite ſurrounded an covered by the Hoof, Fruſh, and Sole, and is no perceived when even the Horſe's Sole is quite take out, being covered on all Sides by a Coat of Fleſh which hinders the Bone from appearing.

It now remains to ſpeak of the *Hind-Legs*, which are,

The *Stiffle* or great Muſcle, is that part of t Hind-Leg which advances towards the Horſe's B ly, and is a moſt dangerous Part to receive a Blo upon, marked 27.

The *Thigh* or *Gaſkoin* beginneth at the *Stiffle*, a reaches to the *Ply*, or bending of the Ham; and contained between the Figures 27 and 29.

The *Ham* or *Hough* is the Ply or bending of t Hind-Leg, marked 29. and comprehends likew the Point behind and oppoſite to the Ply, called t *Hock*, marked 30.

The place where a *Selender* comes is marked 2

The place where a *Spavin* comes, which is a lit beneath the Ply and in the inſide, is marked 31.

From the Ham to the Paſtern-joint, is that p of the Leg which in the Fore-Legs is called the *Sha* but in the Hind the *Inſtep*, marked 33.

CHAP. II.

How the Parts of a Horſe ſhould be framed.

THE *Head* ſhould be ſmall, narrow, lean dry. Every Horſe with a big Head may apt to reſt and loll upon the Bridle, and thereb a Journey incommode the Hand of the Rider. ſides, he can never appear well with a big He unleſs he have alſo a very long and well-tur Neck.

Of the Ears.

The *Ears* ſhould be little, narrow, ſtrait, and hary, and the whole ſubſtance of them thin and delicate. They ſhould be placed on the very top of the Head, and their Points when ſtiled or prick'd, ſhould be nearer than their Roots. When a Horſe carries his Ears pointed forwards, he is ſaid to have a bold, hardy, or briſk Ear. Alſo when a Horſe travels, he ſhould keep them firm, and not (like a Hog) mark every ſtep by a motion of his Ears.

Of the Forehead.

The *Forehead* ſhould be ſomewhat broad: Some would have it a little raiſed; but in my opinion a flat Forehead is moſt beautiful. Thoſe Horſes called *Diſh-faced*, have the fore-part of their Head, from a little below their Eyes, to the place where the Noſe-band of the Bridle reſteth, low and hollow: Such Horſes are commonly durable, but very often ſtubborn and ill-natur'd.

A Horſe ſhould have in his Forehead, that which we call a *Feather*, which is a natural frizling or turning of the Hair. If he have two that are near or touch, the Mark is ſo much the better.

Some People fancy, that if the Feather be below the Eyes it is a ſign of a weak ſight. But Experience will diſcover the uncertainty of this Obſervation.

If a Horſe be neither White, Dapled, nor approaching thoſe Colours, he ſhould have a Star or Blaze in his Forehead: It being a defect not only for the Beauty, but oft-times for the Goodneſs of a Horſe of any dark colour, to be without one.

Of the Eye-pits.

The *Eye-pits* ſhould not be too much ſunk, for if they are deep and hollow they are ugly, and make

the Horſe appear to be old. Horſes that come of an old Stallion, have it from their very Youth, ſome more, ſome leſs.

Of the Eyes.

The *Eyes* which are bright, lively, full of fire, and pretty large and full, are moſt eſteemed: Thoſe which are very big are not the beſt, neither ſhould they be too gogling or ſtaring out of the Head, but equal with it, and have a large and full pupil or ground.

Moreover, the Eye ſhould be reſolute, impudent and briſk: A Horſe to appear well ſhould look on his Object fixedly, and with a kind of diſdain, and not look another way. In the Eye is alſo diſcovered his Inclination, Paſſion, Malice, Health and Indiſpoſition. When the Eyes are ſunk, or that the Eye brows are too elevate, and as it were ſwelled, it is a ſign of vitiouſneſs and ill-nature. Such kind of Horſes have a melancholy Countenance, but are commonly of great fatigue.

The Eye is the moſt tender and delicate part of the whole Body, being the laſt which is formed in the Womb, and the firſt that dies.

Of the Jaw-bones.

The *Jaw-bones* ſhould be narrow and lean, the diſtance betwixt them at the Throat ſhould be large and hollow, that he may the better place his Head. If the Jaw-bone be too ſquare, that is, if there be too great a diſtance betwixt the Eye and that part of it which touches his Neck, it is not only ugly and unbecoming, but alſo hinders him from placing his Head. And if there be but little diſtance betwixt the Jaw-bones, then as ſoon as you pull the Bridle to bring his Head into its moſt becoming poſture, the Bone meeting with his Neck, will hinder him, eſpecially if he have alſo with that Imperfection, a ſhort and thick Neck.

Of the Muzzle.

From that part where the Noſe-band of the Bridle reſteth, which is ſomewhat below the middle of the Jaw-bone, and where it begins to ſtraiten and become narrow: I ſay, from that part to his *Muzzle* he ſhould have nothing but Skin and Bone, and the ſmaller the better: Therefore People commonly ſay he ſhould be able to drink out of a Beer-glaſs, by reaſon of the ſmalneſs of his *Muzzle*.

A Horſe's Head ſhould not be too long; but the chief thing is a good On-ſet, that he may be able to bring it into its natural ſituation, which is, that all the forepart of the Head, from the very Brow to the Noſe, be perpendicular to the Ground, ſo that if there were a Plummet applied to it, it would but juſt ſhave or raze it.

Of the Noſtrils.

The *Noſtrils* ſhould be large and extended, ſo that the Red within them may be perceived, eſpecially when he Sneereth. The wideneſs of the Noſtril doth not a little contribute to eaſineſs of Breathing.

Of the Mouth.

The *Mouth* ſhould be indifferently well cloven; when it is too much, there is great difficulty ſo to fitt a Horſe as that he may not ſwallow it, as we ſay. And if he have a little Mouth, then with difficulty can the Mouth of the Bitt be right lodged in it.

Of the Tongue.

The *Tongue* ſhould be ſmall, otherwiſe it will be difficult to keep the Bitt from preſſing it, which making the Tongue to extend over his Barrs and cover them, will render his feeling of the preſſure of the Bitt dull, by hindring its operation and effect upon the Barrs.

Of the Barrs.

The *Barrs* ſhould be ſharp-ridged, and lean, ſo all the ſubjection which a Horſe ſuffers by the Bridle proceeding from the Barrs, if they have not the a bove-mentioned Qualities, they will be very little or not at all ſenſible, ſo that he can never have good Mouth. For if they be flat, round, and un ſenſible, the Bitt will not work its effect, and to take hold of ſuch a Horſe by his Tail, or by the Bridle to govern him, will prove much about one.

Of the Channel.

The *Channel* or hollow betwixt the Under-Jaws ſhould be large enough to contain his Tongue, tha it be not preſſed with the mouth of the Bitt, whic ſhould always have a little liberty in the middle o it.

Of the Palate.

His *Palate* ſhould be lean, for if it be fat, that is if it be full and high, ſo that it be almoſt equal wit the extremities of his upper Teeth, the leaſt height in the liberty of a Bitt will incommode him, and will make him either check in the Bridle, and be al ways throwing up of his Head, or otherwiſe carry it too low, which, beſides the deformity, will much incommode the Hand of the Rider.

Of the Lips.

Thin and little *Lips* contribute to a good Mouth but the contrary if they be large and thick.

Of the Beard.

The *Beard* ſhould be neither flat nor too high raiſed, that ſo the Curb may reſt in its right place It ſhould have but little Fleſh upon it, and almoſt nothing but Skin and Bone, without any kind of chops, hardneſs, or ſwelling.

t is a good ſign in a Horſe to have his Mouth ſh and full of Froth, becauſe his Mouth being ays moiſt, will not ſo eaſily over- heat, and is a en that the Bitt gives him pleaſure.

Of the Neck.

The *Neck* ſhould be lean, and but little Fleſh up- it; and to be well-ſhaped, it ſhould at its going m the Withers riſe with a ſlope upwards, dimi- ning by degrees towards the Head: It ſhould ve but little Fleſh upon it, near to the growing the Mane. In Mares it is a good quality to have ir Necks a little groſs, and charged with Fleſh, cauſe their Necks are commonly too fine and nder.

Deer-necks or Cock-thropled, are thoſe in which Fleſh that ſhould be next the Mane is placed ite below and next the Throat, which renders the eck ugly and ill-ſhaped.

A well-ſhaped Neck, beſides the Beauty it gives a Horſe, contributes very much to the making m light or heavy on the Hand, according as it is e or courſe. But it is not the ſhape of the Neck one, which makes a Horſe light or heavy on the and, but good or bad Legs and Feet, and ſtrong weak Reins; however, the Neck has a great are in it.

Of the Mane.

The Hair of the *Mane* ſhould be long, thin and ne; if it be frizled ſo much the better.

Of the Withers

The *Withers* ſhould be well-raiſed and pretty ng, becauſe it is a ſign of ſtrength and goodneſs; d they keep the Saddle from coming forward upon s Shoulders and Neck, which immediately ſpoils d galls a Horſe, and when once hurt in that place is

is very difficult to cure. They ſhould alſo be le
and not too fleſhy; for then they will be much m
ſubject to galling.

Of the Breaſt or Counter.

A large and full *Breaſt* or *Counter* is always eſte
ed in light or ſmall ſized Horſes; but in *D*
Horſes they are commonly too large, which ma
them heavy. In Horſes for draught, large and br
Counters do very well, for they draw with
more eaſe, and the Harneſs galls them leſs:
then it gives them the perfect quality of a C
Horſe, who the more he is tied to the Grou
and the bigger the better he is.

Of the Shoulders.

The *Shoulders* ſhould be ſharp and narrow at
Withers of a middle ſize, flat, and but little Fl
upon ; becauſe a Horſe charged with Sho
ders can never be agreeable to the Rider, for
will not only be heavy on the Hand and we
ſooner, but trip and ſtumble every Minute, e
cially if with ſuch large Shoulders he have a th
and big Neck. The Shoulders of a well-ſhap
Horſe are compared to thoſe of a Hare, and
diſtance between them ſhould be little more t
half the breadth of his Hinder-Quarters.

But as ſome Saddle-Horſes are too large in
Shoulders, ſo others are too ſmall, that is, wh
their Breaſts are ſo narrow that their Fore-Thig
almoſt touch; ſuch Horſes are worth very litt
becauſe they have a weak Fore-hand, and by cr
ſing their Legs are apt to cut; and in Gallopi
carry their Legs ſo confuſedly, that they are ſubj
to fall. Better too muh Shoulders than this.

A Horſe of a middle ſize ſhould have about h
a Foot or five Inches diſtance between his Fo
Thighs; and when he is ſtanding ſtraight upon
Lim

nbs there ſhould be a leſs diſtance between his et, than between his Thighs near the Shoulders.

Of the Reins.

A Horſe ſhould have *double Reins*, which is when hath them a little more elevate upon each ſide of Back-bone, than upon it. The Back ſhould be it and not hollow or Saddle-backed. Becauſe h Horſes, tho' they are commonly light, and e their Necks raiſed and high, yet they have ſelm much ſtrength; and 'tis alſo difficult ſo to fit addle to them, that it do not gall them. They e alſo commonly exceſſive big Bellies, which nders them uncomely.

The *Ribs* ſhould be circular and full, taking their mpaſs from the very Back-bone.

Of the Belly.

The *Belly* to be of an ordinary bigneſs, but in nch-Horſes the larger the better, provided it be nd and well incloſed within the Ribs, and rather ending upon the ſides than downwards.

Of the Flanks.

The *Flanks* ſhould be full, and at the top of them each ſide ſhould be a Feather, and the nearer ſe Feathers are to each other, ſo much the bet-, but if they be as it were within view, then Mark is excellent.

The diſtance between the laſt Rib and Haunchne, which is properly the Flank, ſhould be ſhort, ich we term well-coupled. Such Horſes will dure Labour longeſt.

Of the Croup.

The *Croup* ſhould be large and round, ſo that the s of the two Haunch-bones be not within view other. The greater diſtance between thoſe two Bones

Bones the better: But it is an Imperfection if th be too high, call'd *Horn-hipped*, though that Blem will in a great meaſure diſappear, if you can ma him fat and luſty. The Croup ſhould have compaſs from the Haunch-bones to the very Do or Onſet of the Tail, and ſhould be divided two by a Hollow or Channel all along to the ve Dock.

Of the Tail.

The *Tail* ſhould be firm, ſtrong, immoveable, a well furniſh'd with Hair. The *Dock* ſhould be b ſtiff, and placed pretty high: Thoſe that have too low ſet, have ſeldom good Reins. Thou ſome have it too high ſet, which makes their B tocks appear pointed and unbecoming.

In the *Forelegs* are the *Arm* or *Fore-thigh* and t *Shank*; both which the larger, broader, and mo nervous they are, the better. The *Knee* ſhould flat and large without any roundneſs or ſwelling.

The *Back-ſinew* being the moſt conſiderable part a Horſe's Leg, ſhould be big: And becauſe th Legs are moſt eſteemed which are broadeſt and fl teſt, the greater the diſtance between the Bac ſinew and the Shank-bone, the better.

Of the Paſtern.

The *Paſtern* ſhould be ſhort, eſpecially in midd ſiz'd Horſes, becauſe long Paſterns are weak a cannot ſo well endure Travel. Some have them long, that their Paſtern-joints almoſt touch t Ground, which is a ſign of great Weakneſs in th Part, if it be not alſo univerſal.

Of the Coronet.

The *Coronet* ſhould be no more elevate than t Hoof; for if it makes a Ridge or Height round it is a ſign, that either the Foot is dried up, or th

the

There are a great many Humours in the Coronet, which may occaſion the *Crown-Scab* and other *Sores* to which that part is ſubject.

Of the Hoof.

The Horn of the *Hoof* ſhould be of a dark Colour, ſomewhat ſhining, high and ſmooth: The White is commonly *Brittle.* To be excellent, it ſhould be of the Colour of a Deer's Hoof, and the whole Foot of a round Figure, but a little larger below than above.

The *Heel* ſhould be high and large, and one ſide of it ſhould not riſe higher upon the Paſtern than the other.

The *Fruſh*, although little, ſhould yet be well nouriſhed. In Hoof-bound Horſes it is too little, or it is almoſt quite dried up. And as it is a Fault to have it little, ſo it is one to have it too large and fat, as it were, eſpecially in Horſes that have low Heels, or are flat-footed.

Of the Sole.

The *Sole* ſhould be thick and ſtrong, and the whole lower-part of the Foot, where the Shoe is placed, hollow.

Having conſider'd the Fore-Legs, let us go to thoſe behind.

The *Thighs* ſhould be well furniſh'd and fleſhy: for although the Croup be well turned, yet if the Thighs be ſlender and lean he will appear narrow behind; which is call'd, *Cat-thigh'd.*

The *Houghs* or *Hams* ſhould be large, full, and not much bended; dry, diſcharged of Fleſh, nervous, and ſupple.

Of the Inſtep.

The Bone of the Hind-Leg from the Ham to the Paſtern-joint, call'd the *Inſtep*, ſhould be big and flat,

flat, and in a perpendicular Line to the Groun when the Horſe is in his natural Poſture of ſtan ing. When the *Inſteps* ſtand not perpendicularly is a certain ſign of weakneſs either in the Rein or Hinder-quarters.

A *Horſe* who hath good Feet before, hath ſeldo bad behind, except by Accident. Therefore Pe ple look to the Hind-Feet but ſlightly.

There remains one viſible Imperfection to be co ſider'd; that is, when the Legs are too long in pr portion to their Bodies, or the having too much Da light under their Bellies. It is beſt judg'd by the Ey But to ſatisfie the Curious, take a Thread and me ſure from the Withers to the Elbow; and whatev length that is, he ſhould have the ſame Diſtance b tween the Elbow and lower-part of his Heel. Ther fore many People Meaſure their Colts at a Ye old, and take the diſtance from the lower-part the Heel to the Elbow, and ſay, their Bodies wi always grow until there be the ſame diſtance b tween their Elbow and Withers as there was betwi the Elbow and Heel: Becauſe, ſay they, at a Ye old a Colt hath its Legs as long as ever: Which have indeed obſerved in ſome, but not in all: An the Duke of *Newcaſtle* in his Book condemns thi Obſervation.

CHAP. III.

How to know a Horſe's Age while he hath Mark.

WHen a Horſe is two Years old and a half, h hath twelve Foal-teeth in the fore-part of hi Mouth; and about that time, or ſoon after, four them do fall, *viz.* two above and two below, in th very middle. (In ſome Horſes they do not fall t three

e Years, the Obſervation not being ſo exact as ays to anſwer two Years and a half.) There grows heir place four others, call'd *Nippers* or *Gatherers*, ch ſtronger and larger than the Foal-teeth, and n he is at moſt but three Years old, and commnly but two and a half.

At three and a half, and ſometimes at four, he s the next four Foal-teeth, *viz.* two above and below, and in their room come four Teeth 'd *Separaters*.

There remains then but four Foal-teeth in the rners, which he changes commonly at four Years a half. It will be neceſſary to keep in memotwo and a half, three and a half, and four and alf; that is to ſay, when a Horſe has caſt two eth above and as many below, he is but two ars and a half: When he hath caſt four Teeth ave and as many below, he is three Years and a f: and when he has caſt ſix above, and as many ow, which is to have them all changed, then he our Years and a half old.

It is to be obſerved, that the Corner-teeth in the pper-gums are caſt before thoſe in the Nether: t on the contrary the Under-tuſhes grow out be- e the Upper. And Horſes are often ſick when Tuſhes of the Upper-gums grow out, but are ver ſo when theſe below come forth.

The Tuſhes are preceded by no Foal-teeth, but ow up when a Horſe is about three Years and a lf, and commonly grow up before the Cornereth are caſt.

So ſoon as the *Gatherers* and *Separaters* have pierc'd d cut the Gums, they make all their growth in teen Days: But the Corner-teeth do not grow ſo ddenly. Yet that doth not hinder but that at their ry firſt appearing they are as thick and broad as the her, but are no higher than the thickneſs of a own-Piece, and very ſharp and hollow.

When a Horſe hath no more Foal-teeth, and t
his Corner-teeth begin to appear, he is then in
fifth Year; that is, he hath about four Years an
half, and is going in his fifth. When he firſt p
out his Corner-teeth, they are of equal height w
the Gums on the outſide, and the inſide of them
filled with Fleſh untill he be near five; and when
comes to be five Years old, that Fleſh diſappe
and there will remain in the place of it a hollo
that is, they are not ſo high on the inſide as the o
which they will come to be about a Year after th
firſt appearing. So that when a Horſe's Corn
teeth are filled with Fleſh, you may confidently
firm that he is not five.

From five to five and a half, the Corner-te
remain hollow on the inſide, and that part wh
was filled with Fleſh is empty.

From five and a half till ſix, the hollow on t
inſide fills up, and the Teeth grow and become f
and equal at top, only a little Cavity remains in t
middle, reſembling the Eye of a dry Bean, and th
they ſay the Horſe is entring ſix. And ſo long a
Horſe's Corner-teeth are not ſo high on the inſide
the out, he is ſtill ſaid to be but five, although
be five and a half, and ſometimes ſix.

You may alſo do well to remember, that at fo
Years and a half, when the Corner-Teeth appe
and are filled on the inſide with Fleſh, that the o
ſide of them will then be about the thickneſs of
Crown above the Gums, and will ſo continue till fi
And from thence to five and a half the outwa
Edge will be about the thickneſs of two Crowns
bove the Gums. At ſix they will be about the bread
of one's little Finger above the Gums, and his Tuſ
will be at their full length. At ſeven Years th
will be about the thickneſs of the ſecond or Ri
finger above the Gums, and the hollow alm
quite worn out and gone.

At eight Years old the Horſe will be razed; that none of his Teeth will be hollow, but flat quite er, and about the thickneſs of the Middle-finger ove the Gums.

It is quite contrary in Horſes to what it is with en. Young People Labour and endure Fatigue omparably better than old: Whereas Horſes will l better when they are old than young. Men en young, eat and ſleep better than when they aged; but Horſes on the contrary eat a great l more when a little aged, and alſo reſt bet-

CHAP. IV.

w to know the Age of a Horſe which is paſt Mark, Shell-tooth'd, or hollow-tooth'd, or whoſe Mark is counter-feited.

Fter a Horſe has razed, a Man cannot judge of his Age, but by the length of his Fore-h or by his Tuſhes.

As the Gums through time grow lean, ſo they ke the Teeth to appear long; and it is certain, ſo much the longer a Horſe's Teeth are, he is nuch the older. And as he grows old, his Teeth contract Ruſt and become Yellow. Not but there are ſome old Horſes who have very ſhort white Teeth; and People ſay of ſuch Horſes, t they have a good Mouth conſidering their Age. e alſo will have a Black Speck in their Teeth, mbling the true Mark, a long time after they paſt eight or nine; but then it is not hollow. he Tuſhes are the moſt certain Mark whereby now a Horſe's Age.

If a Horſe be but ſix, the Upper-tuſhes will be
little channell'd, or ſomewhat hollow'd and groo
upon the inſides: And when he is above ſix, th
fill up, and become a little round in the inſides. T
Obſervation never or rarely fails.

If you feel the Tuſhes of his Upper-Jaw w
your Finger, and find them to be worn equal w
the Palat, the Horſe is then at leaſt ten Years o
This Obſervation ſeldom fails, unleſs the Ho
when young hath carried a bigger mouth'd B
than was proper for him.

Young Horſes have always their Under-tu
ſharp and pointed, pretty long, ſomewhat ed
upon both ſides, and without any Ruſt upon the
But as they become aged their Tuſhes grow big
blunt, round and ſcaly, and in very old Hor
they are extremely thick, round, and yellow.

A Horſe is ſaid to be Shell-tooth'd when he
long Teeth, and yet black Specks in them; and
Mark laſts all their Life. It is eaſily known, bec
the Mark appears in the other Fore-teeth as we
in the Corner-teeth.

In Age the Points of the *Gatherers* ſtand out
a little; and when extremely old, point alm
ſtraight forward: But when he is young they ſtand
moſt ſtraight up, and are juſt equal with the o
Edges of thoſe above. Sometimes the Upper-t
do thus point forward, but for the moſt part
the Under that do it.

If you require no exactneſs, but only to kno
he be young or old, lift up the Upper-lip; and
Upper-teeth be long, yellow, and overpaſſing t
below, it betokens Age. As the contrary Signs,
as ſhort and white Teeth, and thoſe of the Up
Jaw not overpaſſing thoſe below, betoken You

There are ſome Horſes whoſe Teeth contin
ways white and ſhort, as if they were but ſix. W
ſuch Horſes fall into the Hands of Cheats, the
tem

ntimes counter-mark them, by hollowing the orner-teeth with an Ingraving-Iron, and putting me double Ink immediately into the Hole, and ere let it dry, which will remain as long as the eeth continue hollow. Others with a red-hot Iron urn a Grain of Rye in the Hollows of the Teeth, hich makes them perfectly black; for there proeeds from the Rye a kind of Oil, which by the help the burning cleaves faſt to the Hollows of the eeth newly cut. To prevent being cheated by ch Villains, obſerve if there be any Scratches on e outſides of the Hollows of the Teeth (becauſe e graver ſometimes ſlips and ſcratches the other ts of the Teeth) for then you may conclude him untermark'd; and an artificial Hollow is much acker than a natural. Take notice alſo of his Upr-Tuſhes; the inſides of which ſhould be groov'd hollow until the Horſe be ſeven Years old. Obve alſo if he have any ſigns of old Age, ſuch as Upper-teeth long, overpaſſing thoſe below, and low; the lower part of the neither Jaw-bone ſharp d edged; the Under-Tuſhes uſed, big, and ſca; if he have theſe Tokens of Age, and yet ap-ars marked, it is very probable that he is counter-rk'd.

I have heard of filing a Horſe's Teeth to make 'em ort; but I believe no Man ever made twice tryal it in his Life-time. For if you file the under-teeth, ich are thoſe at which People look to know the e, then thoſe above will be obſerv'd to be longer n thoſe which have been ſhortned: And if the eth both above and below be ſhortened, then the -teeth or Grinders being at their full length will n, and ſo hinder the Upper and Lower-teeth, ich were ſhortned, from cloſing, which will inly diſcover the Cheat: For the Horſe's Mouth ng ſhut, the Foreteeth will be at a great diſtance m each other. Beſides the Horſe would not in a

long time be in a Condition to chew his Meat, b
reaſon of the ſtreſs endured by the filing; neith
could he draw his Hay or Straw from the Rack, b
cauſe of the diſtance between his Lower and Upp
teeth.

Having now explained how a Horſe's Age may b
known by his Teeth, I ſhall next give you ſome
ther Rules, tho' not ſo certain as the former.

Some have recourſe to the Joints of the Tail, p
ſing their Hand along it, to feel for a Knot or Jo
in the upper-part of it, which cometh forth wh
he is between ten and twelve; a ſecond when he
fourteen. Others thruſt back a Horſe's Under-li
and ſo many Plyes or Folds as they find, ſo ma
Years old they ſay he is. They who are ſatisfi
with theſe Marks may make uſe of them; for
part I eſteem them very little. After the Mark
gone, I always have recourſe to his Legs, to kn
if they be neat and good; to his Flank, if it be w
truſs'd, and not too full and ſwallow'd up; to
Feet; and laſtly, to his Appetite. However, I ſh
give you ſome other Obſervations to know the A
of a Horſe that is paſt Mark.

When the Pits above the Eyes are extremely h
low, it is for the moſt part a certain Token of
Age; although Horſes got by an old Stallion h
them very deep at four or five Years old, as
their Eye-lids and Eyes wrinkled and hollow.

In young Horſes that part of the nether Jaw-bo
which is three or four Fingers breadth above
Beard is always round, but in old Horſes ſharp
edged: So that a Man who is accuſtom'd to it,
before he open a Horſe's Mouth, judge pretty
of his Age. This is a good Remark.

Some will pull the Skin of the nether Jaw-bon
Shoulder a little to them, and if the Skin con
long without returning to its place, it is a ſign
they, the Horſe is not young; and the longer

returning, the older he is. A Man ſhould not truſt much to this Obſervation, becauſe the Skin of a lean Horſe, altho' young, will be longer in returning to its place, than the Skin of an old Horſe that is fat and plump.

Another certain Mark of Old Age is when a Horſe *Seeleth*, that is, when upon his Eye-brows there groweth about the breadth of a Farthing of white Hairs, mixed with thoſe of his natural colour. A Horſe never ſeeleth untill he be fourteen Years old, and always before he be fifteen or ſixteen at farthest. The light Sorrel and Black do ſooner ſeel than any other Colours.

Horſe-Courſers commonly pull out thoſe white Hairs with Pincers: but if they be ſo many that it cannot be done without making the Horſe look old and ugly, then they colour their Eye-brows, that they may not appear old.

You may judge of his Age alſo by looking on the Palat, becauſe as he grows old the roof of his Mouth grows leaner and drier towards the middle: and thoſe ridges which in young Horſes are pretty high and plump, diminiſh as they increaſe in Age: So that in very old Horſes the roof of the Mouth is nothing but Skin and Bone. This Remark is good, eſpecially in Mares, who have ſeldom any Tuſhes whereby to know their Age.

Grey Horſes become white, as they grow old, and when very aged, are white all over; but this doth not conclude, that no Horſes are foaled white; although but very rarely. But thoſe which are foaled black, are known by their Knees and Hams, which continue, for the moſt part, ſtill of that colour.

CHAP. V.

Of the Eyes.

IT is difficult to perceive Eyes in the Sun-ſhine, becauſe in the Sun all Eyes appear to be better than really they are: Therefore take the Horſe to ſhade, and place your Hand above his Eye, to keep away the too great light, and do not look ſtrait upon them, but a little a ſquint or ſlope-ways, and then you will perceive them to the very ground or bottom.

If you will judge truly of a Horſe's Eye, you ſhould firſt view them at Night in the Stable, by the light of a ſmall Candle, placing the Eye between you and the Candle. But yet I would not advise you to buy a Horſe barely upon this Obſervation, leſt it deceive you; I only mention it as a help that you may diſtinguiſh them with the more eaſe in the day-time.

In the Eye are two things to be conſider'd, *viz.*

1. The Chryſtal.
2. The Bottom or ground of the Eye.

The Chryſtal is that roundneſs of the Eye, which appears at firſt view, being the moſt tranſparent part of it, and ſhould for the clearneſs, reſemble a piece of a Rock-Chryſtal, ſo that one may ſee clearly thro' it, becauſe if it be obſcure and troubled, ſo that you cannot ſee thro' it, it is a ſign the Eye is not good. The Eye ſhould alſo have no white Circle about it, yet there are Horſes that have this Circle, and have alſo very good Eyes, but it were rather to be wiſhed they wanted it.

A reddiſh Chryſtal is a ſign that the Eye is either inflamed, or that it is influenced by the Moon. A Chryſtal that is *Feuille mort*, or of the colour of

ead Leaf upon the lower part, and troubled upon e upper, is an infallible Mark that the Horſe is unatick, but it continues no longer than while the umour doth actually poſſeſs the Eye. Now you ay know when that is, by the Eye being ſwelled, d emitting a great deal of hot Water or Humour. his mark of the Eye being of that colour and redſh, as if the Eye were full of bloody Water, is e of the moſt certain whereby to know when a orſe is Lunatick; but obſerve, it is only ſo when e defluxion hath fallen down, and then he ſeeth t with that Eye. Now to know a Lunatick Eye hen the defluxion is not actually upon it, conſider at if onelie one of the Eyes be ſubject to it, then it ill appear leſs than the other, the Chryſtal of it ill be alſo troubled, and the bottom or ground of e Eye black and browniſh. But the Moon in the yes is better known by a troubled Chryſtal than y other Mark whatſoever. Moon-blind Eyes are mmonly worſt in the Wane; ſometimes in the ll, and are never to be blooded but in great neceſſity, and then in the Flank.

The ſecond part of the Eye to be conſider'd is the round or bottom, which is properly the Pupil or pple of the Eye, and ſhould be large and full. It uſt clearly be perceived, that you may certainly ow if there be any *Dragon*, which is a white Spot the bottom of the Eye, which makes a Horſe nd in that Eye, or will do it in a ſhort time. In beginning it appears no bigger than a grain of illet, but groweth to ſuch a bigneſs as to cover whole Apple of the Eye, and is alſo incurable. f the whole Bottom or Apple of the Eye be ite, or of a tranſparent greeniſh white, it is a bad gn, tho' perhaps he is not quite blind with it, but yet ſees a little. But you muſt take notice that if u look to a Horſe's Eyes when oppoſite to a white all, the reflexion of it will make the Apples of

them appear whitiſh, and a little inclining to gree
altho' they be indeed good: When you percei
this, you may try if his Eyes have the ſame appe
ance in another place.

If you can perceive above the Bottom or Apple
the Eye, as it were two grains of Chimny-ſoot fir
to it, it is a ſign the Chryſtal is clear and tranſparen
and if to this, the Bottom of the Eye be witho
Spot or Whiteneſs, then the Eye will be good.

You are alſo to conſider, if an Eye which is tro
bled and very brown, be leſs than the other; for
it be, it is loſt without recovery; and it is alſo
great hazard that he will loſe the other Eye al
But you muſt remember that by ſome accident
Eye may appear to be leſs than the other, and
no danger of loſing his ſight, neither will it
troubled or of a browniſh colour; as when an E
lid is heal'd up after a Wound, it may be a li
ſtraiter than before, which will cauſe the Body
the Eye to ſeem leſs than the other, altho' it be re
ly not ſo, which oft-times happens.

Beware of thoſe little Eyes which are ſunk i
the Head, and are very black, and try if you c
perfectly ſee through the Chryſtal, Then look to
bottom of the Eye, and ſee that the Pupil be
and large. In all Eyes the ſmall, narrow, and lo
Pupils run a greater risk of loſing the Sight t
any other.

There are more general Obſervations for know
Eyes: For Example; the Walk or Step of a bl
Horſe is always uncertain and unequal, not dar
to ſet down his Feet boldly when he is led in o
Hand: But if the ſame Horſe be mounted by a
gorus Horſeman, and the Horſe of himſelf be n
led, then the fear of the Spurs will make him
reſolutely and freely, ſo that his blindneſs
hardly be perceived.

Another Mark whereby a Horſe that is abſolutely blind may be known, is that when he hears any enter into the Stable, he will prick up his Ears and move them backwards and forwards: The reaſon is, becauſe a vigorous Horſe having loſt his ſight, miſtruſts every thing, and is continually in alarm by the leaſt noiſe he hears.

The Colours moſt ſubject to bad Eyes are the very dark grey, the flea-bitten, the white ſpotted, and colour of a Peach-bloſom, and alſo the Roan oftimes.

When Horſes have either the true or falſe Strangle, or are changing the Foal-Teeth, or are putting out their upper Tuſhes, ſome of them have their ſight weak and troubled, ſo that a Man would judge them blind, and ſometimes they do really become ſo. This weakneſs of ſight happens oftner in time of caſting the Corner-Teeth than any of the reſt.

Some People will paſs their Hand or Finger before a Horſe's Eyes, or puſh their Finger almoſt into his Eye, and if he move his Eye-lids, or wink and ſhut them, then they eſteem them good, but if he keep them ſtill open, then they ſay he is blind. Others, if they can ſee their own Faces in a Horſe's Eye, as in a Looking-glaſs, conclude that the Eye is good; but they are all mightily miſtaken: And as to the laſt Remark, a bad and troubled Eye will repreſent the Face better than a good one.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

A Continuation of the Knowledge of Faults and Imperfections in Horſes, and what is to be obſerved when buying them.

AFter you have conſider'd the Age and Eyes put your Hand between the two Jaw-bones near to the Horſe's Throat, to feel if there be a good diſtance between them, that ſo he may with the more eaſe bring in and place his Head: For that diſtance between the Jaw-bones being pretty large and hollow, and tapering by degrees from the Throat to the Chin, will contribute much to the goodneſs of the Mouth.

Next you are to obſerve if there be any Swelling, Hardneſs, or moving Kernel between theſe two Bones, which if the Horſe be young, is a ſign that he hath not yet caſt his *Gourme* or *Strangle*, or at leaſt that he hath caſt it but imperfectly. But if he be more aged, although he have a pretty number of them (provided they be no bigger than large Peaſe) they are of no great Conſequence, becauſe Exercise and Sweating will diſcuſs them in a ſhort time. However, if the Horſe be paſt ſix Years old, they are a little more to be feared, altho' they ſhould not hinder you from buying the Horſe, if he otherwiſe pleaſe you. Such moving Kernels may proceed from a Rheum or Cold, or from a remainder of the Gourme or Strangle, which may have left theſe Swellings in that part, by which Nature diſcharg'd her ſelf of her Impurities, and through which the bad Humours did evacuate themſelves, by the negligence and careleſneſs of thoſe Perſons who having the charge of ſuch Horſes did not attempt to reſolve and diſcuſs theſe Hardneſſes and Swellings.

If there be a fixed Kernel, painful and faſtened to the Jaw-bones, it is almoſt always a ſign of the *Glanders*, eſpecially the Horſe being paſt ſeven Years of Age; but if he be not as yet ſix, then it may be only the Strangle, eſpecially if he have a Cough with it; for commonly a Cough is only an effect of the Strangle. However, if there be the leaſt appearance of the Glanders, I would not adviſe you to meddle with him, becauſe it is a Diſeaſe which is very rarely cured, whatever great Secrets ſo many Printed Books do promiſe for it. A Rheum or Cold may be alſo the Cauſes of a Kernel fix'd to the Jaw-bone, after the ſame Manner as thoſe which proceed from the Glanders, but then it may be diſcuſs'd by a due application; yet if neglected, it for the moſt part turns to a Glander.

Some Horſes have big and fixed Hardneſſes, which are faſten'd commonly on the inſide of one of the Jaw-bones and are no token at all of the Glanders: Theſe are Excreſcences or Figs, which are of no Conſequence, and are removed firſt with the Incision-knife, and then the Roots of them are eaten away with Powders; but the neateſt Method of taking them away, is by tying them hard about the Roots in the decreaſe of the Moon, with a thread of crimſon Silk, and then anointing them every day with the Juice of Purſlain. Theſe Figs are not dangerous, nor any ſign at all of the Horſe's having the Glanders.

When you perceive a Horſe to have any kind of Kernels between his Jaw-bones, whether fixed or looſe, you muſt with your Hand ſtop his Noſtrils, to ſee if being a pretty while without breathing through them, he will force himſelf to ſnear when you let him go, which if he do, you muſt obſerve if the Noſtrils run, and if he throw out of them a Matter ſomewhat reſembling the glair or Whites of Eggs, which if it be but in a ſmall quantity

tity is not to be regarded; but if it be in great a bundance, and of an Impoſthumous conſiſtence then it is to be feared, eſpecially if it be viſcou and cleaveth to the inſide of his Noſtrils, into whic you are alſo to look, if the ſharpneſs of the Humo hath as yet occaſioned any Ulcer, which is a certa token of its great Malignity, not only becauſe it ma be juſtly ſupected to be the Glanders, but it is al dangerous for the infecting other Horſes. And the Horſe have attained to eight Years, you are no to venture upon him, even altho' that groſs an viſcous Humour ſhould have only proceeded from Rheum. As alſo if you perceive a fixed Kern which the Horſe cannot ſuffer you to handle, be cauſe of the great pain he endures by it, or that i caſts only at one Noſtril; or likewiſe if the Kern be very hard, though not painful; or if he do no Cough with it, although he be under ſix Years old I think in all theſe Caſes you may conclude with great deal of reaſon that it is the Glanders.

CHAP. VII.

How to know when a Horſe's Legs are good.

HAving before treated of the *Shoulders* in the ſ condChapter, I ſhall next conſider the *Le* which are the Pillars by which this Edifice is ſup ported.

The Fore-Legs are ſubject to many Infirmitie they are the Parts which ſuffer moſt, and are al commonly the ſmalleſt and weakeſt.

The firſt mark I ſhall give you of bad Legs, tha is, which are uſed and ſpoiled, is, if they appe altogether ſtraight, or as they were all of one Piec A Horſe is ſaid to be ſtraight upon his Members, wh from the Knee to the fore-part of the Coronet, th

Knee

nees, Shank, and Coronet deſcend in a ſtrait or um-line, and that the Paſtern-joint appears more, at leaſt as much advanced as the reſt of the Leg. ch Legs are like thoſe of a Goat, and make a orſe apt to ſtumble and fall; and in time, the aſtern is thruſt quite forwards out of its place, and e Horſe becomes Lame.

That a Leg may be ſaid to be right planted or uate, the Paſtern ſhould be placed about two Fin-rs breadth more backwards than the Coronet, at is, if you ſtretch a Thread or Line between e top of the Knee and the fore-part of the Coronet the Hoof, the fore-part of the Paſtern ſhould be ſtant from that Thread about the breadth of two ngers, more or leſs according to the ſize of the orſe; whereas in a Horſe that is ſtrait upon his embers, the fore-part of his Paſtern will be as far vanced as to the Thread or Line.

Horſes which are ſtrait upon their Members are uite contrary to thoſe that are long-jointed, that is, hoſe Paſterns are ſo long and flexible that the Horſe in walking almoſt touches the Ground with em. This is a greater Imperfection than the for-er, for to them there may be ſome Remedy uſed, ut for this there can be none. Beſides, it is a to-en of little or no ſtrength, and ſuch Horſes are ot fit for any kind of toil or fatigue.

Some Horſes, altho' they be long jointed, yet do ot bend their Paſterns in walking, and may prove erviceable. There are *Engliſh* Horſes of ſtrong eins, who altho' their Paſtern-joints are ſomewhat ng, yet if they are not too flexible, ſuch Horſes ill gallop and run with a great deal more eaſe to is Rider, than if he were very ſhort jointed: And eſe are the only Horſes for Perſons of Quality ho have wherewithal to ſeek after their eaſe and greeableneſs in a Horſe. Such Horſes may be ompared to Coaches with Springs, which render them

them infinitely more eaſie than thoſe witho
them.

This Imperfection of bending too much the P
ſtern-joint, ſhould be as carefully taken notice of
the Hind-Legs as in the fore: And there are al
ſome Horſes which bend too much only in th
Hind-Paſterns, and not in thoſe before, which is
token that they have a very weak Hind-Quarte
and is a great Imperfection, whatever kind of Se
vice they may be deſigned for: And if they hav
Wind-galls, they are more dangerous behind tha
if they were before. Neither will they be prope
for the Coach, becauſe they will not endure pulli
back, or ſtaying the Coach upon any deſcent.

Obſerve therefore narrowly, that the Paſter
joints be neither too ſtiff nor too ſmall, nor upo
the contrary too plying and flexible. For the Kno
ledge of all I have ſaid concerning a Horſe bei
ſtrait upon his Members, depends abſolutely upo
the exact obſervation of the Paſtern-joints.

Thoſe Horſes which are ſhort-legg'd, or ſhor
jointed, are ſubject to become ſtrait upon thei
Members, eſpecially, if, in Shoeing, their He
are left too high. Care therefore muſt be taken t
keep the Heels of ſuch Horſes very low, by fr
quent paring them.

Paſtern Crowned.

The Paſtern-joint is alſo ſometimes *Crowned*, a
we ſay, that is, when without being galled or hu
there is a Swelling goes round it beneath the Ski
in form of a Circle, and about half the breadth
one's Finger. It proceeds from a Humour gather
there through much Travel, and ſhews that th
Horſe's Legs have been too much uſed.

I ſhall only add, that Horſes which have thick
ſtiff, and ſhort Joints, that is no ways plying
flexible are unfit for the Manager: For glib an
flexible Joints, if they be not too long, are one
th

he chief Qualities required in a fine and delicate Horſe of Manage.

Legs Arched.

The next Imperfection of the Legs is, when they re *Arched*, which is, when the Horſe being in his atural ſituation hath his Knees bent forward, and is whole Leg frameth a kind of Arch or Bow. It roceedeth from exceſſive labour, which hath cau-ed the Nerves or Back-ſinews to ſhrink up, ſo that he Legs remain arched, and tremble beneath them hen they are made to ſtop, after they have been id a little. Such Horſes are not abſolutely uſe-eſs, becauſe they may work notwithſtanding of t. *Spaniſh* Horſes are for the moſt part arched in heir Legs, as they are brought old from *Spain*, be-auſe they always Fetter them in the Stable. So kewiſe in *Barbary*, they never make uſe of a Hal-er about the Head or Neck, in the Stable or at Graſs, but Shackle their Legs, and faſten them to Stakes placed in the Ground.

Some Horſes are foaled with arched Legs, and re not much the worſe for Service. But I would ot buy a Horſe with this Imperfection but at an aſie rate, and unleſs I were ſure that his Legs were o naturally, and not occaſioned by Labour or Fa-igue.

Having obſerved the three preceding Imperfecti-ns; *viz.* whether a Horſe be ſtrait upon his Mem-ers, long-jointed, or have arched Legs, you muſt ext paſs your Hand along the Back-ſinew of he Fore-leg, from the very bending of the Knee to he Paſtern-joint, and you ſhall obſerve if the Si-ew be large, firm, and at a good diſtance from the hank-bone (the broadeſt and flatteſt Legs being eſt) and that there be no hardneſs to ſtop your Hand, nor no moveable Jelly to ſlip between your ingers. There are ſome Horſes, who although they ave the Back-ſinew of their Fore-legs ſomewhat ſe-

parate

parate from the Bone, yet their ſinews are ſo ſm
and ſo little detached, that with ſmall Labour th
Legs will become round, and are called *Ox Legs*.

You are next to obſerve if the Back-ſinew do
not quite fail, as it were, juſt beneath the Ply
Bending of the Knee. For although it ſhould n
be ſo big there as in the middle of the Shank; y
in ſome Horſes it diminiſhes ſo extraordinarily, th
in that place it is no bigger than one's Thumb, or
ſo fixed to the Bone that it but very little appea
This much weakens the ſtrength of a Leg, thou
few People take notice of it: and ſuch Horſes a
for the moſt part ſubject to ſtumble, or at leaſt
trip and ſtrike with their Toes againſt the Stones.

Wind-Galls.

Upon the ſides of the Paſtern Joints, there com
ſmall Swellings full of Water, call'd *Wind-Galls*, e
ſily perceived by the Eye, which ſhew that his Le
have been too much uſed, but are not prejudici
unleſs they be hard and painful, which will in
ſhort time lame the Horſe. Small Wind-Galls d
often come to Horſes upon a Journey, and go aw
again with a little Reſt.

Splint.

Turning your Hand, feel along the fore-part
the Shank-bone, from the Knee downward, to fi
if there be any *Splint*; which is a callous Excr
cence or kind of Griſtle, adhering to the Shan
bone, and cometh commonly upon the inſide: B
if there be one oppoſite to it on the outſide, then
is call'd a *pegg'd* or *pinn'd Splint*, becauſe it doth as
were pierce the Shank-bone, and is very dangerous.

Thoſe ſimple Splints which are only faſtned to t
Bone at a pretty diſtance from the Knee, and wi
out touching the Back-ſinew, are not very dang
rous: But thoſe that touch the Back-ſinew, ma
the Horſe in a ſhort time to halt.

Eve

Every Saddle-horſe which hath a Splint ſhould be ſs valu'd than if he wanted it: and ſo proportio-bly if he have two. In Coach-horſes the Imper-ction is not ſo conſiderable. Some deny that a plint mounts upwards, but that it only dilates and tends it ſelf to the very Knee. But what way ever it cometh thither, it is certain that a Splint ining to the Knee always lames the Horſe.

Horſes have in the ſame place where the Splints me, that which we call *Fuzies*, which are two plints joined by the ends, one above the other, and e more dangerous than a ſimple Splint; and there-re I would never buy a Horſe which had them.

Oſſelets.

There are ſome Horſes which have little Bones or rd Excreſcences in the Knees, call'd in French *elets*; which is an Imperfection not very com-on, and the harder to be diſcover'd, becauſe they pear to be of the ſame Subſtance with the reſt of e Knee. It is a kind of large Splint juſt upon the ee, which deſcends about the breadth of two Fin-rs lower on the inſide of the Shank-bone than on outſide. Some Horſes have two of them, one on each Fore-leg. If a Horſe have any of theſe perfections, (excepting the ſimple *Splint*,) *viz.* *pegg'd Splint*, the *Splint* joyning to the Knee, or ck-ſinew, the *Fuzie*, and the *Oſſelet*, he is worth le or nothing.

Mallender.

There cometh in the bending of the Knee a Cre-e or Chop, called a *Mallender:* It is ſometimes ſo nful as to make a Horſe halt. Every Horſe with *Mallender* ſhould be the leſs eſteemed for it; for as grows old, the pain will increaſe ſo as to make n halt at firſt going out of the Stable.

Form.

Below the Paſtern-joint, and in the very Paſtern, u muſt feel if there be not that which is called in

French a *Forme*, which is a Swelling in the very Sub-
ſtance of the Paſtern, and not in the Skin. This
come as well in the Hind-legs as in the Fore; and
although it be an Imperfection not very common,
'tis dangerous, and no other Remedy but firing and
taking out the Sole; and the Fire alſo cannot be
applied to that place without great difficulty and
danger. There are ſome Swellings and Hardneſſes
which are only fix'd upon the Skin, and are not
what we call *Formes*, but are either a Button of the
Farcy, or ſome other kind of Swelling not very ma-
terial, being not all fix'd to the Subſtance of the
Paſtern.

Crown-Scab.

The *Crown-Scab* is a kind of itching Scurf upon
the Coronet of the Hoof. It is of two kinds,
Moiſt and a Dry. They make the Hair to ſtare,
and the Coronet to ſwell. It is as troubleſome an
Infirmity as a Horſe can have, and they rarely
cover.

Cloſed behind.

I ſhall next diſcover unto you the Imperfection
incident to the Hind-quarters. The firſt is when a
Horſe is too much *cloſed behind*; that is, when his
Hams are nearer to each other than the Feet, eſpe-
cially the Points of the Hams, called the *Hocks*, and
the diſtance enlarges ſtill towards the Feet. Some
Bow-legg'd Horſes are many times good; yet they
have commonly a weak Hind-Hand, and in great
Deſcents are apt to ſtrike their Hams againſt one
other. Yet it is better to have the Hams bow
inwards than outwards, which is a ſign of Weak-
neſs; and Amblers are more ſubject to it than
others.

The Ham ſhould be large and full, nervous and
dry; thoſe which are charged with Fleſh, or groſſ-
ed, will be ſubject to thoſe Imperfections I am ab-
to explain.

Capelet.

You are firſt to obſerve the tip or point of the *Hock*, here be a *Capelet* upon it; which may be known the Tip of the Hock being moveable, and more lled than ordinary. When it is ſmall it does no at prejudice, but if it ſhould grow large, it will painful, and make a Horſe loſe his Belly.

Veſſigon.

You are next to conſider if he have a *Veſſigon*, ich is a kind of Wind-gall or Swelling, about the neſs of half an Apple, leſs or more, compos'd of oft and ſpongeous Fleſh, growing between the ſh and Skin, and ſituate in the Hollow next to Hock, and beneath the big Sinew, a little above *Capelet*, and bending of the Ham, and which ap- rs but very little, except when the Horſe is reſt- equally upon both his Hind-legs; becauſe when bendeth his Ham it doth not appear at all, nei- r doth it often make a Horſe halt. It comes on both ſides the Ham, and ſometimes on one y, and is ſituate a little above the Numb. 29. in figure of the firſt Plate. Thoſe that are ſituate ver are not dangerous, and in young Horſes may diſcuſſed by moderate Exerciſe.

Curb.

There cometh upon the backſide of the Ham, ow the *Capelet*, and a little inclining towards the de, a Swelling, which is called the *Curb*, which kes the Horſe frequently to halt, and is incura-

Variſſe.

Upon the inſide of the Ham, a little diſtant from *Curb*, but about the ſame height, there is a Bone newhat high and elevate; and that part of the m which is below that Bone ſwelleth by a degor- g of the great Vein, and is called a *Variſſe*, which h not make a Horſe to halt, but only ſometimes ils his Sale by growing exceſſively large. Eaſe

and Reſt (eſpecially if the Part be daily bath with Spirit of Wine) will ſo reſtrict it, as to be perceptible for the time.

Spavin.

Below the *Curb* and *Variſſe*, but more upon inſide, beneath the bending of the Ham, do the *vins* come, which are marked 31. in the Figur the firſt Plate, which are very troubleſom, and commonly at laſt lame the Horſe. They are two kinds, *viz.* the *Ox Spavin*, and the *Dry Sp* The *Ox Spavin* is a callous and griſly Swelling, as a Bone, and ſo painful that it makes a Horſe his Belly. Some horſes halt with them at the coming out of the Stable only, when the *Sp* are but young: And I have ſeen Horſes with and ſmall *Ox Spavins*, which yet did not loſe Flanks with them, but rotted very equally, were ſold at the ſame Rates as if they had w theſe *Spavins*, becauſe no body obſerved them; when they were handled they felt as hard as Bone. Many half-skill'd People ſay, that Swellings are not *Spavins*, but the real Bones o Legs, which grow bigger in ſome Horſes than thers. When *Ox Spavins* do firſt ſeize upon H they are the more difficult to be obſerved, be they do not riſe much above the Subſtance o Legs; but yet at their firſt piercing they comm make a Horſe halt, and afterwards the Swe growing bigger, the Horſe halts no more wi But ſince they rarely come equally in both the H the one Ham is eaſily perceived to be bigger the other, which you may better diſcern, placing ſelf before the Horſe, a little towards one o Shoulders, than if you were juſt behind him: a *Spavin* in its infancy is larger towards the Pl Bending of the Ham, than behind it; and by grees it will ſo encreaſe, that it will at laſt lame the Horſe.

The ſecond kind is the *Dry Spavin* which is per-
ed by the moſt unſkilful: For when a Horſe in
king raiſes with a Twitch one of his Hind-legs
her than the other, he is then ſaid to have this
l of *Spavin*, and will have it many times in
h Hind-legs. Horſes that have this Infirmity
not always twitch up their Legs, but only when
firſt come out of the Stable, before their Legs
ſupplied with walking. They often degenerate
Ox Spavins; and there is no Remedy but to ap-
the Fire, and even that does not always cure 'em.

Jardon.

upon the outſide of the Ham, below the *Veſ-*
, there be a Swelling as hard as a *Spavin*, mount-
almoſt as high as the part where the *Veſſigon*
eth, it is call'd a *Jardon*, and is as much or
e to be feared than the *Spavin*. It is not very
mon, therefore few People know it, altho' it
s painful as the *Spavin*, and makes a Horſe to
There is no Remedy but firing, which does
always ſucceed. It is marked 32 in the Plate.
upon the Fore-ſinew of the Leg, between the
in on the inſide, and the *Jardon* without, there
s it were a Circle which joineth them, and in-
neth the Nerve of the Inſtep, the Horſe is ſpoilt
ruin'd paſt recovery.

Selender.

the Ply of the Ham, there are ſometimes
ps and Crevices which reſemble the *Mallender* in
ore-legs, and are called the *Selender*.
ou are alſo to obſerve if the Ply or Bending of
Ham be ſwelled, unleſs it proceed from ſome
dent, as caſting with the Halter, being intang-
with the croſs hanging Bar, or ſuch like; in
h Caſes there is not much to be feared. *Spavins*
Jardons, when they are hereditary, are incura-
They are more to be feared in young Horſes
in old, becauſe in young Horſes, Exerciſe and

Labour makes them increaſe; but in thoſe wh
are paſt ſeven or eight Years, when the *Spavi*
not very large, and provided they do not mean
halt with it, and have alſo a good Body and
Flank; in theſe, I ſay, it is not ſo much to be f
ed as in young; however in either it at laſt ſp
and ruins the Horſe.

I come now to ſpeak of the Infirmities o
Hind-legs, from the Ham downwards.

Rats-Tails.

There come upon the Back-ſinews *Rats-T*
they are known by the part being without H
from two or three Fingers breadth below the H
to the very Paſtern-joint, and are ſometimes d
and ſometimes moiſt, but always accompanied
Cruſts and hard Calloſities, more elevate than
reſt of the Leg. When they are moiſt they
forth a ſharp Humour. There are ſome Ho
which have them only in their Fore-legs, but
is very rare.

Coach-Horſes of a large ſize, who have
Legs charged with Fleſh, Hair, and full of bad
mours, are moſt ſubject to this and the fol
ing Infirmities, which ſeldom happen to Horſ
a middle-ſize.

There are a kind of Warts or Leek-heads, w
come about the Paſterns and Paſtern-joints. T
are higher than the Skin about half the thickn
ones Finger, throw out filthy ſtinking Stuff,
the Leg, and are very troubleſome to cure. T
which come in the Paſterns are hid beneath the
Hair of the Fetlocks, and are ſome of them ſo
malign, that they make the Hair fall all ar
them, and they themſelves grow up like Wall
There are others again more flat, and not ſo
raiſed above the Skin, but are more dangerous
thoſe which are biggeſt and moſt elevate; the
eaſily diſcovered, being a great many mattering

Warts touching one another, and are without air: They, for the moſt part, ſend forth Matter, t may be dried up for a Seaſon.

Figs.

There come ſometimes in the Soles mattering kind Warts, or rather *Figs* upon the Fruſh, and are a manner detached from it, and appear diſtinctly on the middle of the Fruſh towards the Heel, and mmonly exceed the ordinary height of the Fruſh. nd ſometimes they grow upon the ſides of the uſh, and beneath the Sole of the Foot: and when y are conſiderably raiſed above the Fruſh ſo that y touch the Ground as the Horſe is riding, they n cauſe him to halt.

A Man may know when a Horſe hath been cured *Figs*, becauſe that Foot will be larger than the , altho' the Horſe be well recover'd and render od Service.

Kib'd-Heels.

Traverſe-Mules or Kib'd-Heels, are Chops and Clefts ich ſurround the back parts of the Paſtern-joints ere they ply and bend. This is more painful n the preceding, becauſe theſe Chinks, as a Horſe iding, ſhut and open, which makes them very nful. This Infirmity ſhould not hinder a Man m buying a Horſe, if the Legs be not gorged and lled, becauſe they may be dried up, tho' with e difficulty, by reaſon of the motion made by Paſtern-joint.

Waters.

The Hind-legs are ſubject to a white, ſharp, and rupt Humour or *Waters*, which come very rarely he Fore-legs, and are known by ſearching the terns, if you find a Moiſtneſs beneath the Hair, ch is extremely ſtinking, and groweth all round Paſtern and Paſtern-joint, and ſometimes almoſt o the very Ham. They many times cauſe the Pans to ſwell, keep the Legs ſtiff, make the Horſe lean,

and ſeparate the Fleſh from the Coronet near to th
Heels. They are eaſily ſtopt at firſt: but whe
they have continued a long time, People are de
ceived when they think to diſcuſs them, thoug
they may be dried up for a certain time, but the
return again.

However I would not ſcruple to buy a youn
Horſe with ſome of theſe *Humours* or *Waters* in h
Paſterns, provided his Hams be dry, and that h
Legs be not gorged. And although he have muc
Hair on his Legs, if they be broad, nervous, an
diſcharged of Fleſh, he will not be ſubject to the
Infirmities, provided they be kept clean. But if h
Legs be charged with Fleſh, or have a full and fleſh
Ham, you ſhall never find any ſatisfaction in hi
If you undertake the Cure of theſe Infirmities i
Winter and cold Weather, they will give you a gre
deal of trouble: But in Summer-time the *Whi*
Charge in the ſecond Part of this Book will pr
duce ſuch Effects as you dare hardly wiſh for. S
the ſecond Part.

You are alſo to obſerve if his Paſtern-joints a
not ſwelled or have *Crown Scabs*; and if when he
ſtanding ſtill his Paſtern-joint be not lodged more
one ſide than the other; or if it bend too muc
forwards; or if he carry it ſo low that it miſhape
his Leg. Now ſome Horſes have this Weakneſs
their Hind-Legs, when they have it not in the
Fore.

Obſerve alſo if he hath a Wind-gall that hath
ny coherence with the Nerves, it being one
the greateſt Infirmities a Horſe can have,
ways laming the Horſe, and there is no Remed
but Firing.

Laſtly, you ſhall conſider if the Horſe tread on
upon his Hind-toes, which you may know by
Shoe being worn in that part: The Back-ſinew
the Leg ſhrinks up, and the older he grows, it will

l the worſe. But this may be remedied by me-
odical Shoeing when the Horſe is young.

CHAP. VIII.

How to know a Horſe's Feet.

HE Foot being a part of the Body which ſuf-
fers moſt: If a Horſe have but one bad Foot,
is fit for nothing but the Plow, or ſuch Countries
ich are free of Stones.

A Man muſt know Horſes very well to be able
judge exactly of ſome ſorts of Feet. For ſome
ll appear to be weak which are really good, and
e little Horn they have is tough, ſolid, and capa-
e to ſerve: Others again appear good, which are
ined for being too fat and full of Fleſh: The
eſt way then is to take them of a good ſhape,
d if they prove good, they may be eaſily kept ſo:
if bad, may be recovered by the right method of
oeing.

Let us begin with the *Hoof*, which ſhould be of a
rm very near round; and not longiſh, eſpecially
wards the Heel, for long Feet are worth nothing:
he Horn ſhould be tough and ſolid, high, ſmooth,
a dark Colour, and without any Circles. Brittle
oofs may be known by many pieces being broken
om the Horn round his Foot. A man may alſo
ow a bad Hoof by lifting up the Foot, and con-
ering if it have a Shoe forged expreſly for it,
d if it be pierced extraordinarily, and the holes of
placed in ſuch parts where it is not uſual, ſeeing
had not Horn enough to take hold by in thoſe
rts where commonly the Nails are driven. So Nails
e never driven near to the Heels of the Fore-feet,
t when the Toe is ſo much ſplit and broke that
ey can place none in it.

If

If the Foot be circled, altho' it do not make t
Horſe to halt or mean his Foot, yet it is a ſign tha
the Hoof is altered, or the Horn nought; therefor
other Circumſtances muſt be conſidered; as firſt, i
the Horn be thick, becauſe Horſes with a thin Hor
are ſaid to have fat Feet, and cannot be known bu
by ſeeing the Foot pared. Such thin-hoof'd Horſe
halt and mean their Feet a long time after they ar
ſhoed, before they recover ſtrength in them, ſ
that a Man is neceſſiated to let them reſt ſom
Days after they are ſhod, before he can make u
of them.

To know when Feet are fat, is one of the mo
difficult things in the Knowledge of Horſes, the
ſhape being as beautiful as that of another Foo
and the Horn maketh the beſt Appearance in th
World, only that the Hoof is ſomewhat larger tha
the ſize of the Horſe will allow of.

You are alſo to conſider if the Horſe have not
kind of Clift in his Foot called a *Falſe Quarter*, whic
is occaſioned by the Horſe's caſting his Quarter an
getting a new one; for then the Horn beginning t
grow, is uneven and ugly, and bigger and ſoft
than the reſt of the Hoof. If the clift be conſi
derable, and take up a quarter part of the Hoof
it ſhould keep a Man from buying the Horſe.

There are Horſes which have Over-reaches o
Calking-treads upon the Coronet, which becom
hollow and grooved in curing, but then the hollow o
the tread deſcends proportionably as the Hoof grow
and is viſible upon it: It doth little or no prejudic
to the Horſe if there remain no ſwelling upon th
Coronet.

There are ſome Clifts very dangerous; for whe
Farriers have ſometimes fired the Coronet, and burn
down a little upon the top of the Horn, it cauſes
clift or groove along the Hoof, which renders i
ugly and hard as long as the Hoof laſts, and com
mon

monly ſtraitens and dries up the Hoof in that part. However, it is not at all dangerous to apply Rays of Fire upon the Hoof, provided you do not burn the Coronet; nay, it is very profitable upon many occaſions to perform it; for Example, when a Heel or Quarter is ſo ſtraitned, that it preſſes the little Foot or Coffin-Bone, a Man may in that Caſe, inſtead of grooving the Hoof with a Drawing-Iron, apply the Rays of Fire after the manner I have taught you in the *Second Part*. Therefore when People ſee a Foot thus fired, they ſhould not be much ſtartled at it, but only conclude that it hath been ſtraitned, and that thoſe Rays of Fire have been applied to inlarge it.

You muſt now lift up the Foot, the Heel of which ſhould be pretty high, broad, large, and open, that is, without being Hoof-bound, which is to have it too narrow and ſtraight. You ſhall alſo conſider if the Frog or Fruſh be proportionable to the Foot, and that it be not too little and dry, nor too large and fat. Thoſe which are little, and too much dried up, fall to the ſhare of Hoof-bound or Narrow-heel'd Horſes, becauſe the Heels becoming ſtrait, hinder the Fruſh from being nouriſhed as it ought. When the Fruſh is too large and fat, it is higher than the Sole at the Heels, and is always a token of a very bad Foot.

The moſt part of Horſes which have low Heels, have large and fat Fruſhes, ſo that they cannot walk but they touch the Ground, and ſometimes halt, which ſhould be well conſider'd, becauſe moſt People, who underſtand Shoeing, take down their Horſes Heels to preſerve the Back-ſinews of their Legs: The Ignorant ſeeing a Heel cut and taken down in that faſhion, boldly pronounce that a Horſe hath none; but in that Caſe you are to obſerve the Fruſh, which being but of a middle ſize, the Horſe can ſcarcely be too low heel'd. You may

know

know by the Circumference of the Hoof, if the Heels are low, after a very little Experience.

You ſhall in the next place, keeping the Horſe's Foot ſtill up, conſider if the Sole be ſtrong, and the whole Foot hollow, and at a pretty diſtance from the Shoe, whereas ſome Feet are ſhaped like the back part of an Oyſter-ſhell, and the Sole is higher than the Hoof, ſo that the whole Foot is quite fill'd upon the lower part, they are then called *Crowned Soles*; and altho' ſuch Feet have for the moſt part their Heels low, yet are they ſtraitned and narrow towards the Shoe, and become in a little time abſolutely uſeleſs, unleſs it be for the Plow. Not but that by methodical Shoeing, care and time, ſuch Crowned Soles may in ſome meaſure be rectified, if the Heels be only ſtraitned near the Shoe, and have not their Fruſhes over large, and their Heels too low: For theſe laſt there is no poſſibility to recover them.

There are other kind of Feet which People call *Weak*, becauſe altho' their Heels be indifferent high, yet they are but thin, that is, that at the point of the Fruſh, betwixt it and the upper part of the Hoof they have but a ſmall thickneſs; and altho' they have the inward part of the Foot, that is, the Sole hollow, yet they have ſo little ſtrength in their Feet that they eaſily halt, and are alſo ſubject to heat their Feet upon hard ways, the pain whereof maketh them lame. Theſe kind of Horſes are very often upon their Litter, that is, People are obliged to let them ſtand ſoft, and give them but very moderate Labour.

Hoof-binding is known, when the Heels do not take a right tour or compaſs, but ſtraiten towards the clift of the Fruſh, ſo that upon each ſide of the ſaid clift, there is not above a Finger-breadth of diſtance, and that the whole Heel is little more than two Fingers broad. Whereas a Horſe ſhould always

ave about four at the Heel, little more or leſs according to the ſize and bigneſs of the Foot.

There are Narrow-heel'd Horſes which have igh Heels, but ſo weak, that by preſſing the two des of the Heel one againſt the other, they yield nd move, which is a token of tenderneſs in the oot; and altho' the Horſe were not Hoof-bound, et ſuch yielding Heels are always weak.

Some narrow-heel'd Horſes have not high Heels, ut on the contrary very low; but then that part f the Hoof next to the Heel, and which reſts upon he Shoe, is much more ſtraitned than that which is ext to the Coronet, and it is that which Hoof-indeth a Horſe: Now for theſe laſt, the *Panton*, or *Pantable* Shoes have a very good Effect.

There are Horſes which have the back-part of their aſterns next to the Heels, as if they were pointed, nd by that means have their Feet too long, becauſe hey exceed the ordinary roundneſs, and extend too uch backward: Commonly ſuch Horſes have ery bad Feet, and are for the moſt part Hoof-ound.

Beſides this Fault in ſmall ſized Horſes of being Hoof-bound, they are alſo ſubject to have one of he ſides of their Heels higher by an Inch than he other. This is a fault, tho' not ſo bad as Hoof-binding, becauſe Hoof-binding doth for the moſt art make a Horſe to halt, and is alſo a ſign of reat drineſs in the Foot; whereas this proceeds artly from the drineſs of the Foot; and ſometimes rom bad Shoeing: And the Method to prevent it, s to ſhoe and pare the Feet every Month, that ſo ou may keep them from taking that bad ſhape. mall ſized Horſes with narrow Heels, which never moiſten their Feet in wet Ground, are moſt ſubject o this Infirmity.

Hoof-bound Horſes are alſo ſubject to have *Seymes* r Clifts in their Quarters; the drineſs of the Foot

is

is the internal cauſe of both. The external cauſe the Horſe's riding upon hard Ground. It is eaſily perceived by their not ſetting their Feet firm upon the Ground in walking. Hoofs round and ſolid are ſeldom troubled with them.

They are known by looking to the Quarters of the Hoofs upon the inſide, which will be cloven from the Coronet to the very Shoe, quite through the Horn, and ſuch Quarters are commonly ſtraitned. Some of theſe Clifts do not aſcend ſo high as the Coronet, and are therefore leſs dangerous; and altho' they may be recovered, yet it is an Imperfection, eſpecially in fat Feet, which have a thin Horn, where oft-times ſuch Clifts occaſion ſcratches upon the Coronet. Horſes that have the Seyme cannot work but in very ſoft Ground; for upon the Street, or hard Ground, the Blood frequently comes out of the Clefts. Cloven Quarters are always a token of a dried Foot and bad temperature. Sometimes the Horn of the Hind-Feet cleaveth just in the very middle of the fore-part of the Hoof from the Coronet to the Shoe; they are called Over-feet: They are not common, but very troubleſome, and oft-times make a Horſe halt.

There is another Imperfection called in French *Crapaudine* or Tread upon the Coronet, and is a kind of Ulcer upon the Coronet, from whence there iſſueth a filthy Matter, which by its ſharpneſs drieth up the Horn beneath the part where the Tread is made, in which there is made a kind of hollow or groove down to the very Shoe, and it would ſeem that the Horn ſhrinks in that part by reaſon of that Humour, which inſtead of moiſtning it as it ought, changeth its Nature by the corruption it receiveth from the wound made by this Tread.

It is a great Imperfection to have Feet too large or fat, or to have them too little. Such Horſes as have them too large, are for the moſt part very heavy

heavy, and apt to ſtumble, eſpecially if with ſuch Feet they have weak Legs, and too long Paſterns. And on the other Hand too ſmall Feet, are much to be ſuſpected, becauſe they are frequently painful, and ſubject to cloven Quarters, and other Imperfections.

In foundred Feet, the Hoof oft times, towards the middle of the Foot, is ſhrunk and fallen in, hath many Circles quite round the Foot, and appears altogether altered and dry, with the Heels all circled. Such Feet become ſtill worſe, and the Horſe always ſets his Heels firſt to the Ground when he trots. Theſe bad kinds and ſhapes of Feet ſhould be rejected.

CHAP. IX.

How to know if a Horſe be well bodied, or have a good Belly.

HAving narrowly examined the Feet you muſt next conſider if he have a good Body, and be full in the Flank.

If the laſt of the ſhort Ribs be a conſiderable diſtance from the Haunch-bone, altho' ſuch Horſes may for the time have pretty good Bodies, yet if they be much laboured, they will loſe them, and theſe are properly the Horſes which have no Flank.

A Horſe hath alſo no Flank, when his Ribs are too ſtraitned in their compaſs, which is eaſily perceived by comparing their height with that of the Haunch-bones, for they ought to be as high and elevate as them, or but a very little leſs, when the Horſe is in good caſe.

If a Horſe be narrow cheſted, it not only hinders him from having a good Body, but his Wind and Breathing will never be very free, by reaſon of the laſt

laſt or hindmoſt Ribs compreſſing too much the ward Parts.

If ſuch Horſes as have their Ribs ſtrait be gr Feeders, then their Bellies will be gulphed up, that it not being poſſible for the Entrails to be c tained within the Ribs, they will preſs downwar and make the ſhape of a Cow's Belly, which is v unbecoming. Beſides that thoſe Horſes that ſtrait Rib'd are very difficult to ſaddle, for they m have Saddles made expreſly for them; they h no Wind, and are ſubject to the Cough. But t have generally a good Chine or Back.

If a Horſe's not having a good Belly proc from leanneſs, he may be recovered by Reſt Eaſe, with the aſſiſtance of cooling and moiſt m riſhment, eſpecially if his Ribs have a good co paſs; and if they have not, yet if he eat hear his Hay and Oats, and drink well, he may prov good as any for the Saddle, but I would not m dle with him for a Coach. Horſes with ſtrait R have generally good Backs, and altho' their Cro are not ſo beautiful, being for the moſt part point yet to ſupply that they have excellent Reins. T are commonly called *Sow-backs.*

It is an infallible Maxim, that a Man ſhould ver buy a Horſe which is both light bodied fiery, becauſe ſuch Horſes deſtroy themſelves in inſtant. Many People do ignorantly confo Firyneſs with Vigour or High-mettle; whereas Mettle doth not conſiſt in fretting, trampling, cing, and not ſuffering any Horſe to go before th but in being very ſenſible of the Spurs. Not that fiery Horſes are many times very high mett but their Fault is in being ſo, with this fretful D poſition.

Horſes which have any great pain in their H Quarters, are commonly light-bellied. There when you are ſhown a Horſe that is light-bell

k immediately to his Hams, and in all probability u will find there *Spavins*, *Jardons*, or *Capelets:* t but there are ſome light-bodied Horſes which e none of theſe Infirmities in their Hams, but re are few which have theſe Infirmities but what light-bellied.

Painful *Scratches* in the Hind-Legs will ſometimes e away a Horſe's Belly, but they ſhould not hin- you from buying, becauſe they may be eaſily ed. Yet if the Scratches are ſituate upon the k Sinew of the Leg, a pretty way above the ſtern-joint, altho' People may endeavour to make u believe they are nothing, I muſt tell you they one of the moſt troubleſome external Maladies a orſe can have. I have known Horſes to have m ſix, eight, and ten Months, others to become me by them, and ſome at laſt have died of m.

A Horſe low in Caſe cannot be made plump un- s he eat much Hay, which will make his Belly e that of a Cow with Calf, which may be reme- d with a Surcingle about a Foot and a half broad, h two little Cuſhions to it, which may anſwer the top of the Ribs upon each ſide of the Back- ne, to preſerve the Back from being galled with Surcingle. And by this means a big or low ly will paſs towards the Croup, and inſenſibly iniſh.

CHAP. X.

w to know when a Horſe's Flanks are altered and out of Order.

F a Horſe have a Flank full enough, you are to conſider if he have it not too la ge, that is, if r-againſt that part of the Thigh called the *Stiffle*,

(marked 27 in the Figure) the Flank fall too low for if ſo, it is a great advance to Purſineſs, eſpecially if the Horſe be not very young.

If he make a String or Cord in breathing, by attracting the Skin of his Belly where the Ribs ſtand making as it were a Channel or Groove all along them, then it is a token that his Flank beginneth to alter, or at leaſt a certain ſign that his Body is over-heated, that he hath been ſick, or will in a ſhort time become ſo. This Cord or hollow along the Ribs does many times appear in vigorous Horſes which have been undiſcreetly puſh'd on or over-ridden and then it is not a ſign of actual Purſineſs, but only that in a ſhort time it may become ſo.

When a Horſe is far gone with this Diſtemper it is eaſily known, yet at the beginning of it a Man may readily be deceived. Therefore that you may not be impoſed upon, you are firſt to conſider his Age, becauſe young Horſes are very rarely Purſive. You muſt next obſerve, if his Flank be not ſwoln or low'd up, or fall'n too low. But to be more certain, you muſt preſs his Wind-pipe near the out-ſide of the Head, that ſo you may make him cough, and then take notice to the Sound of it; if it be dry it is naught, and if it be dry and often reiterated it is yet worſe; if it be moiſt there is not ſo much hazard: But if he Farts as he Coughs, then it is almoſt always a ſign of Purſineſs. The ſureſt way is to view him in the Stable, immediately after he hath drunk, or when he is eating his Oats, for after galloping or travelling, or when he hath not dranken for a pretty while, a Man cannot ſo well judge of him; nor when he is at Soil or Graſs, which altho' it be thought to recover ſome Horſes while they are at it, yet is quite contrary: For as ſoon as ever they are taken up, and put to Hay and Oats again, they will be worſe than ever.

You muſt exactly obſerve if the Horſe's Flanks ouble as he is breathing, which is when having ath'd and drawn up his Flank to him, he letteth own on a ſudden, and maketh at the very ſame e, and with the ſame breath, a redoubled mo-n, as if he breathed a ſecond time with one and ſame breath. You muſt alſo obſerve if the mo-n of his Flanks appeareth at the upper part of his rt Ribs, which is a ſign that his Flanks are al-ed, but yet a great deal more if they beat and ke their Motion at the very top, and juſt by his k-bone or too low and over-againſt the flat t of his Thighs. If the Horſe be far gone with Diſtemper, his Lungs will be dried up and cleave he Ribs, and there is no cure.

After you are certain that the Horſe's Flank is ht and ſound, you are to obſerve if he be not a *eezer* or *Blower*, which is quite different from Pur-ſs. For this Wheezing does not proceed from defect in the Lungs, but from the narrowneſs, the Paſſages between the Bones and Griſtles he Noſe. And theſe Horſes do not want Wind, although they blow ſo exceſſively when they are rciſed, yet their Flanks will be but little moved, in the ſame Condition as they ſhould be. How-r it is diſpleaſing to the generality of People, o for the moſt part take them to be Purſy.

There are other Horſes again which are thick-ded, that is, who have their breathing a little re free than the former, but neither the one nor other are agreeable, or for any great Service. a Man may be miſtaken in it; for when a rſe hath been kept a long time in the Stable hout exerciſe, he will at firſt riding be out of nd, altho' he be neither a Blower nor thick-ded.

There are ſome Wheezers or Blowers which rattle make a noiſe through their Noſe; but this im-

pediment goeth and cometh, and proceedeth on
from abundance of Phlegmatick ſtuff, for his Flank
will not redouble, neither will he have a Cough
with it, and therefore cannot be Purſy.

In buying Coach-Horſes People are many times
caught and deceived, if they do not ſee them draw
before they pay for them. For ſome of them while
they are ſhowing, will trot unitely, with their
Shoulders free and eaſy, and having a good motion
ment with their Legs, will plant their Feet right
upon the Ground, keeping their Heads high and
firm; and yet when harneſſed and put to a Coach
will as ſoon as they have trotted a little, puff and
blow like Oxen. Therefore before you pay for a
Coach-Horſe, ſee him draw, and if in drawing he
ſtoop with his Hind-Parts, and raiſe his Fore, that
he will draw right; but if he raiſe his Hind-Parts
and ſtoop with his Fore, then he will draw ill.

You are in the next place to conſider if the Horſe
be *Cheſt-foundred*, which is known by the ſame Symptoms almoſt as Purſineſs. The only Difference is
that young Horſes are ſubject to Cheſt-foundring as
well as old; whereas they are commonly Horſes of
ſix Years old and above that are troubled with Purſineſs; at leaſt, it is a Diſeaſe which rarely happens
to very young Horſes, and when it does, they have
it naturally from their Sire or Dam.

Cheſt-foundring may proceed from Crudities in
the Stomach, or other Infirmities obſtructing the
Paſſages of the Lungs. The difference between
Cheſt-foundring and Purſineſs is, that in the firſt
there is hopes of Recovery, but none in the laſt.
Graſs, and much refreſhing and cooling cure Cheſt-
foundring, but encreaſe Purſineſs.

CHA

CHAP. XI.

ow to know when a Horſe is right planted on his Limbs, and if he walks or treads well.

Efore you ſee him walk, obſerve him as he is ſtanding in the Stable; becauſe upon the right wrong *Camping* of a Horſe, his good or bad ing in a great meaſure depends. He ſhould ſtand ally upon his Legs, and not one advanced before other. If he advances one of his Hind-legs, letg the Toe only to touch the Ground, it is no bad n: But if he advances one of his Fore-legs, and ly point it to the Ground, it would be a ſign t he is pained in that Leg. There be ſome Hor, as there are Men, who can never plant themves right upon their Legs; and I have ſeen ſeveral orſes advance one of their Fore-legs more than the er, who had nevertheleſs their Legs good, and ver made a falſe Step. His Legs ſhould be wider ove than below; that is the Diſtance between Feet ſhould be leſs than between his Fore-thighs, hat part next to the Shoulders. The Knees ſhould be too cloſe, but the whole Leg ſhould deſcend a ſtrait Line to the very Paſtern joint, and the t ſhould be turned neither out nor in.

As for the Hind-hand, his Jarrets or Hams ſhould be too cloſe. The Inſtep which is betwixt the ck and Paſtern-joint, ſhould ſtand perpendicular the Ground: If it ſtand forward under his Belly, ſituation of it is bad; or if he turn the Toes of Hind-feet much outward, eſpecially if deſigned the Coach, becauſe for want of ſtrength in his unches, he cannot ſo well keep back upon any ſiderable deſcent. Therefore put him back your Hand; and if in going back, the Toes

of his Hind-feet turn outward, he will be for
great Service, and the more he turns them o
the more reaſon you will have to conclude he i
bad Horſe, whatever other Qualifications he m
have.

Having thus obſerved him ſtanding, let him
trotted along the Street in one's Hand, and take
tice if the lifting up, keeping up, and ſetting do
of his Legs be ſuch as I am going to deſcribe;
alſo if he keep his Reins ſtrait and equal witho
rocking or ſwinging; his Head high, well place
and firm; for if he halt he will mark every time
his Trot with a motion of his Head.

Then cauſe ſome body to ride him a foot-pa
wherein you are to take notice if he have the *Rai*
or lifting up of his Leg, the *Stay*, or keeping o
up, and the *Tread* or ſetting of it down, all good.

The *Raiſing* will be good if he perform it hard
and with eaſe, not croſſing his Legs, nor carry
his Feet too much out or in, and that he alſo be
his Knees as much as is needful.

The *Stay* is good when he keeps them up ſo lo
as he ought, his Head and Body remaining in
good Poſture, and if he do not ſet down one L
ſuddenly to give eaſe to another Leg which is we
or pained.

The *Tread* is good if it be firm, and without re
ing upon one ſide of the Foot more than upon t
other, or ſetting down the Toe or Heel one before
other: If he ſet his Heels firſt to ground, then is
a ſign that he is founder'd in the Feet; but if
ſhall ſet his Toes firſt to ground, then will it be
Token that he hath been a Draught-Horſe: T
whole Foot therefore ſhould be ſet down equal
and at the ſame inſtant of time, and turned neith
out nor in.

Some Horſes, although they have the *Raiſing*, *St*
and *Tread* of the Foot very good, yet they have

d Walk, therefore it is not altogether enough
conſider in a Walk theſe three Actions of the Leg,
t you muſt alſo obſerve if he walk *Lightly*, *Surely*,
uickly, and *Eaſily*.

To walk *Quickly*, is to advance conſiderably up-
n the Step: Now every one is a competent
dge to know whether he ſteps quickly or ſlow-
upon his Walk, and therefore I ſhall ſay no more
it.

To walk *Lightly*, is to be light on the Hand; that
he ſhould not preſs or reſt too much upon the Bit,
t be always champing upon it, keep his Head
gh, and move quickly his Shoulders.

A Horſe will walk *Eaſily* if he be united; that is,
his Fore-hand and Hind are, as they were, both
e when he walks, and if they both make, as it
ere, but one Motion. There are ſome Horſes
hoſe Fore-quarters go right, but their Croup, when
lking, ſwings from ſide to ſide, which is called
rocking Croup. And when ſuch a Horſe trots, one
the Haunch-bones will fall and the other riſe, like
e Beam of a Ballance; which is a ſign that he will
t be very vigorous.

To walk *Surely*, he muſt lift up his Legs indiffe-
ntly high: If he does not bend them enough he
ll be cold in his Walk, and apt to ſtrike upon the
ones and Clods. This cold way of walking or
ding is for the moſt part a Token that the Horſe
th his Legs ſpoilt; although many Colts have a
ld Walk before ever they be wrought. More-
er to walk *Surely*, a Horſe ſhould have his *Tread*
od and firm, that he may not be ſubject to ſtum-
e, but ride ſecurely.

The Opinion of moſt People is to be admired, who
etend to know if a Horſe goes well, if he over-
ſſes the Tread of his Fore-foot very much with
s Hind, which is a moſt ridiculous Miſtake, and
ould be joined with that of paſſing the Hand

before a Horſe's Eyes, to know if he have a good Sight.

Moſt Horſes which thus overpaſs, if they do it conſiderably, ſwing their Croup from one ſide to t'other and rock, which is contrary to what we required in a good Walk. Beſides ſuch Horſes commonly *Forge*; that is, with the Shoes of their Hind-feet they overtake thoſe of their Fore and ſo pull them off upon the Road; neither have they any Reins or Mettle. I don't deny but ſuch a Horſe may walk ſwiftly, but he will rarely have good Reins; neither can he go eaſily, becauſe he has not a quick, but long and ſtretched Step all upon his Shoulders, which will make him more ſubject to ſtumbling, becauſe he is not ſupported by his Reins.

This Obſervation of a Horſe's overpaſſing with his Hind-foot the Tread of his Fore, is as good a Remark for his Ambling well, as it is bad for his Walking well: For it is certain a Horſe can never amble upon his Haunches, nor go well, if he do not with his Hind-feet overpaſs the Treads of his Fore, atleaſt a Foot, or a Foot and a half; and the more he overpaſſes the better will he amble.

There are ſome Horſes, who although they have too long Haunches, yet commonly walk well. Such Horſes are good to climb up Hills; but to ballance that, they are no ways ſure upon a deſcent; for they cannot ply their Hams, and they never gallop ſlowly, but almoſt at full ſpeed.

The Haunches are too long, if when the Horſe is ſtanding in the Stable, he camps with his Hind-feet farther back than he ought, and that the top or croſet of his Tail doth not anſwer in a perpendicular Line with the tip of his Hocks, as it always does in Horſes whoſe Haunches are of a juſt length.

CHA

CHAP. XII.

How to know if a Horſe's Mouth be good.

A Horſe to have a good Mouth ſhould have a well-rais'd Neck, and if it be ſomewhat large d thick, it ſhould be at leaſt well turned, his ins ſtrong and well ſhaped, and his Legs and et likewiſe. If he have all theſe right, no doubt t he will have (unleſs it be by accident) a very ood Mouth. But if his Jaw-bones be too cloſe, d that he have alſo a ſhort and thick Neck, ſo at he cannot place his Head right, his having a ood Mouth will be to little purpoſe, becauſe you nnot make uſe of it.

Having felt his Jaw-bones, to know if they are fficiently ſeparated, put your Finger into his outh, preſſing his Barr pretty hard with it, and you find it paineth him, it is a token that the rr is ſenſible, and conſequently that his Mouth good; however too great a degree of Senſibility ould render it bad, as I ſhall ſhew you.

If the place where the Curb reſts be hurt, you may r by it, that the Horſe has either a bad Mouth, is too much upon the Bit in travelling, or that e Rider hath a hard Hand, or the Curb is ill ade: But in buying a Horſe a Man ſhould always nclude the worſt againſt him, and believe that the ace where the Curb reſts hath been hurt, either his having too hard a Preſſure upon the Curb, by his Mouth's not being ſo ſenſible as it ought. the Barr have been hurt, although it be healed , it is almoſt as much to be ſuſpected as a bad outh, becauſe the Scar where the Wound was, ll never have that Senſe of feeling it had be-

fore

fore, nor will the Mouth of the Bit reſt ſo equa upon it.

To be certain of a Horſe's Mouth, you muſt p him on pretty ſmartly, and then preſently ſtop hi by his parting you will know if he be tickli mouth'd by his chacking the Bridle, or throwi up his Head. Again by his Stop; you will find he ſtop eaſily, and by the leaſt Motion of yo Hand, with his Head firm and well placed.

The Mouth ſhould be full of Froth; and if champ continually upon the Mouth of his Bit, is a token of a good Horſe, for few bad ones ha this Action.

If the Froth be thin and fluid, or of a pale, gr or yellowiſh colour, it denotes a bad-temper Brain; but if it be white and thick, cleaving his Lips, and Branches of the Bridle, then y are to look upon the Mouth to be freſh, and th the Horſe is of a good Conſtitution, and ſound his Body.

CHAP. XIII.

How to judge of a Horſe's Vigour and Agility.

WHen the Horſe is ſtanding ſtill, keeping h faſt with the Bridle-hand, apply your Spu juſt to the Hair of his Sides, which by Horſem is termed *Pinching:* And if you find him to be i patient under you, aſſembling himſelf, and end vouring to go forward, champing upon the B without thruſting out his Noſe, it is a ſign of He and Vigour. There are ſome Horſes which ſhew great deal of Mettle when they are pinched, b immediately loſe the apprehenſion of it; ſo th

thou

ough they have a very ſenſible feeling, which pro-eeds moſt from the thinneſs of their Skin, yet e of a dull and craving Nature and Diſpoſition. f ſuch Horſes it may be ſaid, that they are rather kliſh, than really ſenſible of the Spurs.

There is great Difference between a mettled orſe and a fiery one. A mettled Horſe ſhould eſteem'd, but a fretting and fiery Horſe is good r nothing. A Horſe truly vigorous ſhould be calm d cool, ride patiently, and not diſcover his Met-e but when required.

Some Horſes when a Man gives them the Spurs, ill not endure them, nor go forwards, but as it ere cleaving and faſtning to them, ſtrike out, d go back; and if you preſs them hard, they ill then fall a paſſing, and not ſtir out of the place. he be a Gelding, he will with Difficulty quit this umour; but if he be a Stoned-Horſe, he may per-ps forget it for a time, if he be under the Con-uct of a good Horſeman; but if he once get the aſtery of any of his Riders, he will then be juſt begin a-new again. This is not to ſay, but eldings, if guilty of any other Vice but this of icking againſt the Spurs, may be eaſily reduced, they have not been long accuſtomed to it. In a ord, every Gelding, Stone-horſe, or Mare, which oes not fly the Spurs, but obſtinately cleaves to d kicks againſt them, ſhould be look'd upon as a croſs and dogged nature, and therefore to be jected.

When you mount a Horſe to try him, if he will t obey, but endeavours to go where he will, you e to reject him, as a reſty Jade ought always to be; r a Man ſhould buy Horſes which have no other ill ſave that of their Rider. Theſe kind of Hor-s never quit altogether this Vice, and therefore ould not be meddled with.

The

The ſureſt Method will be to chooſe ſuch Hor
ſes as are very apprehenſive of Strokes, and are a
fraid at the leaſt appearance of them, which a
the only cloſing or graſping of the Legs, or rath
Thighs, are afraid and alarm'd, and that wit
out fretting or fierineſs. A Horſe which walks de
liberately and ſecurely, without needing too ofte
the Whip, and without fretting, goes from th
Walk to the Gallop, and from the Gallop to th
Step again, without being diſquieted, but alwa
champing upon his Bitt, trots with a Glibneſs u
on his Shoulders, and Gallops eaſily, ſnorting
little thorow his Noſtrils: If he be well upon h
Haunches, have a light and eaſie Stop, his He
firm and well placed, and the feeling of th
Bitt equal and juſt, I ſay, if he have theſe Qua
ties, you will ſeldom have cauſe to complain for h
Price.

I ſhall only add, that whatever other good Qu
lities a Horſe may have, that you never give a go
Rate for him, unleſs he have theſe two, of havi
a good Mouth, and being ſenſible and obedient
the Spurs.

CHAP. XIV.

After what manner a Man ſhould mount and try Horſe he intends to buy.

AFter you have ſeen the Horſe rid by anoth
Perſon, it will be fit to mount him your ſe
that you may know if his going pleaſe you.

Take the Horſe as he comes out of the Stable, a
if poſſible before he hath been rid that day, a
without animaling, or in the leaſt frighting h
with your Legs or Rod, ſlack your Bridle-hand
bout four Finger's breadth, more than is neceſſa

feel him on the Hand, letting him go at a Step cording to his own Fancy and Humour, with his ead lolling if he will, and you no ways troubling m: Now if you can have but Patience to let him lk thus for a quarter of an Hour, if he incline ſtumble, he will trip more than once, and per-ps ſalute the Ground with his Noſe, if he be very bject to it. If he be heavy on the Hand, he will ſt wholly upon the Bit, and be a burden to the idle-hand. If he be dull and lazy, he will dimi-ſh inſenſibly the train of his Walk, and will at ſt ſtand ſtill. To put him on again, you muſt ove gently your Body and Legs, nay, even your rms, and infallibly you will know your Horſe tter thus in half an Hour, than in half a Day by y other Method. Again, if after having made is proof, you cauſe him to go at an attentive Pace, d that he be under the apprehenſion of your urs, he will unite all his ſtrength and mettle to eaſe you; whereas if you ſuffer'd him to walk on gligently at his pleaſure, he would not much help advance his Sale; becauſe it is commonly in the ſt hundred yards or ſo, that a Horſe after he hath en ſwitch'd or ſpur'd, gives the greateſt token of s Mettle, by reaſon the correction he received is long freſh in his Memory: But if after he is once ed of that apprehenſion, by your Negligence in eſſing him on, and ſlackneſs of your Thighs d Legs, he notwithſtanding go chearfully for-ard, with a raiſed and well-placed Head, and amping his Bit, his Step well raiſed and reſolute, thout either ſtumbling or ſtriking the Clods or ones in the Way, I ſay, ſuch a Horſe without oubt cannot but be vigorous and metled, and alſo well.

As for *Amblers* they ſhould go roundly and equally, at is, their Hind-Quarters ſhould exactly accom-ny their Fore, and not go as if they were in two pieces

pieces or halves: But above all, you ſhould obſerv
if the Perſons upon them make but a little motio
with their Bodies, which will be a certain token tha
ſuch Horſes go well, and that not only the Amble
but alſo the Step.

The beſt Obſervation for Amblers, and to know
if they really go well, is to take notice if they ove
lay much in ambling, which is, if with their Hind
Feet they over-paſs a Foot and a half, or two Foo
the print of their Fore, for the more they over-pa
them with their Hind-Feet the better will the
Amble, becauſe it is impoſſible for them thus t
over-paſs with their Hind-Feet the tread of their For
without plying conſiderably their Haunches, whic
is the perfection of the Amble.

It now remains that I ſpeak of thoſe Horſ
which go ſhuffling and mixt Paces, which, generall
ſpeaking, are worth nothing, and commonly ſuc
Horſes are fretful and fiery, which obliges them
their firſt out-ſetting to betake themſelves to ſuc
ſhuffling Paces. Sometimes alſo it proceeds fro
a weakneſs either in their Reins or Legs; but if
hath never been a Horſe's cuſtom to go a ſhuffli
Pace betwixt the Walk and Amble, and that yo
find he now inclines to it of his own accord, it is
ſign that his Legs are either ſpoil'd or weak, an
that he endeavours by this kind of Pace to give ea
to them.

A Horſe deſigned for hunting ſhould be vigoro
and full of Mettle (but not fiery,) gallop upon h
Haunches, and graze but ſlightly upon the Grou
with his Feet; that is, ſhould go ſmooth, and n
raiſe his Fore-Feet too high. His Head and Nec
high and well-placed, without reſting too much up
the Snaffle, and alſo giving a little ſnort with h
Noſtrils each ſtroke he makes, which is a token o
good Wind. When you make tryal of a Gallop
obſerve if he perform it equally, and puſh him on
lit

le hard, that you may know by his Stop if he ve ſtrength and vigour which is called a *Source Fund*, and if he be alſo ſenſible of the Spurs.

CHAP. XV.

f the different Colours of Horſes: with ſome Obſervations that may be drawn from them.

THE Duke of *Newcaſtle* ridicules all ſuch as regard either Colour or Marks, and laughs at oſe who think that a Horſe is compoſed and nouhed by the four Elements; for, ſaith he, both en and Horſes receive their Suſtenance from Meat d drink only. However, ſince ſome People will t be perſwaded, but that the natural Temper and onſtitution of Horſes may be diſcovered in a great eaſure by their colour, I ſhall briefly name them to you.

The moſt common of all Colours is the Bay: me have dark Spots on their Croup, and are cal-d *Dappled Bays.*

The dark Bay is that which is almoſt black, only th a little brown Hair upon the Flanks and tip of e Noſe; and is therefore ſometimes called *Brown y.*

All theſe kind of Bays have their Manes and Tails ack: Neither was there ever a Bay Horſe which d not his Extremities black.

The Grays are of ſeveral kinds.

The branded Gray is he which hath large black ots diſperſed here and there.

The light or ſilver Gray is when there is a very all mixture of black Hairs, and only ſo much as ay diſtinguiſh it from the white.

The ſad or powder'd Gray is a colour with a very eat mixture of black Hairs in it, and is a pretty colour

colour when the Mane and Tail are white: Th
Black Gray is almoſt the ſame with a great deal
Black, and but little white. The Browniſh or Sa
dycouloured Gray, is when there is Bay-colour
Hairs mixed with Black, and is a very good colo
The Dapple-Gray is commonly known.

Of Pye-bald Horſes are ſeveral kinds, as Blac
Bay, and Sorrel. The leſs white they have, it is
much the better token of their goodneſs.

The Roan is as good a colour as any of the pr
ceding; and there are ſeveral kinds, as the Ro
of a Wine-like colour, which approaches near
the colour of a pale Claret, and the Roan with
black Head, which hath alſo his Mane and T
black.

The Starling-colour ſomewhat reſembles t
browniſh or black Gray, only more freckled, a
having a conſiderable deal more white, reſembli
the colour of that Bird's Breaſt and Back-feathers

Horſes of the colour of a Peach flower or Bl
ſom are very rarely ſenſible and obedient to
Spurs, but their colour is delicate and pleaſing
the Eye.

The Sorrel is a kind of Bay of a brown or rat
reddiſh colour. There are but few but what
good, eſpecially if their Manes, Tails, and L
be black.

There are ſeveral kinds of Sorrels, and their
ference chiefly conſiſts in the colour of their Ma
and Tails: As,

The Red or Cow-coloured Sorrel, with the M
and Tail White, or of the ſame colour with t
Bodies.

The Bright or Light-coloured Sorrel, hath co
monly the Mane and Tail White, and is not m
worth.

The Common-Sorrel, which is as it were a Me-
n between the Red and Bright, is that which
ommonly called Sorrel, without any other di-
ction.

The Burnt-Sorrel is of a very deep brown and
diſh colour, and ſhould have always the Mane
Tail white, and they are very rarely of another
our; and this is a beautiful and good Colour.

The moſt part of Sorrel Horſes, except ſuch as
e their Flanks of a pale colour, and their Ex-
nities white, anſwer readily to the Spurs, and
for the moſt part of a cholerick Conſtitution.

There are other mixt kind of colours, ſuch as the
bican; which is when a black or ſorrel Horſe
h white Hairs here and there ſcattered upon his
dy, but eſpecially upon his Flanks.

The Mouſe-colour or Dun is well known. Many
hem have black Liſts along their Backs, called
-back'd. Others have their Legs and Hams liſted
rayed with black, with their Manes and Tails
e black. Some are of a bright Dun-colour, but
dark are moſt ſerviceable, eſpecially if their
remities be black.

The Wolf-colour is of two kinds, bright or dark;
be very bright, it reſembles the Iſabella-colour;
Horſes have always, or at leaſt ſhould have, a
k Liſt along their Backs, with their Manes,
ls, and Legs black; and are for the moſt part
good.

The Tiger-colour is almoſt the ſame with the
nded-Gray before-mentioned, only that the Spots
not by far ſo big.

The Deer-colour is ſufficiently known, and if ſuch
ſes have their Manes, Tails, and Legs black,
will prove good; and if they have a black Liſt
g their Backs, they will be ſo much the bet-

Altho' there be good Horſes of all colours, there are good Greyhounds of all Marks, yet I ſh tell you which colours are moſt eſteemed, and conclude this Chapter.

The Bay, Cheſnut, Dapple-gray, Roan wit black Head, the burnt and dark Sorrel, the Bl with a Blaze or Star in the Forehead, are all go colours.

I have ſeen ſome very good Iron-coloured Gr altho' it be generally no good colour. And I h known very good White Horſes, which were bl all about their Eyes and Noſtrils.

The Flea-bitten Gray, which have good E ſeldom fail to prove good, but there are but f Horſes of this colour untill they become a little ag Thoſe that are Flea-bitten in their Fore-Parts commonly excellent; and if they have them over their Bodies, the Mark is ſo much the be But if they have them only upon their Hind-Q ters, and none upon their Fore, then they are ra good.

CHAP. XVI.

Of White Feet, Stars, Blazes, Feathers.

ALtho' theſe Marks in the Opinion of the D of *Newcaſtle*, are nothing but ſo many Abſur ties, as alſo what People ſay of white-footed Hor that there are four good Marks belonging to the and ſeven bad; yet ſince many People rely mu upon them, I ſhall deſcribe them as briefly as I ca

The firſt good Mark is when a Horſe has o his far Fore-foot; the ſecond when he hath his n Hind-Foot white. The far Hind-foot white eſteemed a bad Mark. The two Fore-feet white a bad Mark, but not very common. I have kno

few Horſes with this Mark, neither were they ch worth.

The two Hind-feet white is a good Mark, eſpeci- if he have a Star or Blaze in his Forehead.

The two Fore-feet, and one Hind-foot white, is newhat better than the two Fore-feet alone.

Four white Feet ſhews good Nature, but are com- nly not very ſtrong; and their Fore-feet will line to be brittle becauſe of the whiteneſs of the rn.

Two Feet of a ſide white is a bad Mark, and ſo s when a Horſe is Croſs-white-footed; altho' e People look upon it as a good Mark to have far Fore-foot and near Hind-foot white, eſpeci- if he have a Star with it.

Ermined white Feet are thoſe which are freckled h little black Spots round the Coronets: An ex- lent Mark.

The higher the White aſcends upon a Horſe's gs, he is ſo much the worſe. But after all, the gment drawn from Colours and Marks is accord- to Men's Fancies, there being good and bad all Colours, as well as of all Marks.

A *feather* is nothing elſe but a turning of the Hair, embling in ſome an Ear of Barly, and a kind of et-hole in others. When it reaches a good way ng the upper part of the Neck, near to the Mane, s a good Mark, and if it be on each ſide the ck, the Mark is the better. So likewiſe if there in the Forehead two or three of theſe Oilets ſe- ate from each other, or ſo joined that they form ind of Feather. Or if the like Mark be upon ply of a Horſe's Hind-Thigh, and upon the k part of it near to where the end of his Dock Rump reacheth, it is a very good Mark.

t is ſaid of Horſes which have white Faces or zes, that if the Blaze be divided in the middle, ſs-ways, the Horſe will be of an odd diſpoſition.

But if his near Hind-Foot be white, it will rec
that blemiſh.

Every Horſe that is not White or Gray, is eſtee
ed the better for having a Star in his Forehe
You may eaſily diſcover when it hath been made
Art, becauſe there will be no Hair in the mid
of it, and the white Hairs will be much longer t
the reſt.

The *Hollanders* roaſt a large Onion in hot Aſ
and being almoſt throughly roaſted, they divid
in two, and dip it into ſcalding hot Walnut-
after which they immediately apply the flat ſid
it to that part of the Forehead where they intend
make the Star, and there keep it for half an H
and then take it away and anoint the ſcalded p
with the Ointment of Roſes: In a ſhort time
Scarf-Skin falls away, and there grows up in
new one ſome white Hairs, but the Star in the
dle remains always without Hair, as was before
ſerved.

CHAP. XVII.

How to know if a Horſe have a good Appetit be jubject to the Tick.

BEfore you conclude your Bargain when you
buying a Horſe, obſerve if he eat hear
For tho' there are ſome great Feeders which ar
great Toilers; yet there are very few which
endure a long Fatigue, but what have exce
Appetites.

If a Horſe be light-bellied, it were convenie
try him one Night, giving him fifteen or tw
pound weight of Hay, and if there be none
Morning remaining, he has a good Appetite.
ſerve alſo if he drink well.

Light-bellied Horſes, altho' they may eat their
ts heartily, yet for the moſt part do not eat
ch Hay, nor conſequently drink luſtily, whereby
y cannot travel ſo well, becauſe with Oats alone
y are too much over-heated, when a Man is ob-
ed to give a great quantity of them, that ſo they
y ſupply the want of Hay.

You may be eaſily deceived, if you conclude that
Horſe has a good Appetite, becauſe he is fat and
y, and carries a good Belly; for he may have
n pamper'd for ſome time, and yet may diſguſt
l loſe his Appetite by the leaſt Fatigue.

Some Horſes, as they eat their Oats, take their
ads out of the Manger, and yet eat all up; thoſe
rſes may have a good Appetite, but loſe a great
l of their Oats; whereas he ſhould not ſtir his
ſe from among them untill they are all eat up.
t (if his Oats are freſh and no ways muſty) and
forſake them and fall to eating his Hay, you may
clude that he hath no good Appetite.

Take notice while he is eating his Oats if he be
t ſubject to the *Tick*, which is a preſſing the Edge
he Manger with his upper Teeth, and giving a
d of Belch through his Throat, whereby he loſes
t of his Oats.

Laſtly, When you are buying a Horſe, take care
t to fall in love with him, for when this Paſſion
h once ſeized you, you are no longer in a Con-
ion to judge of his Imperfections.

CHAP. XVIII.

Directions for preſerving Horſes ſound upo Travel.

FIrſt ſee that his Shoes be not too ſtrait and pi his Feet, but be exactly ſhaped, and let him ſhod ſome Days before you begin a Journey, t they may be ſetled to his Feet.

You are next to ſee that he be accommoda with a Bit proper for him, and by no means heavy, which may incline him to carry low, or reſt upon the Hand when he grows weary, wh we call making uſe of his fifth Leg. The mo of the Bit ſhould reſt upon his Bars, about half a F ger's breadth above his Tuſhes, and not make to frumple his Lips. The Curb ſhould reſt in hollow of the Beard, a little above the Chin, an it gall him, you muſt defend the place with a pi of Buff or ſoft Leather.

The next thing to be obſerved is, that the Sad do not reſt upon his Withers, Reins, or Back Bo and that no part of it do more preſs his B than another.

To know if it reſt equally over all, cauſe ſo Perſon to get upon it, and if the Toes or Points the Saddle's Fore-bow preſs too much the Hor Sides, then the upper part of it will be void hollow, and not cloſe enough to the Horſe's Ba and ſo the Saddle will be too narrow in its Toes Points: But if the Points of the Fore-bow be wide and open, then they will not touch him a in that part, but the upper part of the Saddle preſs him a little below the Withers, and ſo h and pinch his Shoulders, or occaſion Sit-faſts, wh are difficult to cure.

o likewiſe if the Hind-bow of the Saddle preſs
s Points, then it will not come cloſe enough to
Back above; and if it reſt too cloſe upon his
k above, then it will be too eaſie at the Points,
ſo quickly ſpoil the Horſe where it preſſeth
t.

The Stuffing of the Saddle ſhould be of Deers-
r, or the long Hair of Horſes Manes and Tails,
ven that of the Tails of Oxen, which does not
den near ſo much with the Sweat, as the ordi-
y Hair of Oxen and Cows; and ſome uſe well-
d Moſs, at leaſt apt to harden with Sweat.

When the Saddle is placed too forward, the Fleſh
the Shoulder will appear raiſed at the Points of
Fore-bow when the Horſe is in motion. The
e will happen if the Pannels be too much ſtuff'd
re, or that the Toes of the Fore-bow be too
ow and ſtraight. The *Fore-bows* ſhould be always
nt from the Withers two or three Fingers
dth, and when you perceive they lie too near,
ſhould immediately rectify it, by ſtuffing that
of the Pannels called their Breaſts or Paps.

your Horſe be low before, or the Fore-bow of
r Saddle too wide, or the Pannels too much
'd behind, ſo that you muſt have recourſe to a
pper, take care that it be neither too ſtrait drawn,
too ſlack, and that the Buckle do not gall him
reſting upon his Reins.

The *Dock-piece* ſhould be large and full, rather
too ſmall, and let it be greaſed every Day if
gall beneath the Dock, and waſh the Sore with
ter and Salt, or good Brandy, which is the moſt
raign Remedy, if the Horſe will ſuffer it.

The *Breaſt-plate* ſhould be alſo of a juſt length,
the Buckles ſo placed as not to gall him.

ome Riders do gall a Horſes Sides below the
dle, with their Stirrop-Leathers, eſpecially if he
ean; to hinder it, you muſt fix a Leather Strap

between the Points of the Fore and Hind-Bows o the Saddle, and make the Stirrop-leathers paſs ov them.

Let your Stirrop-leathers be ſtrong, as alſo t Stirrop-irons, which ſhould be pretty large, th you may the ſooner quit them in caſe of a Fall.

Having obſerved theſe Precautions, begin yo Journey with ſhort Marches, eſpecially if your Ho have not been exerciſed in a long time. Suffer hi to piſs as often as you find him inclin'd, and not o ly ſo, but invite him to it. But excite not yo Mares to piſs, becauſe their Vigour will be there diminiſhed. During your whole Journey let hi drink of the firſt good Water you meet with af ſeven in the Morning in Summer, and after ni or ten in Winter. I call that good Water which neither too quick and piercing, nor too muddy a ſtinking. This you are to do, unleſs you deſign gallop him a long time after drinking; for in th caſe you muſt forbear, although it be the cuſtom *England* to run and gallop their Horſes after drin ing, which they call *Watring-courſes*, to bring the as they ſay, in Wind; yet it is the moſt pernicio and hurtful Practice for Horſes that a Man can im gine, and many of their Horſes become purſy by it

While he is drinking, draw up his Head five fix times, moving him a little betwixt every draugh and although he be warm and ſweating very muc yet if he be not quite out of breath, and that have four or five Miles to ride, he will be better ter drinking a little than if he had drank none all. It is true indeed, that if the Horſe be ve warm, you ſhould at the coming out of the Wa redouble your pace, or make him go at a gen Trot, to warm the Water in his Belly.

You are thus to let him drink all the while y are travelling, becauſe if he be hot or ſweat when you come to bait, you muſt let him ſtand lon

ng time before you can give him any Drink, with-
t endangering his Life; and when you take off the
ridle, his exceſſive Thirſt will hinder him from
ting, ſo that an hour or two will be elapſed before
offer to touch his Meat, which is almoſt all the
me a Man can well allow for a Bait at Noon, and
depart again with the Horſe in this Condition
fore he hath either eat or drank, will make him
t very unfit to travel.

It is alſo good to ride very ſoftly for a quarter or
lf an Hour before you arrive at your Inn, that
ur Horſe not being too warm, nor out of breath
hen you put him into the Stable, you may immedi-
ely unbridle him. But if your Buſineſs requires
u to put on ſharply, you muſt then, if the Wea-
er be warm, let him be walked in a Man's Hand,
at he may cool by Degrees: And if it be very cold,
en let him be covered with ſome Cloaths and
lked up and down in ſome place free from the
ind. But if you have not the conveniency of a
eltred Walk, ſtable him immediately, and let his
hole Body be well rub'd and dried with Straw.
nd do not unbridle him until he be pretty dry,
d have recovered his Wind; and during that time
u ſhall ungirt him, take off his Crupper, ſlack
e Breaſt-plate, and put ſome freſh Straw betwixt
e Saddle and his Back to refreſh and eaſe him.
hen ſhake down freſh Litter beneath him to ob-
ge him to ſtale or piſs; for moſt good Horſes do
ways piſs when they are firſt put in the Stable and
d the Litter beneath them.

Although moſt People will have their Horſes Legs
bb'd down with Straw as ſoon as they are put in
e Stable, thinking thereby to ſupple their Legs,
t it is one of the greateſt Abuſes can be commit-
d, and produces no other Effect but to draw down
on the Legs thoſe Humours which are already
rr'd up by the Fatigue of the Journey. But where-

as

as it may be objected, that the Humour which fall down, is diſſipated by Tranſpiration through the Pores, which are open'd by this rubbing of the Legs: To this I anſwer, That the Humour indeed does in ſome meaſure rarifie, but that it can not be all diſcuſſed that way, having too groſs a Body for it; ſo that the remaining part of the Humour inſinuates it ſelf as a Vapour amongſt the Nerves, which is afterwards by the Cold condenſed into a Water, and this Water into a kind of viſcous Humour; which cannot be diſpelled by rubbing; becauſe being done in a time when all the Humours are in Agitation, it draweth them down and inſtead of giving eaſe, or being any ways beneficial to the Horſe, is extremely prejudicial and hurtful. Not that I diſapprove the rubbing Horſes Legs, upon the contrary I very much approve of it only I would not have it done at their firſt arrival but when they are perfectly cooled.

If before you arrive at the Inn you meet with any Ford, ride your Horſe through it two or three times, but not ſo deep as the Water may come up to his Belly. Now this Water will not only cleanſe his Legs of Mud, but the coldneſs thereof will bind up the Humours, and prevent their deſcent.

Being arrived at your Inn, aſſoon as he is partly dried, and ceaſes to beat in his Flanks, let him be unbridled, and his Bitt waſhed, cleanſed and wiped and let him eat his Hay at Pleaſure.

If your Horſe hath been very warm, and that you had not the Conveniency of letting him drink up on the Road, he will when unbridled eat but very little; you muſt therefore give him his Oats waſhed in Ale or Beer, or ſome of them only, if you intend to feed him again after he hath drunk.

Many are of Opinion that People ſpoil their Horſes by giving them Oats before their Water; becauſe, ſay they, the Water makes the Oats paſs too

ſoon

on, and ſo undigeſted out of the Stomach. I a-
in think, that although it be the common Cuſtom
t to do it till after; yet it is good to feed with
ats both before and after, eſpecially if they be
arm and have been hard rid, for they will be a
eat deal the better for it, and not at all in danger
becoming ſick.

The Duſt and Sand will ſometimes ſo dry the
ongues and Mouths of Horſes, that they loſe their
ppetite: In ſuch caſe give them Bran well moiſt-
d with Water, to cool and refreſh their Mouths,
waſh their Mouths and Tongues with a wet
unge to oblige them to eat.

The Preſervation or Deſtruction of Horſes depends
uch on the Water they drink when travelling.
hat which is leaſt quick and penetrating is beſt. A
iver is preferable to a Spring, and a Spring or
ountain to a Draw-well: But if a Man be neceſ-
ated to let his Horſes drink of ſuch penetrating
aters, he ſhould cauſe the Water to be ſet in the
n, or warm ſome of it to correct the ſharpneſs of
e reſt: Or it may be a little corrected by ſtirring
about with the Hand, or thowing a little Hay
ongſt it. But if the Water be extremely quick
d piercing, mix it with a little warm Water, or
heat-bran, which will ſufficiently correct it.

The preceding Directions are to be obſerved after
derate Riding: But if you have rid exceſſively
rd, unſaddle him, and ſcrape off the Sweat with
Sweating Knife or Scraper, holding it with both
ur Hands, and going always with the Hair. Then
b his Head and Ears with a large Hair-cloth;
pe him alſo between his Fore and Hind-Legs. In
e mean while his Body ſhould be rubbed all over
th clean Straw, eſpecially under his Belly, and
neath the Saddle, untill he be throughly dry.
hen ſet on the Saddle again, and cover him; and
you have a warm place, let him be gently led up

and

and down in it for a quarter of an Hour; but if no
let him dry where he ſtandeth.

Let him not drink untill he be throughly cool
and have eat ſome Oats. For many by drinki
too ſoon, have either died by it, or become ve
ſick. A Horſe after violent Labour, will never
the worſe by being kept half a Day from drinki
but may die by drinking an Hour too ſoon.

Set the Saddle in the Sun, or by the Fire that t
Pannels of it may be dry, rather than ſet it up
his Back next Day all wet, and let the Pannels
beaten with a Rod, that they may not harden a
hurt the Horſe.

At the taking off the Saddle, you ſhould feel yo
Horſe's Back, if he be pinched or galled. You m
diſcover it better when he hath ſtood an Hour
two unſaddled, by the ſwelling of the Part oppreſſ
If it be only ſwelled, fill a Bag with warm Du
and tie it upon the Swelling, which will not on
hinder its increaſe, but perhaps alſo quite diſcuſs
Or rub and chafe the Swelling with good Bran
or Spirit of Wine; and when you have ſoak'd t
place well with it, ſet fire with a lighted Paper
what remains upon it; and when the Fire of its o
accord extinguiſhes, then the Swelling will alſo d
appear. But if the Skin be cut, waſh it with war
Claret, mixed with a fourth part of Sallad Oil,
Freſh Bttter; or bathe it frequently with Brandy
the Horſe will endure it.

Some to prevent a Horſe's galling, do take
Hind's Skin well garniſh'd with Hair, and adjuſt
neatly beneath the Pannel of the Saddle that t
Hair of the Skin may be next to the Horſe. N
this doth not harden with Sweat, and ſo not only p
vents galling, but is good for ſuch Horſes as have be
lately cured, who would otherwiſe gall anew agai

When Horſes are arrived at an Inn, a Man ſho
before they are unbridled, lift up their Feet to ſee
th

ey want any of their Shoes, or if thoſe which ey have, do not reſt upon their Soles; and pick d clear them of the Earth and Gravel which may e got betwixt their Shoes and Soles.

If you water them abroad, ſo ſoon as they return om the River, cauſe their Feet to be ſtopped with ow-dung, which will eaſe the Pain in their Feet: nd if it be in the Evening, let the Cow-dung re- ain in their Feet all Night, to keep them ſoft and good Condition.

But if your Horſe have brittle Feet, it will be eceſſary to anoint his Fore-feet at the on-ſetting of e Hoofs with Butter, Oil or Hogs-greaſe before ou water him in the Morning; and in dry Wea- er they ſhould be greaſed alſo at Noon.

So ſoon as you give your Horſe Oats it is good to ave him alone; for a vigorous Horſe, ſo long as ere is any Perſon behind him, will not fail to ok about him, and ſo loſe many of his Oats, hich at that time fall from his Mouth. If he eat s Oats too greedily, ſpread them in the Manger, at he may neither eat them in ſuch haſte, nor allow them unchawed.

Many Horſes aſſoon as unbridled, inſtead of eat- g, lay themſelves down to reſt, becauſe of the reat Pain they have in their Feet, ſo that a Man is pt to think them ſick; but if he look to their Eyes, e will ſee they are lively and good; and if he offer eat to them as they are lying, they will eat it very illingly; yet if he handle their Feet he will find em extremely hot, which will diſcover to him at it is in that part they ſuffer. You muſt there- ore obſerve if their Shoes do not reſt upon their oles; which is ſomewhat difficult to be certainly nown without unſhoing them: But if you take off eir Shoes, then look to the inſides of them, and ou may perceive that thoſe Parts which reſt upon e Soles are more ſmooth and ſhining than any o-

ther. You are therefore to pare their Feet in thoſe Parts, and fix on the Shoes again, anointing the Hoofs, and ſtopping the Soles with ſcalding-hot black Pitch, or Tar.

Horſes which have tender Feet, commonly lie down to reſt as ſoon as unbridled, becauſe of the great Pain in their Feet. By tender Feet, I mean ſuch as have low Heels, or whoſe Feet have but little thickneſs betwixt the Sole and the Hoof in that part of the Foot which is about two Fingers breadth or leſs above the Toe or Fore part of it; all thoſe which have too little Feet, or which have cloven Quarters, or are Hoof-bound, or have their Hoofs circled; and laſt of all, thoſe which have flat Feet.

You ſhould alſo look on your Horſe's Dung; if it be too thin, it may be a ſign, that either the Water which he drunk was too cold and piercing, or that he drunk too greedily of it. If there be among his Dung whole Grains of Oats, either he hath not chewed them well, or hath a Weakneſs in his Stomach. And if his Dung be black, dry, or come away in very ſmall and hard pieces, it is a token that he is over-heated in his Body.

Laſtly; Before you leave him, ſee that he be ſo tied as that he may lie down with eaſe, and that his Halter be neither too long nor too ſhort.

CHAP. XIX.

Directions for preſerving Horſes after a Journey.

WHen you are arrived from a Journey, immediately draw the two Heel-nails of the Fore feet, and if it be a large Shoe, then four. And two or three Days after you may blood him in the Neck, and feed him for ten or twelve Days with wet Bran

bran only, without giving him any Oats, keeping him well litter'd. The reaſon why you are to draw the Heel Nails is, becauſe the Feet ſwell, and if they were not thus eaſed, the Shoes would preſs and ſtraiten them too much. It is alſo good to top them with Cow-dung, but do not take the Shoes off, nor pare the Feet, becauſe the Humours are drawn down by it.

The following Bath will much preſerve your Horſe's Legs. Take Cow or Ox-dung, and make it thin with Vinegar, ſo that it be but of the conſtence of thick Broth, and adding to it a handful of ſmall Salt, rub his Fore-Legs from the Knees, and Hind-Legs from the Gambrels, by chafing them well with and againſt the Hair, that the Remedy may penetrate and adhere to them, and that they may be all covered over with it: And thus leave him till Morning, not wetting his Legs, but giving him his Water that Evening in a Pail.

The next Morning lead him to the River, or waſh his Legs with Well-water, which is alſo very good, and will keep his Legs from ſwelling. Many times when I have had no Vinegar, I have made uſe of ſimple Water, and it ſucceeded very well.

Thoſe who to recover their Horſe's Feet make a Hole, which they fill with moiſten'd Cow-dung, and keep their Fore-feet in it, during the ſpace of a Month or ſo, do very badly; becauſe although the continual moiſture which is amongſt the Cow-dung cauſes the Hoof to grow, yet it dries and ſhrinks in extreamly when out of that place, that it ſplits and breaks like Glaſs, and the Foot immediately waitens. For I aſſure you that Cow-dung, contrary to the Opinion of many People, ſpoils a Horſe's Hoofs: It doth indeed moiſten the Sole, but drieth up the Hoof, which is of a different nature from it. Therefore to recover a Horſe's Feet, you are rather in place of Cow-dung to fill a hole with

with wet blew Clay, and make him keep his Fo
feet in it for a Month.

When a Man hath rode a Horſe ſo extrea
hard that he fears foundring, the beſt method
can take, after he hath led him a little in one's Ha
and otherways ordered him, as I have already
rected, is, to take two Quarts of Vinegar, w
two Pounds of Salt, and mixing them well to
ther cold, bathe and rub hard the Horſe's Fore-
with it for about half an Hour; then pour into
Feet ſome Oil of Bays ſcalding hot, and upon
Oil hot-Aſhes, above which put Hurds or co
Flax, with thin ſlices of Wood fixed croſs-ways
bove it, to keep all faſt: But if you can have
Oil of Bays, then take either the Oil of Wal
Rape-ſeed, or that of Fiſhes, but Oil of Bays i
far the beſt.

CHAP. XX.

*How to recover Horſes which are haraſſed and
after a long Journey.*

MOſt Horſes that are fatigued or over-rid,
made lean by it, have their Flanks alte
without being Purſy, eſpecially vigorous H
that have wrought too violently. There is no
ter Method to recover them, than to give the
the Morning half a Pound of Honey very
mixed with ſcalded Bran; and when they ſhall
well the half Pound, give them the next ti
whole one, and then afterwards two Pounds e
Day, continuing it untill you find that your H
empty and purge well with it: And when you
ceive that they no longer purge, then forbe
give them any more Honey. Or you may
them Powder of Liquoriſh in the ſcalded Bran

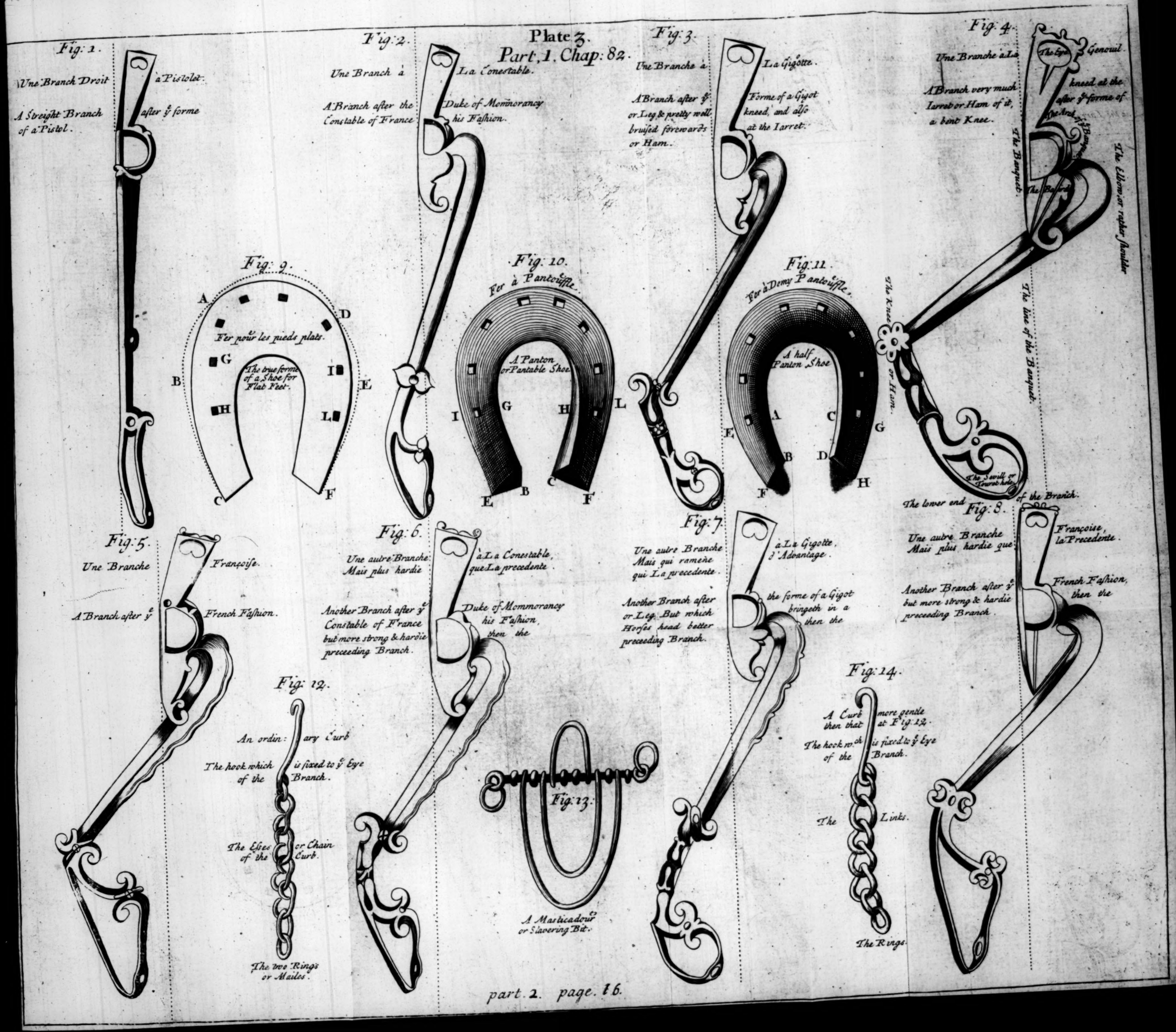


Plate 3.
Part, 1. Chap: 82.
Fig: 1.
Une Branch Droit à Pistolet.
A Streight Branch after ye forme of a Pistol.
Fig: 2.
Une Branch à La Conestable.
A Branch after the Duke of Mommorancy Constable of France his Fashion.
Fig: 3.
Une Branche à La Gigotte.
A Branch after ye Forme of a Gigot or Leg & pretty well kneed, and also bruised forewards at the Iarret. or Ham.
Fig: 4.
Une Branche à La Genouil.
A Branch very much kneed at the Iarret or Ham of it, after ye forme of a bent Knee.
The Eye
The Arch of ye Banquet.
The Banquet.
The Elbow or rather shoulder
The Bassard
The Knee or Ham.
The line of the Banquet.
The Sevill or Touret hole.
The lower end of the Branch.
Fig: 5.
Une Branche Françoise.
A Branch after ye French Fashion.
Fig: 6.
Une autre Branche à La Conestable, Mais plus hardie que La precedente.
Another Branch after ye Duke of Mommorancy Constable of France his Fashion, but more strong & hardie then the preceeding Branch.
Fig: 7.
Une autre Branche à La Gigotte, Mais qui ramene d'Advantage. qui La precedente.
Another Branch after the forme of a Gigot or Leg. But which bringeth in a Horses head better then the preceeding Branch.
Fig: 8.
Une autre Branche Françoise, Mais plus hardie que la Precedente.
Another Branch after ye French Fashion, but more strong & hardie then the preceeding Branch.
Fig: 9.
Fer pour les pieds plats.
The true forme of a Shoe for Flat Feet.
Fig: 10.
Fer à Pantoufle.
A Panton or Pantable Shoe.
Fig: 11.
Fer à Demy Pantoufle.
A half Panton Shoe
Fig: 12.
An ordinary Curb
The hook which is fixed to ye Eye of the Branch.
The Esses or Chain of the Curb.
The two Rings or Mailes.
Fig: 13.
A Masticadour or Slavering Bit.
Fig: 14.
A Curb more gentle then that at Fig: 12.
The hook wch is fixed to ye Eye of the Branch.
The Links.
The Rings.

rable time. And to cool their Blood it will amiſs to give them three or four Clyſters. Flanks do not recover, give them the Pow- Purſy Horſes deſcribed in the *Second Part.*
e Horſe be very lean, it will be proper to m ſome wet Bran every Night, over and is proportion of Oats. Graſs is excellent for he be not purſy.
be a Mare, give her a Horſe, and if ſhe ne- a Foal before, it will enlarge her Belly.
etimes exceſſive Feeding may do more harm od, by making Horſes ſubject to the Farcy: re give not too great a quantity at a time, e a little Blood from them now and then.
Straw, mixed with Oats, is good to prevent 's eating of them too greedily, and being f a very good Food, is mighty wholſome m; that which is ſmalleſt cut is the beſt.
n a Horſe begins to drink heartily, it is a ſign that he will in a ſhort time recover.

CHAP. XXI.

Art of Shoing, or the true and exact Me- of Shoing all ſorts of Feet, be they never ad or deformed.

ere are two Methods of Shoing. The firſt is o ſhoe for the Advantage of the Foot, and ng to its Nature and Shape, to fit ſuch Shoes may make it better than it is; and if it be may preſerve and keep it from becoming bad. cond Method is, that which diſguiſeth the nd maketh it appear good when really it is hich Method, altho' in time it wholly ru- e Foot, yet Horſe Courſers, who have no leſign but to ſell and put off their Horſes, do

not much trouble themſelves about it; for pr
ded their Horſes Feet but appear good, and the
them ſold, it is all they deſire.

I ſhall treat of the firſt only, wherein are
Rules to be obſerved in Shoing all ſorts of
whatſoever.

The firſt is, *Toe before*, and *Quarter behind*, o
we commonly ſay, *Before behind*, *Behind before*.

By *Toe before* is meant, that you may give
Nails a good hold upon the Toes of the Fore-f
becauſe there the Horn is very thick, which i
not in the Quarters of the Fore-feet, for there
Horn is thin, and you would hazard the prick
your Horſe.

Quarter behind is that a Horſe hath the Quar
of his Hind-feet ſtrong, that is to ſay; the H
thick, and ſo capable of ſuffering a good gripe
the Nails; but at the Toes of the Hind-feet
will immediately meet with the Quick, becauſe
Horn is but thin in that part; and therefore Sm
ſhould put no Nails at all juſt in the Toes of
Hind-feet, but only in their Quarters.

The ſecond Rule is, *Never to open a Ho
Heels.* People call it opening of the Heels, w
the Smith in paring the Foot, cutteth the Heel
and cloſe almoſt to the Fruſh, and taketh it d
within a Finger's breadth of the Coronet, or to
the Hoof, ſo that he ſeparates the Quarters at
Heel, and by that means weakens and takes a
the ſubſtance of the Foot, making it to cloſe
become narrow at the Heels. Now this which
call opening, would be more properly called clo
of the Heels; for the roundneſs and circumfer
of the Foot being cut, by doing that which
call opening of the Heels, which is to cut t
wholly away, they are no longer ſupported by
thing; ſo that if there be any weakneſs in the F

will of Neceſſity make it ſhrink and ſtraiten in the uarters, which will quite ſpoil the Foot.

The third Rule is, *To make uſe of as thin and all Nails as poſſible*, becauſe the Nails that are ick and groſs make a large Hole, not only when ey are driving, but alſo when they are riveting: r being ſtiff, they ſplit the Horn, and take it a- y with them. Neither can a tender Foot be ſhod th ſuch big Nails, without hazard of pricking, pecially if there be but a little Horn to take hold : But Smiths, to prevent this, pierce their Shoes o near the edge, which will in time ruine the Foot.

The fourth Rule is, *To make the lighteſt Shoes can*, according to the ſize of your Horſe, be- uſe heavy Shoes ſpoil the Back-ſinews, and weary e Horſe; and if he happens to over-reach, the oes being heavy are more eaſily pulled off. Thoſe o think it frugality to ſhoe with thick and heavie oes, and ſeldom, are deceived, for they loſe more it than they gain; for thereby they not only il the Back-ſinews, but loſe more Shoes than if y had been light.

CHAP. XXII.

w to pare the Feet well, fit the Shoes and drive the Nails.

O not pare your Horſe's Feet almoſt to the Quick, as ſome People do, who think there- to prevent the ſo frequent Shoing of their Hor- But if you know that your Horſe's Hoofs are ooth and tough, you may with the more confi- nce pare his Soles reaſonably near.

The Foot thus pared, you muſt fit a Shoe to it, ich muſt be neither too broad nor too narrow in Web, neither muſt its Spunges extend any far-

ther than the Heel, (the Spunge is that part of th Shoe next to the Heel) but muſt follow the exa compaſs of the Foot, juſt to the Corners of th Fruſh, and they muſt not appear much upon th outſides of the Hoofs at the Heels neither; as tho Smiths who pretend to be very underſtanding, woul make us believe, by ſaying, that it preſerveth an ſupporteth the Heel: But the middle of the Spung muſt be placed juſt upon the middle of the end o the Quarter which touches the corner of the Fruſh and is called the Heel, and which it is to be ſup poſed you have not pared; for as I told you, th Heels muſt never be pared. Now the middle of th Spunges being placed upon the Extremities of th Quarters, which form the Heel and touch almo the Fruſh, muſt not reach any further, and the your Horſe will be ſhod both for his own eaſe, an the benefit of his Foot; for he will never becom Hoof-bound, neither will he over-reach, by reaſo of the Spunges of his Fore-feet Shoes being ſet equ with his Heels, and not ſuffered to exceed them.

Thoſe who make the Spunges of their Horſe Shoes too long, not only fatigue and weary them and make them over-reach, but alſo ruin and ſpoi their Feet, and are the Occaſion of their becomin Hoof-bound: Thoſe again that are too ſhort, mak a Horſe go leſs at his eaſe; but your Horſe's Shoe will never be too ſhort, if they follow the whol compaſs of his Feet, to the Ends or corners o their Fruſhes and no further.

The Shoe ſhould not preſs upon the Sole at al but ſhould reſt equally and exactly round the whol Foot upon the Horn, which is about the thickne of a ſmall Finger's breadth, taking notice, that the Shoe, upon the outer edge of that ſide next th Horſe's Foot, have any riſing or unevenneſs in i and that if you beat it not down, and make it lev with the reſt before it be ſet on, it will reſt upo th

e Horn, and certainly ſpoil the Hoof; for that ſed edge being higher than the reſt of the Shoe, ere will no other part of it reſt upon his Hoof but which will certainly ſpoil it. The Horn round e Foot is at moſt no thicker than a ſmall Finger's eadth, which is alſo generally the thickneſs of e reſt of the Hoof.

If the Shoe reſted upon any other part of the Foot t the Horn, it would make the Horſe to halt, d then you would be neceſſitated immediately to e off his Shoe, as it will often fall out when the oe reſts upon the Sole, eſpecially if the Sole be n and weak; but if the Sole be thick and ſtrong, hough the Shoe reſt upon ſome part of it, yet ll not the Horſe halt, as you may remark in oing with the Panton-ſhoes hereafter deſcribed, ich Shoes reſt almoſt always upon the Sole, or on the corners of the Fruſh, and which being thick d ſtrong, is the reaſon that the Horſe but very dom halteth with them.

Having thus fitted the Shoe, you ſhall drive two ils in it, and then let his Foot go to the Ground, ſee if the Shoe be right placed, then you ſhall ve the reſt of the Nails equally, and not the one her than the other (which is called *Driving mu-ly*) obſerving nevertheleſs, that the Nails of the els of the Fore-feet be low enough driven, for r of meeting the Quick, which in the Hinder-t is juſt contrary, for there the Heels are ongeſt.

The Nails being driven, and cut over with the cers or Nippers, before that you rivet them you ſt take the Cutting-knife, which is a piece of el about half a Foot long, having the one Edge p, and the other about the thickneſs of two owns, with which you muſt cut the Horn that r-paſſes the Shoe, by ſtriking with the Hammer n the back of the Cutting-knife untill you have

taken away all the Horn you deſire. The Nails b
ing driven and cut over, before that you rivet the
take the Cutting-knife again, and cut away t
ſmall pieces of Horn which the Nails have made
riſe in driving, to the end that the Rivets may
equal with the Horn; for beſides that it makes t
Foot to appear handſomer, the Nails alſo faſten be
ter, ſo that the Horſe can never cut himſelf wi
the Rivets, which will often happen if you obſer
not this Method.

As the Shoe weareth, the Nails by degrees ſi
into it, ſo that the Rivets looſen and appear mo
above the Hoof, and if care be not taken to c
them as they riſe, they will lame the Horſe.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of low Heels, tender Feet, and other kinds of b and imperfect Feet.

WHen you are pairing a Horſe's Feet whi
hath low Heels, you muſt only pare the T
without touching in the leaſt the Heel, and alſo
is good not to touch the Fruſh, unleſs it be begi
ning to corrupt, and then you muſt pare it fla
you muſt alſo cut the Toe with the Cutting-kn
or Raſp only, and not with the Buttris.

People make only uſe of the Butteris, for to gi
the Shoe a ſeat after they have cut the Toe with t
Cutting-knife, for Example, the breadth of o
Finger or Thumb, if the Foot be too long at t
Toe; in which caſe, you muſt alſo pierce the Sh
near the edge at the Toe, for fear of pricking,
ſo placing the Shoe after that Faſhion, you will for
the too great Nouriſhment which went to the T
to ſtrengthen the Heels, and in twice or thr
Shoing, the Foot will come to take a good ſha
a

form, and alſo in the time that you reſtrain the
e by cutting it, the Heel will ſtrengthen. Now
ſe kind of Feet growing only at the Toe, all the
riſhment of the Foot goeth there, and ſo the
el becometh always narrower, and daily weaker;
if you obſerve that which I tell you, to cut the
e with the Cutting-knife, having only as it were
nched or cleaned the Sole with the Butteris, and
t you put the Shoe at the Toe a Finger's breadth
an Inch back, according as the Toe is too much
ung, and that afterwards you cut away the Horn,
ſſure you the Foot will take quite another form
ſhape, which will be a great deal better, and the
els will alſo ſtrengthen.

But if your Horſe's Heels be low and not narrow,
d that the Fruſh be large or fat, with great diffi-
ty will you keep it from touching the Ground,
d then your Horſe will be in danger of halting,
ecially when he is riding upon hard Ground.

To prevent it, I think there is no other Remedy
n to give him Calkins, after the faſhion of the
int of a Hare's Ear, which is done by turning the
des of the Spunges the whole breadth of the Shoe,
d making them after the faſhion of Calkins; now
ſe kind of Calkins will not do great harm to his
et, and he will alſo go the more firmly with them
on the Street, or in ſlippery Ground; ſo by this
ans you will hinder his Fruſh to touch the Ground.
is not that I approve of Calkins, after whatever
hion they are made, the great Calkins are the
rſt, and thoſe which ſpoil moſt a Horſe's Feet;
t theſe after the faſhion of the point of a Hare's
r are the leaſt dangerous; and if People could
o diſpenſe with the want of theſe, it would be ſtill
much the better.

But if the Horſe which hath low Heels, have
m alſo narrow near the Shoe, although that his
uſh be large (which is not ordinary) you muſt

then give him no Calkins, neither after the faſhio
of a Hare's Ear nor any other, but you muſt ſho
him with Panton-ſhoes, with a narrow Spunge a
very thick in the inſide, that is to ſay, that it m
ſlope very much from the inſide of the Shoe ne
his Foot to the outer Edge, and place the Spun
of the Panton-ſhoes upon the Heels, ſo that t
thick edge of the Spunge may enter within the C
ners of the Fruſh, to preſs them out when th
grow; cut his Toe with the Paring-knife, accordi
as you ſhall find occaſion for it; and after he
ſhoed, keep his Feet in his Dung, being a litt
moiſten'd with Water, until he leave halting, for h
will for a few Days have pain in his Feet until he h
accuſtomed to wear theſe kind of Shoes, afterwar
you may work him, for in a ſhort time he will b
accuſtomed to them; and after thrice ſhoing, t
Heel, and alſo the whole Foot, will have taken
good form or ſhape.

The Horſe-Courſers, to cover this Imperfectio
of having low Heels, make the Spunges of the Sho
great and thick, to ſupply the want of the Hee
which is indeed a very good Invention to ſpoil t
Heels for good and all, for it is good for nothi
but this, that it maketh thoſe who are ignorant b
ſuch Horſes, without taking notice of their havi
low Heels: and the Horſe-Courſers have no oth
deſign by it but this, when they ſhoe their Hor
after that faſhion; it doth, however, well enou
for ſuch Horſes which have their Heels but a litt
low, to beat down the ends of the Spunges with
Hammer, to thicken and ſquare them beneath, f
it will raiſe their Heels, and make them go bet
in the Streets while their Shoes are new, but th
will not give their Feet a good ſhape: In a wor
low Heels with a very large Fruſh, are thoſe kind
Feet which People cannot help by ſhoing, and
look upon them as the worſt of all Feet, becau
th

hey cannot at all, or but very rarely, be reco-ered.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of flat Feet, and ſuch as have their Soles round and high.

THoſe Horſes which have Flat-feet, if they be young, their Feet will always ſpread, and ſo e in danger of growing ill-ſhaped, therefore they ould be ſhoed after the manner following, to keep em inſenſibly from ſpreading, eſpecially if the orſe be worth your pains: Above all things, if our Horſe have flat Feet, you ſhould bar the Pa-ern-Veins: This Operation is good, but however is not abſolutely neceſſary, unleſs your Horſe ath his Soles round and high, yet this is not to y, but that the doing of it contributes very much the amendment of Flat-feet; for to do it, you uſt know, that in the Paſtern there are two Veins low the Joint, the one upon the inſide, and the her upon the out; which Veins muſt be barred, at ſo you may put a ſtop to the ſuperfluous Hu-our, which falleth down upon the lower part of e Foot, and cauſeth the Sole to grow round and gh; and alſo the Coffin-bone or little Foot, which the Bone in the middle of the Coffin, to puſh it f down, which, through time, maketh the Foot come round at the Sole; the Veins in the Fore-gs being ſtopped in four places, and the Wounds ginning to heal up, which will be ſeven or eight ys after you have barred the Veins, you muſt do at followeth.

But firſt, to bar the Paſtern-Veins right, you muſt ly tye them near the Joint with a fine Thread, to end that you retard not their cure: a little Silk

is

is very good for that Purpoſe: Then cut the Vein beneath and let it Blood; if it bleed too long, you may bind up the Orifice with a large Band and a Compreſs.

If for Flat-feet you bar the Veins, you will come ſooner to your purpoſe than if you had omitted it; but that doth not hinder this following Method to be very good, although you had not barred them.

You muſt then forge according to the following Figure, A. C. D. F. *(See Plate third, Fig. 9.)* Shoes very ſtrait in the Quarters, and which do not turn in a Circle, nor follow at all the ſhape of the Quarters of the Foot, but whoſe branches from the Toe A. D. to the Spunges, C. F. muſt be very ſtreight; and you muſt pierce the Holes, G. H. I. L. very near the Edge: You muſt alſo place thoſe Shoes, ſo that you may have about the thickneſs of two Crowns of Horn to take away at the Toe A. D. with the Cutting-knife, and they having their branches ſtreight, there will without doubt be a good deal of Horn to take off at the ſides A. B. C. and D. E. F. which are retrenched by the Shape of the Shoe within the pointed Line, as you may ſee in the Figure.

Having then a Shoe made after this faſhion all together flat, and the branches near ſtreight, put his Foot very gently, and fit the Shoe to it; for though it reſt a little upon the Sole it matters not becauſe by no means you muſt make your Shoe vaulted or hollow, and faſten the Shoe with very thin Nails, taking but a ſlender hold for fear of preſſing the Vein, or meeting with the quick; your Horſe being ſhod with this kind of Shoe which I have been ordering, put a Reſtrictive in his Foot

" made of Chimney-ſoot and Turpentine boiled to-
" gether upon a ſlow Fire, always ſtirring it until
" it be pretty thick, and apply it ſcalding hot, with

" Hu-

Hurds above it; and becauſe when the Shoes are not vaulted, you will have Difficulty to get in thin Slices of Wood to keep faſt the Reſtrictive, (becauſe the Shoe will almoſt touch the Sole) therefore after you have put in the Hurds, you muſt tye a Cloth about his Foot to hold all faſt: his Reſtrictive will help to put a ſtop to the too uch growing of the Sole, and will alſo contribute ry much (with the ſtopping of the Paſtern-Veins) put a ſtop to all the ſuperfluous nouriſhment which ent to the Sole and Coffin-bone; put alſo upon e Coronet, by way of a Plaiſter ſome Hoof-ſalve read upon Hurds, applying it to the onſet of the oof to cauſe his Foot to grow, and renew the Plai- r every four Days, which doth a great deal better an only to anoint his Feet every Day, becauſe e Ointment being tyed on with Hurds, and al- ys remaining upon the Horn, hath more time to oiſten it and cauſe it to grow, than the ſimple ointing of it.

You muſt not work your Horſe for five or ſix ys, that ſo he may be uſed to his Shoes, which ll at the firſt preſs his Feet; but if after that time mean it, you muſt then let him alone until he wholly accuſtomed to them: And if he halteth traordinarily, it's like that he may be then prickt, which you muſt take good notice, and cure it, as ave taught you in the *Second Part*. You muſt ntinue to ſhoe him after this method every New- oon, always by Degrees making the Shoes ſtraiter, t much at the Quarters, but conſiderably at the e, A. D. which you muſt retrench and keep rt by all means imaginable, as you ſee it marked the Figure by the circular Line A. D. which is rked with Points: After three or four Shoings ur Horſe will have changed the ſhape of his Feet, ich was unpleaſant, into a better: Now it is a tain Rule, that you muſt always make uſe of this

way of Shoing, three or four Days after the change of the Moon, to cauſe your Horſe's Hoof to grow the better, which is what we deſire.

If the Feet which grow too much at the Sole, have the Heels ſtraiter nearer the Shoe than above, then you muſt not retrench the inſides of the Foot A.C.D.F. as I deſired you before, but you muſt ſhoe them with Panton-ſhoes to enlarge their Heels: for beſides, that theſe Shoes will open the Heels, they will alſo hinder the Sole to grow ſo much downwards, and ſo the Foot will take a better ſhape: When you ſhoe with a Panton-ſhoe, it muſt follow the Circumference of the Foot, and the Branches muſt not be ſtreight; you muſt alſo keep the Sole ſtrong, without taking any thing almoſt from it, otherways your Horſe will halt; you are therefore to take Nothing from the Sole, Heels, nor any other part when you ſhoe him, but only the Cruſt, or that which riſes like a ſcurf, and you muſt always ſhorten the Toe by cutting it with a Cutting-knife, proportionably as you ſhall find occaſion: Make the Shoe altogether flat, without vaulting it, for although it reſt a little upon the Sole it matters not, becauſe you are to force the Foot to grow leſs: His Fore-feet being ſhod, cauſe him to ſtand with them all Day long amongſt his own Dung being a little moiſtned, and let him not work for eight or ten Days, untill he be accuſtomed to this kind of Shoes; afterwards you muſt ſtep him abroad upon eaſie Ground, to ſtrengthen his Feet.

The Reaſon why the Foot being reſtrained with this kind of Shoing, taketh its right ſhape again is becauſe thoſe Horſes which have Flat-feet, and round Soles, have too much nouriſhment in the Soles, and particularly at their Toes, and too little at the upper part of their Feet: Now that the Aſtern-Veins furniſh this ſuperfluous nouriſhment, is evident when People take out a Horſe's Sole, it

uſe to ſtop the Blood, which in great abundance
oweth from the Foot, People are neceſſitated to
e the Paſtern with a Cord, that is, they preſs thoſe
o Veins, which I have before ordered you to bar,
d that tying ſtoppeth the Blood, which being
opped, and having no more paſſage to go to the
der part of the Foot, which it did too much nou-
h and moiſten, it followeth of Neceſſity that the
le muſt dry and ſhrink in, to which the Panton-
oe will contribute very much; becauſe the open-
g the Heel near the Shoe, will alſo conſtrain the
perfluous nouriſhment, which went to the Sole and
e, to remain above, and nouriſh the Heel which
s dried; and by means of the Hoof-ſalve the Foot
l be moiſten'd, and the nouriſhment kept there,
ich is what we deſir'd; and in the mean time
Heel enlarges, and the Toe and Sole ſhrink in,
d grow leſs: This Method is alſo good for *Flan-*
s Horſes, whoſe Feet change the Horn, for in
time that their Feet alter, it giveth them a
od ſhape, but if their Feet be already bad, you
ſt take another courſe with them.

If the Horſe's Sole be round and lower than his
oof, which happeneth more to ſome than to
ers, ſo that ſome will have their Foot ſo ill-
ped that it will reſemble an Oyſter-ſhell, and
uſt renverſed in a manner, ſo that it is im-
ible to ſhoe them without hollowing or vault-
their Shoes, which will make them go unea-
, and alſo through time cauſe their Feet at the
s to become round, like the ſegment of a Ball.
ſhorteſt and beſt Remedy for ſuch Feet is to
the Paſtern-Veins, and ſeven or eight Days
the operation to make him Panton-ſhoes
ſtrait Spunges, and extraordinarily thick on
inner edge: they muſt alſo be altogether flat, and
vaulted; for it is to be remarked, that almoſt
he round or high-ſoled Horſes have narrow Heels

near

near the Shoe, and the Smiths thinking to mak
them go eaſily, make them hollow Shoes which re
only upon the Horn in the out-ſide of the Heel, an
by that means, becauſe the Shoes by degrees co
ſtrain the Foot, they make it grow daily ſtraiter a
the Heel; the little Bone alſo which is in the midd
of the Coffin preſſes downwards towards the Sol
the Toe grows long, and ſo the Feet become ill
ſhaped and unſerviceable: now to help and recti
all theſe Inconveniencies, the Panton-ſhoe bei
forged and pierced near the Edge of the Toe, as
told you, you ſhall cut more or leſs from th
Horſe's Toe with a Cutting-knife, as you ſha
think fit; then fit the Shoe ſo, that the ſlopin
or thick parts of its Spunges may enter within th
corners of the Fruſh, and being flat at the To
that it may reſt upon the Horn; but although i
reſt a little upon the Sole it matters not, and f
ſten it with thin Nails; alſo put into his Foot
Reſtrictive made of Chimney-ſoot and Turpenti
boiled together, and anoint his Hoof, with Hog
ſalve; then let his Feet ſtrengthen and be eaſed
the Pain, which that new manner of Shoing w
occaſion, add that for the ſpace of twelve Days
more until he leave halting; afterwards let hi
work by Degrees, and after three or four Shoing
if the Horſe be not old, his Foot will take a goo
ſhape. This which I ſpeak is not by ſpeculatio
but founded upon a great many Experiences.

It is a great abuſe to vault Shoes when Peop
may forbear it (and it may for the moſt part
omitted) becauſe the Foot being nailed and ma
faſt to the Shoe, it groweth and taketh the ſhape
form of the Shoe; and Nature finding that Paſſa
open, through the Inclination which ſhe hath to
niſh a ſuperfluous nouriſhment to the under part
the Sole, preſſeth always that way, and is a
helped by the hollow Shoe to give that round fo

to the Feet, which rendreth a Horſe unſerviceable for the Street or upon hard Ground; ſo that People are neceſſitated to ſend them to draw the Plough, which had they wanted that fault, would have been good, and might have ſerved for a Coach.

It happeneth alſo that when a Horſe travelleth upon vaulted Shoes, he treadeth only upon the middle of the Shoe, for it cannot all equally touch the Ground, becauſe of its roundneſs, ſo that it hindreth the Horſe to go firmly as otherwiſe he would, and alſo maketh him ſlip.

The ſureſt way therefore, is to rectify ſuch bad Feet in the beginning, and eſpecially in the time when Horſes alter or change their Horn, which is the firſt ſix Months after they come from *Flanders*.

But ſuppoſing that your Horſe's Feet be yet in a condition to be helped, you muſt reſtrain their growth in the Soles, as I have ſhewn you for the Flat-feet; or if the Heels be narrow, ſhoe him with a Panton-ſhoe, and after the former faſhion, without vaulting or hollowing it; you muſt alſo pare but little from his Feet, and leave his Sole ſtrong, ſhorten his Foot at the Toe, and put theſe Panton-ſhoes upon him; if his Heels, I ſay, be narrow near to the ſhoe, then put the Reſtrictive into his Foot which I ordered before; or otherwiſe let him ſtand with his Feet being ſhod after the faſhion I have been ſhewing you, in his own Dung, being kept a little moiſt that it may not heat, and let him ſtand ſo ſtill he halt no more, always keeping the Dung moiſt upon which he ſtandeth; at the ſame time put about his Foot a Charge or Softner reaſonably warm, or Hoof-ſalve, as I have before ordered you. You muſt alſo renew, two or three times, the Application of the Reſtrictive, and the Charge or Hoof-ſalve, keeping him always ſhod after the former manner; but if his Foot, after Shoing be very high and round ſoled, you muſt then let him ſtand eight or ten Days upon his Litter.

If

If the Horſe have his Sole but a little raiſed, or that it be not as yet abſolutely round beneath, after twice or thrice Shoing it will be helped; but the more it is out of ſhape, the more time it will take to rectifie it: It is to be obſerved that Flat-feet, at leaſt the moſt part of them, have their Heels narrow near the Shoe, ſo that the Smith's hollowing or vaulting very much their Shoes, makes them rest upon the out-ſides of the Heels, and by that means makes them become narrower: Now quite contrary to this Method, you muſt ſhoe your Horſes with Panton-ſhoes, ſo that cauſing their Heels to open, you will contribute to the ſhrinking in of the Sole and under part of the Foot, as I have told you before, and cannot tell you it too often.

But if your Horſe's Foot be extraordinary high or round in the Sole, you muſt, without delay, burn the Paſtern-Veins, which will be the only means to give a good ſhape to thoſe flat kind of Feet; for without this Operation any other will have no great effect; becauſe the main deſign is to put a ſtop to that ſuperfluous nouriſhment which goeth to the Sole, and to force Nature to furniſh that nouriſhment to the upper part of the Foot, which the ſhoing with Panton-ſhoes will do, even without retrenching and cutting his Hoofs at the ſides, if you but only with the Cutting-knife cut and retrench his Toe, and that you keep his Sole ſtrong without almoſt taking any thing from it; ſo that being ſhod with Shoes that are not vaulted, although they reſt a little upon the Soles, yet they will not cauſe him to halt much, even though they be Panton-Shoes. Afterwards fit the Shoe, and providing it reſt not altogether upon the Sole, it is enough, ſeeing you left the Sole expreſly for that purpoſe ſtrong enough, and faſten the Shoe with very thin Nails. " When he " is ſhod, you ſhall fill his Feet with Tar ſcalding " hot, or with the Reſtrictive before-mentioned

or otherwiſe keep them amongſt his moiſten'd Dung.

It's true, this is to keep the Horſe a long time thout having any ſervice of him, but oftentimes r not taking that care of him, and giving him that ſt, he becometh altogether unſerviceable, as I have n a great many, for not taking Notice of them time: There are ſome which have ſuch kind of et that will yet be ſomewhat ſerviceable, but ac-rding as they need help, People take more or leſs e of them.

The firſt ſhooing of Coach-Horſes is of Conſe-ence: So that you are then but to make the Horn el where the Shoe reſteth, and not to take any ng from the Sole, but as it were to clean and iten it, becauſe he hath been already made too llow; ſhoe him juſt, and pierce your Shoe a tty diſtance from the Edge, but you muſt drive ur Nails low; for if you ſhould pierce your Shoe r the Edge, the Nails would, in driving, ſplit the rn, which hath been already too much weaken'd the Horſe-Merchant, who had no other deſign to make his Horſes Feet appear hollow: You ſt then pierce your Shoe a pretty diſtance from edge, ſo that the Nails may not eaſily ſplit the rn; but for fear of pricking your Horſe, you are drive them ſomewhat lower than ordinary, and ve a Nail juſt at the Toe, to the end that the Shoe y ſtay longer on without ſhifting its place, and y remain ſtrait upon his Foot: You are not at o retrench his Quarters nor open his Heels, but the Shoe follow the compaſs of the Horſe's Foot, by this means you ſhall preſerve his Feet, and y will be always good.

Thoſe Smiths who think to give eaſe to their ſes, by enlarging their Shoes, or vaulting them tle, inſenſibly ſpoil their Feet, becauſe they fol-the form of the Shoe, and ſo become miſhap'd;

for the more that you enlarge your Shoe at firſt, th
more you muſt enlarge it the next Shoeing, an
that is the way abſolutely to loſe your Horſe; fo
it is far more difficult to rectifie your Horſe's Fee
and give them a good Shape, when once deforme
than in the beginning, when they have good Fee
and their Horn altering, to preſerve them; becau
they are then capable of receiving any form you i
tend to give them: Horſes which have big and lar
Feet, although they be not flat, yet are more ſub
ject to have them eaſily ſpoil'd than any other,
People take not care at every Shoeing to retren
them, until the Nature of the Horn be change
This is what I thought good and neceſſary to
practiſed for this kind of bad Feet; I ſhall in t
following Chapter continue to ſpeak of other Sor
of bad Feet than theſe I have already diſcourſe l o

CHAP. XXV.

How Horſes that are Hoof-bound, or Narro heel'd, ſhould be ſhod.

I Have already ſhewn, that a Hoof-bound Hor
is a Horſe whoſe Heels ſo preſs the Bone wit
the Hoof, or the Coffin-bone, that they either ma
the Horſe to halt, or at leaſt hinder him to tra
eaſily: To cure it, People take out the Hor
Sole, and cleave his Fruſh, which ſhall be trea
of in the *Second Part*, *Sect.* 2. Or otherwiſe Pe
ple remedy it by the help of Shoeing: But wh
a Horſe is ill Hoof-bound, People oft-times g
time by taking out his Sole, provided that t
cleave his Fruſh to facilitate it; but People, w
have not had the Experience thereof, can but w
difficulty, at firſt, be perſuaded to make tryal of

The Cauſes of this Defect in the Feet are different; orſes which have either ill-ſhaped, or too long eet, are ſubject to grow Hoof-bound: They alſo come Hoof-bound when their Hooſs are too dry, d want Nouriſhment to maintain the Horn; or if cy be not right ſhod, their Heels will grow nar-w, and ſo they will become Hoof-bound; after hich they never go firmly, becauſe their Heels ining them, they endeavour to eaſe themſelves much as they can, and therefore go upon their oes; which maketh the Back-ſinews to ſhrink, and ir Legs, at the Knee or Paſtern-joint to bend rwards, when they ſtand in their natural Poſture; d which, if you help not at the beginning, will ke them halt to the Ground. It is diſcourſed at ge in the *Second Part*, concerning the curing of et which are Hoof bound.

To prevent and put a ſtop to this Infirmity, you ſt, when you ſhoe ſuch Horſes, take the Heels y much down without hollowing the Quarters, d pare the Fruſh flat; for all Horſes whoſe Heels very much taken down, will not only never be-e Hoof-bound, but alſo they will have no *Bleymes* hich is an Inflammation occaſioned by bruiſed od within the Hoof, betwixt the Sole and the e Foot near to the Heel, where the Matter ga-reth, and cauſeth the Diſorders which are ex-ined in the *Second Part)* and alſo the Sinews of r Legs will be preſerved, eſpecially if they be rſes which work in the Manage upon ſoft ound.

ou muſt alſo, beſides this Precaution, never n the Heels with the Butteris, as the Smiths do, weaken the Quarters by preſſing the Butteris e-ways forwards; they cut alſo the end of the Quarter or Heel, and take it away even within nch of the Hair, and they call that to open Heels; but they are ſo far from doing that,

that on the contrary, they take away the whole ſtrength of the Foot, which ſhould have been left altogether whole, and which is done if you open not the Heels, nor with the Butteris hollow the Quarters, but that you leave the Sole ſtrong, and let the Heel keep its full roundneſs: I ſhall have great many People againſt me for maintaining this Propoſition, becauſe moſt Perſons, at leaſt all the Smiths, ſay that the Heels are to be opened; but that which they call opening the Heels, is down right taking away the ſtrength of the Heel, to weaken it, and put it in a condition to be ſoon Hoof-bound. But I would aſk thoſe Gentlemen, if their Horſes ſhod after that manner do not become Hoof-bound for I daily ſee thoſe Horſes Hoof-bound whoſe Heels have been kept very open after their faſhion; and I maintain, that of all the Horſes whoſe Heels I have cauſed to be taken down reaſonably, and afterwards ſhod, cauſing the Shoe to follow the roundneſs of the Foot, juſt to the corner of the Fruſh, and keeping their Soles ſtrong, not one of them became Hoof-bound. The proof of it is eaſie, and if you miſlike it, take you to your old method again, but I am ſure you will continue this manner of Shoing, when once you have made tryal of it. This which I affirm is grounded upon reaſon, for the Horn followeth the form of the Shoe, becauſe it is more ſolid than the Horn, and forces it to follow its ſhape when it grows: But if there be appearance that the Horſe's Heel will become narrow, then the ſureſt way is to ſhoe him with a half Panton-ſhoe, which is to turn the Branch of the Shoe in towards the Horſe's Foot, as it is explained in the following Chapter, for that ſhoe will keep his Quarters in condition to open and become wider; the Heel growing, the Heel openeth, and therefore cannot ſtraiten, and ſo the Foot will continue well-ſhaped, for the Shoe which you put upon it will open

eel, becauſe either the Hoof muſt not grow, or e Heel will open, for the Spunge of the Shoe muſt llow the roundneſs of the Heel, and go no farther an the end of the Quarter; ſeeing then that the oe giveth the ſhape to the Foot, as without all ubt it doth, and the Shoe taking no other ſhape an it hath already, it being inflexible; and the orn, by its flexibility, being capable of receiving y form, it follows neceſſarily, that the Shoe being Half-panton Shoe, muſt force the Horn outwards, d ſo enlarge the Heel, which I ſhall explain in the llowing Chapter: But above all you muſt take tice, when you ſhoe after this Method, that is to , with half-panton Shoes, that you keep always e Sole ſtrong.

Some People ſay, that the Fruſh ſhould not at all pared, becauſe when it is entire it keepeth out e Quarters, and preventeth their coming together; ly, People ſhould not make the Sole hollow be- ixt the Fruſh and the Quarters, but ſhould only e the top of the Fruſh with the Butteris; which alled, to pare the Fruſh flat: If People did not all pare the Fruſh, there would happen this In- nveniency, that it would corrupt and become king, and ſo breed the *Teignes*, (which is when Fruſh mouldereth away in pieces, as if the Moths eaten it, and that it goeth the length of the ick; for then the itching pain is ſo great, that it often make a Horſe to halt: The word *Teigne* nifieth a Moth, becauſe when a Horſe hath that rmity, it looketh as if the Moths had gnawed Fruſh) beſides that, there is no Advantage in ing it ſo high: We conclude then that every e that the Foot is pared, the Heels and Fruſh uld be made flat without hollowing the Quarters, that for the leaſt ſtraitning of the Heels, the nges ſhould be turned in towards the Sole, after manner of the Half-Panton ſhoe, as it is ex-

plained in the next Chapter, [*See Plate* 3. *Figure* 11. and the Heels very far from ſtraitning, will infallibly open and enlarge

For thoſe Horſes which are Hoof-bound, after that you have pared their Feet, and left the Sole extraordinarily ſtrong at the Heels, you muſt have *Panton-ſhoes*, conform'd to the ſhape of *Fig.* 10. *Plate* 3.

I have called this Shoe the *Panton* or *Pantable-ſhoe* to diſtinguiſh it from thoſe of any other faſhion or ſhape.

Now to forge a *Panton-ſhoe*, you muſt make the inner edge of the Spunge B, A, E, C, D, F, a great deal thicker than the outer edge IE, LF, ſo that betwixt AG, and DH, there may be two or three times the thickneſs that there is betwixt IE, and LF, as you may perceive by the thickneſs of the Spunge AB, CD, ſo that the Shoe riſes by Degrees from G to A, and ſlopeth equally from A to E, the whole length AG, EI; and ſo you will find that the inner edge of the Spunge is a great deal thicker than the outer, for the thickneſs within marked A is three times thicker than E; it is the inſide of the Shoe, and that which toucheth the Sole which you ſee in the Figure; but there muſt be great Care taken that the foreſaid thickneſs AB, CD, of the Spunge, diminiſh always towards GH, as you may perceive in the Figure, and all the reſt of the Shoe from IL, GH, round the Toe of the Shoe, be quite flat as other Shoes are, to the end that the Horſe's Foot may reſt upon it at eaſe: That which is repreſented to you by the Figure, is but the inſide of the Shoe next the Horſe's Foot, and the Spunges ſhould be ſtrait, or pretty near the other, that they may reſt upon the inſide of the corners of the Fruſh, and all the outſide of the Shoe, which is next the Ground muſt be quite flat like to another Shoe, and then you ſhall have a right *Panton-ſhoe* for your Horſe. *Plate* 3. *Fig.* 10.

It is neceſſary when you place the Spunges of this Shoe upon the end of the Heel, which is the Extremity of the Quarter, that the ſaid Extremity of the Quarter reſt upon the middle betwixt AE, DF, which is the ſloping part of the Spunge; but for all that the inner edge of the Quarter AG, muſt not reſt wholly upon the Sole, although you kept it ſtrong enough, which ſhould be always done when you make uſe of thoſe kind of Shoes; for, although People ſhould prevent as much as poſſible any Shoes reſting too much upon the Sole, yet they are ſometimes neceſſitated to ſuffer this Shoe, of this faſhion, to reſt a little upon the Heels, and even the inner edge of the Spunge almoſt always toucheth the Frush; therefore the Sole ſhould be always kept ſtrong, eſpecially at the Heels. Afterwards anoint your Horſe's Feet, which are ſhod after this faſhion, with the Hoof-ſalve before mentioned, or theſe deſcribed in the *Second Part*, and keep his Fore-feet amongſt his moiſten'd Dung. If you continue this Method, infallibly his Heels will open and enlarge; the Horſe at firſt, if you have weaken'd his Soles too much, may mean his Feet with theſe kind of Shoes, but his Feet will ſtrengthen through a little Time and Reſt. Theſe kind of Shoes are not fitted without a little Time and Pains; and the Smith muſt not be ſlothful to put the Shoe in the fire again, either to open or ſtraiten the Spunges, according as there is need for it, for that cannot be done at the very firſt; and there is no Smith that is able to fit and faſten two of theſe Shoes in leſs than an Hour; for the Shoe muſt follow exactly the ſhape of the Foot, as well at the Heel as at the Toe; and although the inner Edge of the Spunge enter but the thickneſs of two Crown-pieces within the Heel, it matters not; for in a Month's time, the Heel opening will cover it all. When the *Panton-ſhoes* are formed, fitted, and ready to be put on, they appear to

thoſe who are ignorant, very ſtrait and narrow at the Heels, becauſe they follow the ſhape of the Foot, and therefore ſeem ridiculous to thoſe who know not the good of them.

The Reaſon why the uſe of theſe kind of Shoes openeth the Heels, and helpeth Hoof-binding, is that when the Heel groweth, it is forced outwards by the Shoe, becauſe the Spunge which is thicker a great deal in the inner edge than in the outer, hindereth the Heel to cloſe and tend that way, and upon the contrary forceth it outwards, ſo that either the Hoof muſt not grow, or of neceſſity the Heels muſt enlarge and open, if the Shoes be right placed.

You muſt continue the ſhoing of him after this faſhion, untill his Heels be well ſhaped and large, which will be infallibly after twice or thrice ſhoing; do it at the Change, or about the fourth or fifth Day of the new Moon: The uſe of theſe Shoes is admirable, in that they never ſhift upon the Feet, but remain firm in one place, being kept fixed by the thickneſs of the inner edges of the Spunges.

A Horſe ſhod after this faſhion, is many times unſerviceable for a little time, which muſt be allowed him to ſtrengthen his Feet, amongſt his moiſten'd Dung.

People muſt not think to travel with theſe kind of Shoes, at the beginning when a Horſe is ſhod with them, and before he be accuſtomed to them; for ſeeing they preſs the Foot, they would make him halt: But they may take the Air upon a Horſe ſhod after this faſhion, make him ride in the Manage, or do any other moderate Exerciſe provided it be upon ſoft Ground; and after the Horſe hath been a little accuſtomed with theſe Shoes, he will not halt with them, although you travel him.

If you have a Journey to make with a Horſe that is Hoof-bound, but doth not as yet halt with

you muſt not at all take down his Heels when you hoe him, although I heretofore ordered you upon other occaſions to do it; but on the contrary, you muſt keep his Heels as ſtrong as poſſible, and drive the Nails only in the Toe, for the Heel being high and narrow, you will not eaſily get them driven there, neither could your Horſe ſuffer it; and then your Horſe will travel with you as you pleaſe: Indeed this will not be the way to help his Hoof-binding, but, on the contrary, it will make it worſe, it being only to make him perform his Journey that you do it.

If your Horſe be ſo ill Hoof-bound that he halteth to the Ground with it, the beſt and readieſt cure is to take out his Soles, and put Shoes upon him which have long Spunges: The way of taking out the Soles is ſhewn in the *Second Part Sect.* 2. not but that theſe kind of Shoes, which I have been diſcourſing of, help, and will through time open his Heel, but that will be in four or five Months time; whereas if his Soles had been taken out, he would have been cured in thee Weeks or a Month, providing that you took care to open his Heels, when the Sole was out, by cleaving the Fruſh, or by putting in a plate of Iron betwixt his Heels, ſo that it may keep them about two Inches further aſunder than they were before his Sole was taken out, and that by fixing that plate of Iron betwixt the two Quarters of the Foot near the Heel, becauſe the Fruſh, which is ſofter than the reſt of the Foot, will yield and open, and ſo make the Heels in a Condition to become large; but it is ſooner done to give a ſtroke with an Inciſion-knife, and ſo to cleave and open the middle of the Fruſh down almoſt to the Paſtern, to the End that that overture may make the putting in of ſome rolls of Linnen in the cliſt of the Fruſh (which muſt be firſt dipt in the healing Charge) the more eaſie to keep the Inciſion

ciſion very open; the Sole will grow again, which will keep out the Quarters; the Shoe which muſt be made large, to anſwer to the Foot which is already made large, will keep it ſo, and the Heels in growing will not cloſe or ſtraiten if the Horſe be right ſhod. This which I ſhew you is founded upon ſeveral Experiences I have made, which ſucceeded very well with me; for the Sole beginning to grow will keep out the Heels; and if there be need for it, you may afterwards ſhoe your Horſe with *Half-Panton* Shoes, as in the next Chapter.

There are ſome Horſes ſo very ill Hoof-bound, that although People have taken out their Soles, yet they can ſcarcely force out their Heels, to get that plate of Iron right placed, which ſhould keep them open and aſunder; for thoſe kind of Feet you muſt, when the Sole is taken out, force aſunder the Hoof at the Heels with the Nippers or Pincers, ſo that by forcing them, you may oblige them to ſeparate, but there muſt be great care taken in forcing the Quarters this way, that you do not ſeparate the Horn from the Heel, for then you would cauſe the Horſe to caſt his Quarters. After you have thus forced his Heels open with the Pincers, you muſt put in that plate of Iron, which reſembleth ſomewhat the blade of an old Knife, which will keep his Heels firm and open, untill the Soles grow again, and ſo keep them out themſelves: But the abſolutely ſhorteſt way, is to cleave the Fruſh down almoſt to the very Paſtern, immediately after you have taken out his Sole; and after that the Shoe is faſten'd on, and the Charge or Apparel for cure put upon the Sole, you muſt fill that Clift very well with bolſters or rolls of Linnen, firſt dipt in the healing Charge, which muſt be put into it at the under part of the Paſtern, and afterward tye all up with a cloath to keep them faſt, and keep always that clift very open until the Sole be wholly filled up again; after which

which, if you ſhoe your Horſe with a *Half-Panton-ſhoe*, it will make his Heel become very large and well-ſhaped, which is eaſier done than to force the Quarters, by making uſe of the Plate of Iron abovementioned, although that Method be alſo very good.

CHAP. XXVI.

How Horſes which have Clifts in their Quarters, commonly called Falſe-Quarters, are to be ſhoed.

FOr Horſes which have cloven or Falſe-Quarters you muſt make a Shoe after the Faſhion which I call the *Half Panton-Shoe*, the uſe of it being good, I therefore thought fit to propoſe it to you. This Method of ſhoeing may alſo ſerve for Horſes whoſe Hoofs begin to cloſe and ſtraiten at the Heels, for it cometh near to the figure of the *Panton-ſhoe*, becauſe the Branch is turned upwards, which maketh the ſame ſlope that the *Panton-ſhoe* doth; but the ſide of the Shoe next to the Ground is not the ſame, becauſe there is but one edge of the Spunge, to wit, the utmoſt edge, which toucheth the Ground; whereas the under-ſide of the *Panton-ſhoe* is quite flat. Theſe kind of *Half-Panton-ſhoes* do not force out the Heels ſo ſuddenly as the whole *Panton-ſhoes*, and therefore are good to be made uſe of at firſt, to make the Heel ſpread.

The Shoe EF, GH, which is repreſented in the 1 *Fig.* of *Plate* 3. is a *Half-Panton-ſhoe*, which is to be put upon a Horſe which hath one or more Falſe-Quarters, and which conſequently hath narrow Heels; you muſt then make, eſpecially the whole Branches, and alſo the Spunges FB, DH, ſtronger than ordinary, afterwards turn them up ſo that AB, CD, may be higher than the outer edge EF, GH,

ſo

ſo you will find that betwixt AB and EF, the Shoe will ſlope outwards, alſo the other Branch CD, GH, will do the ſame; and the reſt of the Shoe, FEGH, will be altogether flat upon the Ground as an ordinary Shoe; for I here repreſent to you the inner ſide of the Shoe, becauſe the under ſide of the ſame Shoe, FEGH, muſt reſt upon the Ground, the whole compaſs of the Shoe, FEGH: Now in vaulted Shoes the Spunges are turned quite contrary, for in them they are turned outwards towards the Ground, whereas in theſe they are turned into the Foot.

The Shoes for Hoof-binding, before-mentioned, have the inner edge of the Spunges a good deal thicker than the outer, whereas theſe have both the edges of equal thickneſs; but the dexterity is to turn the Spunges, ſo as to give them a right ſlope, and to make the Shoe hollow or vaulted next the Ground.

To ſet on and fit the *Half-Panton-Shoe*, you muſt, when you pare the Foot, keep the Sole ſtrong at the Heels and ſo fit the Shoe, that the middle of the Heel, which maketh the Extremity of the Quarters, may be ſet juſt upon the Spunges, FB, DH; always taking care that the inner Edges of the ſaid Spunges reſt not wholly upon the Soles, but although they reſt a little upon them it matters not; then drive your Nails neatly, and ſee that they be very thin in the Shank.

When the Shoe is put on to remain, that is to ſay, when it is nailed and riveted, "you muſt pour into "his Foot Tallow and Pitch molten together, with "Hurds and ſplinters of Wood above them, to keep "all faſt; and if you have the Oil of Bays, it will "be very proper to put it alone ſcalding hot into his Foot, with Hurds and Splinters about it to keep it in, for it is ſuch as we ſhould have to penetrate, ſoften and ſtrengthen the Sole, which People have

mind

mind to force the enlarging of, by the foregoing method of Shooing; or pour Tar ſcalding hot into thee Foot; or, without making uſe of any of thoſe, keep his Feet amongſt his moiſten'd Dung, and let him always ſtand thus upon it untill he leave halting, which will be within four or five Days, more or leſs; and during that time always anoint his Hoofs at the Coronets with Hoof-ſalve; and although he perhaps halted before, becauſe of the pain which his Falſe-Quarter or narrow Heels gave him, yet this method of ſhooing will, from that time forwards, give him eaſe: The Falſe-Quarter or *Seyme* will holder and cloſe up to the very Hair, and the Horſe will recover; but if this Method of ſhooing do not the Buſineſs, have recourſe to the *Second Part*, where the Cures of *Seymes*, or Falſe-Quarters are particularly treated of.

There are ſome Horſes, eſpecially your light kind of Horſes, which have unequal Heels, ſo that the one ſtandeth higher than the other, which is eaſily perceived, by looking to the Heels juſt at the Paſtern: There is no other help for them, but to make uſe of this way of Shooing with the *Half-Panton-Shoe*, or to take out their Soles and cleave the Fruſh to the very bottom; that ſo, when it groweth up again, you may keep the Heels at an equal height.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of Shoeing Horſes whoſe Fore-Legs, from the Knees to the Coronets go in a ſtrait Line, and appear as if they were all of one piece; as alſo of thoſe, whoſe Paſtern-joints bend ſo far forwards that they appear to be diſlocate.

THere are ſome Horſes, which when they are ſtanding in their natural ſituation, have their Legs from the Knees to the Coronets in a ſtrait Line, which muſt be recovered, either by Shoeing, or, as I ſhall ſhew you hereafter; and is done by taking the Heels very much down almoſt to the Quick, without hollowing the Quarters; which will force the Sinew to ſtretch, and the Paſtern joint to retire into its Place. If, when you take down the Heels, the Leg falleth not far enough back, and that the Horſe continueth to carry his Paſtern joint too far forwards; you muſt then make the Shoe go beyond, or exceed the Toe half a Finger's breadth, and it muſt alſo be made thicker in that part than in any other: In the mean time while you give him this kind of Shoe, anoint the Back-ſinews of his Legs with the Ointment of Roſes, Ointment af Marſh-mallows, Ointment of Popular on, and Honey of each a like quantity mixed cold (which is called the Ointment of *Montpelier*, and deſcribed in the *Second Part*,) to make the Back ſinews ſtretch the more eaſily, and bring them to that Condition wherein they ought to be: Horſes which have high Heels are more ſubject to this Infirmity than others.

When the Paſtern-joint goeth out of its place, by bending too far forwards, you muſt take down the

Horſe's Heel to the very Quick, without opening it, and give him a Shoe which muſt appear all round his Toe, two Fingers breadth without his Foot, as people ordinarily ſhoe the Mules, and anoint the back-ſinew of his Leg with the Ointment of *Montpelier*; for this way of Shoeing ſtretcheth the Sinew, which Violence would wrong it and occaſion ſome ſwelling, if it were not aſſiſted by ſuch an Ointment as this, which hath the Virtue to take away the Pain and ſoften it; and alſo at firſt, when he carrieth theſe kind of Shoes, it is proper to walk him up and down in ones hand, to aſſiſt the Joint to fall into its right place again, and not at all to travel him in hilly Ground, for in going up-hill the Sinew would ſtretch ſo much, that I aſſure you the Horſe would halt for having had it ſo violently ſtretched on a ſudden. You muſt therefore at firſt let his Sinew ſtretch by degrees upon plain Ground, and partly alſo in the Stable. But if the Joint be altogether advanced, with difficulty will he be cured of it, if it be not by cutting the Sinew, as I ſhall ſhew you hereafter, a little lower than the *Ars* (as the *French* call it) which is a Vein upon the inſide of each Fore-Thigh, a little below the Elbow, call'd the *Baſilick-Vein*, and by common Farriers the *Platt-Vein*.

If Horſes which have their Legs from the Knee to the Coronet in a ſtrait Line, and alſo thoſe which have their Paſterns already caſt forwards, do not recover by the method of ſhoeing, which I have ſhewn, you muſt then have recourſe to a manual Operation, which appeareth dangerous, but is not: To perform which well, you muſt obſerve, that Horſes which are extreamly troubled with thoſe Infirmities I have been mentioning, have a Sinew, or rather Muſcle, at the *Ars* or *Plat-Veins*, and a little below the place where they bleed Horſes in that part, which is near the inſertion or joining of the Fore-Thigh with the

the Shoulder: That Sinew or Muſcle is about the bigneſs of one's little Finger, very much ſtretched and ſtiff, and lieth ſtrait up and down all along the Leg: Now, it is that Muſcle or Sinew which maketh the Motion of the Paſtern-joint, and being ſtretched after this faſhion keepeth the Joint forwards, and hindereth it to be in its ordinary ſituation, a certain token that it doth ſo, is that thoſe Horſes which have neither of theſe two fore-named Infirmities, have not this Muſcle ſtretched, but quite covered and hollow, ſo that People with difficulty can find it out; but in thoſe who have them this Muſcle is found at the very firſt feeling, and it appeareth clearly to be ſtretched, and not as naturally it ſhould. Having found out his Muſcle which is eaſily done, you muſt, with an Inciſion knife, open the Skin downwards, four Fingers breadth below the *Ars* or Fore-Thigh Vein, then cut the Muſcle or Sinew quite through croſs-ways, not all at one cut, but by degrees, then turn your Inciſion knife to the other ſide of it, and perfect the cutting of it by Degrees and not all at once, although you muſt at laſt cut it quite through; and after it is done waſh the Wound with Brandy, and put Salt in it and work the Horſe after he hath no more Swelling where you cut him, and that the Wound is healed up; and thus the Paſtern will fall into its natural place by degrees, and if the Operation hath been dexterouſly performed, the Horſe will bleed but very little, and the Wound will alſo heal up of its own accord; there are ſome very ſenſible Horſes which will be eight or ten Days without lying after the Operation, but People muſt not be ſurprized at it ſeeing there is not the leaſt hazard in it: Sometimes People in making this Operation, through careleſneſs, cut the *Ars* or Fore-thigh Vein, when they have made the Inciſion too near the Vein, and then the Horſe will bleed very much, but there is not

ſt danger in it; let the Horſe bleed ſufficiently, n ſtop the bleeding by filling the Orifice with bbet or Hare-wool, and afterwards ſow up the in in two parts; there will be gathered a little tter, but by greaſing the Wound in eight or ten ys the Horſe will be healed, and ſometimes ſoon- Before that this Operation be made, the Horſe's els ſhould be very much taken down, and then d with Planch-ſhoes, as the Mules are, and let carry thoſe Shoes three or four Days before the eration, and alſo walk abroad with them, that e may be accuſtomed to them; after which you l perform the Operation. And for the more ſe- ty, that you may not cut the Fore-Thigh or *-Vein*, you muſt be ſure to make the Operation Fingers breadth lower than the Veins: Thus Operation will have more effect upon the Pa- n, and alſo you will not cut the Vein, and in t or ten Days the Horſe will be recovered, the und healed up, and he will be in a better con- n to travel than formerly.

eople make the like Operation upon Horſes which their Paſterns altogether caſt forwards, by cut- them four Fingers breadth higher than the Knee, upon the Fore-part of the Fore-Thigh; they cut the Skin above the Sinew, which is very and ſtretched upon the Fore-part of the Leg, they raiſe the Sinew with a *Shamoys*, or wild s Horn, by putting it quite beneath the Si- afterwards they cut the Sinew with the In- n-knife quite thorow to the *Shamoy-horn*, they he Wound with Salt, and put Hurds or courſe dipt into warm Turpentine above it, and hinder the Horſe to come at it with his Teeth: to keep the apparel faſt, they wrap the part with a Cloth, which muſt be ſewed, for fear eſſing the Horſe's Leg too hard, which would it ſwell; then they leave him in that manner

and dreſs him not for ſome Days, but they bloo
him the very next, and anoint his whole Leg wit
the Duke's Ointment, deſcribed in the *Second Par*
and continue it every Day for eight Days; th
Horſe, during that time, may be walked up an
down in one's hand, and the Paſtern will fall int
its place, ſo ſoon as ever the Wound is healed up
This Operation is more difficult than the former
and ſucceeds well enough with Horſes which hav
their Paſtern caſt very far forwards, and as it we
quite out of its place, which maketh the Sinew
ſtretched, that it is quite raiſed from the For
Thigh, and very much advanced, yet it is don
without trouble or hazard: But if a Horſe be b
in a ſtrait Line from his Knee to the Coronet, an
that the Sinew, we have been diſcourſing of, be no
much raiſed from the Bone, and exceſſively ſtretch
ed, it may in that caſe do prejudice; as I ſaw it don
to a Horſe, which had one of his Legs from th
Knee to the Coronet, only in a ſtrait Line, and
the other the Paſtern was caſt quite forwards; the L
in which the Paſtern-joint was quite caſt forward
the Operation ſucceeded admirably well with it, f
the Sinew was very much detached and elevate
but for his Leg, which was only in a ſtrait Lin
from his Knee to his Coronet, the Sinew was no
altogether raiſed from the Thigh, and ſo the Hor
was two Months recovering.

Now People run not that hazard in making th
other Operation, which is performed four Finger
breadth below the Fore-Thigh Vein, for it can n
ver do any prejudice, although the Sinew be b
very little raiſed and advanced; therefore except
Horſe have his Paſtern-joint quite caſt forwards,
would not adviſe you to cut the Sinew a little abo
the Knee. This is enough upon this Subject.

CHA

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Arched Legs.

When Horſes have Arched Legs, or their Legs bending forwards at the Knee, when they e ſtanding in their natural ſituation, People may ſo cut the above-mentioned Sinew as they do to orſes which have their Legs from the Knee to the oronet in a ſtrait Line; and if they begin with e Shoeing, as I have before ordered, the Opera-n will ſucceed well; for after all is done, you will how neat the Legs will appear in compariſon what they were before: You are to begin with e Shoeing, and you cannot in ſhoeing of them re their Heels too low, that ſo you may force and mpel the Sinews to ſtretch: At firſt when you ke uſe of this Invention, the Horſe may halt th it, but you muſt anoint the Back-ſinews with me ſoft'ning Ointment, ſuch as the Ointment of *ontpelier*, deſcribed in the *Second Part*, and anoint Sinews twice a Week with it, having firſt warm-the Sinew by chafing it with your hand; this ntment will ſoften the Sinews, take away the Pain, d ſo facilitate the extenſion of the Nerves.

If after having taken down the Heel, as I have d you, the Leg be not in that condition you uld wiſh it, being ſtill very much arched at the ee, you muſt then make for him a Planch-ſhoe, ich muſt go beyond, or exceed the Foot at the e two or three Fingers breadth, and riſe alſo a le towards the edge; faſten it upon the Foot, and n anoint his Sinew with the foreſaid Ointment; him ſtand after that manner, only walking him your hand every day about an Hour, and in a rt time you will ſee the good effects of it.

If nevertheleſs it produce not that effect which you might expect, then cut the Sinew a little below the *Ars* or Fore-Thigh Vein, as I ſhewed you before; and if that makes his Legs ſwell, as it ſometimes doth, be not ſurprized at it, but anoint him with an Ointment made of *Populion*, Honey and black Soap, of each an equal quantity, mixed very well cold with a ſmall Glaſs full of Brandy, and continue to walk him every Day in your Hand; but you muſt obſerve never to cut that Sinew, until you have firſt taken his Heels very well down, and then ſhod him with ſhoes which exceed his Foot at the Toe, as thoſe do which are made uſe of for Mules.

CHAP. XXIX.

How to ſhoe Horſes which tread only upon the Toes of their Hind-feet; as alſo thoſe which trip or ſtumble.

SOme Horſes tread upon the Toes of their Hind-feet, without reſting upon their Heels at all. Young Horſes are not ſo ſubject to it as old, and in time it becomes incurable. You are therefore to practiſe upon them a part of the Cure for Horſes who have their Paſterns bending forwards as if they were out of joint. People ordinarily begin with taking down their Heels very much, and then giving them Shoes a little longer than the Foot at the Toe, and anointing well the Sinew of the Hind-leg, the Horſe in a ſhort time will recover: But you muſt continue to take down his Heels extraordinarily, and keep his Toes very long. Alſo, if it be neceſſary, you muſt make the Shoe exceed his Toe; but the ſureſt way is to make it exceed his Foot at the Toe an Inch or two.

T

To ſhoe a Horſe which ſtumbleth, you muſt ſhoe him quite contrary to thoſe which tread only upon the Toes of their Hind-feet: For you muſt take down his Toe very much, and alſo ſhorten it, that he may not meet ſo eaſily with the Clods and Stones in the High-ways.

But if thoſe Horſes which ſtumble have their Sinews troubled, their Legs ſpoilt, or their Shoulders weak, you muſt then have recourſe to another Cure than ſhooing, which you will find in the Second Part; where you have Receits that are all very good.

If your Horſe over-reach, the Spunge of the Shoe muſt follow the Turn of his Foot. It is commonly a ſign of Weakneſs when a Horſe is ſubject to over-reach; which is when with his Hind-feet as he is riding, he overtakes the Heels of his Fore. Some people turn up their Hind-feet-ſhoes at the Toe, to prevent the ſtriking off the Fore-ſhoe. Though it is certain the Rider is oftentimes the occaſion of a Horſe's over-reaching; becauſe through his ignorance he knows not how with his Bridle-hand and by the fear of his Spurs, to keep his Horſe *Together* and firm under him. It is true, that an Action which is conſtrained cannot endure long, and far leſs the whole time of a long Journey, when wearineſs tireth a Horſe. But a Man ſhould now and then advertiſe his Horſe; and if that prevent not his over-reaching, you may then freely ſay, that he wants Veins and Strength, or that he is quite ſpoiled.

CHAP. XXX.

How to ſhoe Horſes which have been foundred in the Feet.

THere are few Horſes that have been oftner foundred in the Body than once, which have not ſome of the Humour, which occaſion'd the Foundring, fallen down in their Feet; which will diſfigure them, becauſe the point, or that part of the Coffin-bone or Little-foot which is moſt advanced falleth down and preſſeth the Sole, and the middle of the Hoof above the Toe ſhrinks in and becomes flat, becauſe of the hollowneſs beneath it, occaſion'd by the falling down of the end of the Coffin-bone. And when the Bone of the Little-foot hath fallen down after this manner, and preſſed the Sole outwards, the Horſe is then ſaid to have *Creſcents*; although thoſe *Creſcents* be really the Bone of the Little-foot, which hath left its place and fallen downwards, and the under-part of the Foot, to which the Sole at the Toe appears round, and the Hoof above ſhrinks in. Neither can it be otherwiſe; for the Coffin-bone or Little-foot being, as I ſaid, fallen down, and having left that place, wherein it is ſtay'd empty, the Hoof at that place not being ſupported by any thing, muſt of neceſſity ſhrink or fall in.

The ſame happens to Horſes which have had great Numneſs in the Coffin; the Cauſe of which is almoſt the ſame as Foundring in the Feet, and the Symptoms the ſame, *viz. Creſcents*; and ſuch Horſes tread only upon their Heels, ſetting down their Toe a pretty while after their Heel; neither can they reſt upon any part of their Feet but the Heel.

Now, where the Foundring hath fallen down to the Feet, or that there be a Numneſs in the

in, Horſes are a long time in recovering; ſo that Year's Time will produce but little amendment: Therefore the beſt way is, to ſell them for the Plough, r to ſuch who live in a ſoft Country, where are few r no Stones.

Never pare a Horſe at the Toe that is foundred in he Feet, becauſe the Sole in that part ſhould be al-ays kept ſtrong, to the end that, if there be any ppearance of a *Creſcent*, it may be prevented from oming any greater length. Neither muſt you take own his Heels much; for all the ſtrength of theſe ind of Feet lies in the Heels: And ſo ſoon as he is ood, pour into his Sole Oil of Bayes ſcalding-hot, ith Hurds or courſe Flax above it, and Splinters of Wood to keep all faſt, and continue to pour the ſaid yl into his Feet, for ſeven or eight times, once ery other Day.

If you take out a Horſe's Soles, you ſhould not ry above three Months after his Foundring, and hen you have out his Soles, the whole *Creſcent* ould be fired; that is to ſay, burn the whole end the Little-foot which is looſe, that ſo it may fall ay. But I think it far better not to take out ch Horſe's Soles at all, but to keep the Sole always ong, and pour into it Oyl of Bayes.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of Calkins.

Calkins ſpoil the Feet, occaſion Bleymes, which is a bruiſed Blood within the Coffin at the Heel, the Back-ſinews, and make Horſes to tread up-the Toes only of their Hind-feet, and trip. Ne-theleſs in time of Froſt they are convenient, cauſe *Neceſſity hath no Law*; and it were better

the Horſe ſhould ſpoil his Legs, than the Rider ſhould be in continual hazard of breaking his.

When you are neceſſitated therefore to uſe them, make the Smith to pare the Horn a little low at the Heels, and turn down the inner Corners of the Spunge upon the Corner of the Anvil, and ſo faſhion on a *Calkin* after the ſhape of the Point of a Hare's Ear, which will do little prejudice; whereas the great ſquare *Calkins* ſpoil the Foot.

CHAP. XXXII.

How to ſhoe Horſes which Cut or Interfere.

THere are four things that make a Horſe to cut. The firſt is *Wearineſs:* The ſecond, *Weakneſs* in his Reins: The third, not knowing how to go. And laſtly, his not being accuſtomed to Travel. To which might be added, his being badly or too old ſhooed. It happeneth more frequently behind than before, and is eaſily helped by ſhooing, eſpecially if the Horſe be young.

When People ſee a Horſe which cuts himſelf, they ſhould not at firſt Sight condemn him for it, until they have examin'd whether it may not have been ſome Rivet of a Nail which had occaſion'd it, or that the Shoe too much exceeds his Quarters on the inſides.

Every Horſe which after a long Journey hath not cut himſelf, giveth a favourable Token and Proof of his Goodneſs: For there are but few, which after a long Journey have not cut themſelves leſs or more.

It is eaſily known by the Skin being cut upon the inſides of the Paſtern-joints, and many times gall'd to the very Bone, ſo that the Horſe frequently halts with it, and hath his Paſtern-joints ſwelled.

If a Horſe cut before, take off his two Fore-ſhoes, and take down the Out-quarter of each Foot very much, and place the Inner-edge of the ſhoe ſo, that it may follow exactly the compaſs of his Foot, without any ways exceeding it towards the Heel. Then cut the Spunges equal with the Heel, and rivet the Nails ſo exactly into the Horn, that they may not at all appear above it: Or burn the Horn with the point of a hot Iron, a little below the hole of each Nail, and then beat down and rivet them in theſe Holes.

If the Horſe, after this method of ſhooing, continue ſtill to cut himſelf, you are then to thicken the Inner-quarters and Spunges of his Shoes, ſo as they may double the thickneſs of thoſe upon the outſide, and always pare down his Out-quarters very much, even almoſt to the Quick, without in the leaſt touching thoſe within: But be ſure always to rivet the Nails very juſtly and cloſe.

If he cut behind, unſhoe him, and pare down his Out-quarters almoſt to the Quick, give his Shoes *Talkins* only upon the inſides, and ſuch a Turn as may make them follow exactly the compaſs and ſhape of his Foot without exceeding it, eſpecially in the Inner-quarters; and above all, rivet the Nails exactly, for one ſingle Rivet will occaſion a great Diſorder.

If notwithſtanding all theſe Precautions, your Horſe continue ſtill to cut, you muſt (beſides what I have already order'd) drive no Nails at all upon the inſides, but only make a Beak at the Toe to keep the ſhoe firm in its place, and continuing this Method for ſome time, the Horſe will learn to walk and interfere no more, although he be afterwards ſhooed after the ordinary Faſhion. Some faſten little Boots of Leather or of an old Hat, about the Paſtern-joints; they are made narrower at top than bottom, and therefore are only made faſt at top. Others

thers wrap about the Paſtern-joint a piece of Sheep Skin, with the woolly ſide next the Horſe; an when it is worn out, apply a new one.

If he cut through Wearineſs, there is no bett Remedy than giving him Reſt, and feeding hi well.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of Purging.

Purging ſhould never be attempted without gre neceſſity, becauſe Horſes are eaſily inflame and require a great quantity of Drugs to purge them which cannot poſſibly be given without imprintin a ſtrange heat in their Bodies, not ſoon extinguiſh ed. And the Medicaments being commmonly twen ty four hours in their Bodies before they begin t operate, muſt, during that time, over-heat or alte ſome of the Parts. So likewiſe there is great dan ger from miſtaking the nature of the Diſeaſe, o purging them unſeaſonably. For Example; in th heat of a Fever, and in the pains of a Cholick, i would be very improper to adminiſter a Purge, be cauſe thereby a Man will ſoon have cured his Hors of all Diſeaſes.

Some Medicines purge only by lenifying an ſweetning; ſuch as Oyls, Greaſe, and Butter, whic by greaſing the Guts, facilitate the evacuation o the Excrement and other Humours. Others agai by their abundance of Moiſture do ſo ſoften th Humours, that they glide along with them; ſuch as Whey, the Decoction of Bees, of Pellitory o the Wall, of Coleworts, of Spinage, *&c.* And ſ likewiſe Graſs in the Month of *May* purges by ſoak ing and ſoftning the Humours, and cauſing them t paſs eaſily through the Bowels, by reaſon of thei great humidity.

All ſharp and piquant things do likewiſe irritate and excite the expulſive Faculty; ſuch as almoſt all Salts, the Seed of Nettles, and many others. But all theſe Remedies are rather laxative and deterſive, than true Purgatives.

All Purgatives have in them a kind of Malignity: Therefore never give a violent Remedy for a ſmall Indiſpoſition. If People fail in any ſide, it ſhould rather be in giving too weak than too ſtrong Remedies; and if the Horſe do not purge ſufficiently, there is nothing loſt, becauſe it hath diſpoſed the Humour; and by reiterating the Purgation ſome Days after, and making it a little ſtronger, you will find it ſucceed very well. You ſhould alſo conſider, that a Remedy given in Subſtance, for example, in Powder, ſhould be given in leſs quantity than when it is only infuſed in ſome Liquor, and the ſolid Subſtance thrown away.

Generally ſpeaking, no Infuſion of any Drug whatever will purge a Horſe, becauſe it paſſes too quickly: For he is a Creature ſo difficult to be wrought upon, that although a Drug be given him in Subſtance, yet it will be twenty four Hours in his Body before it begin to purge, whereas an Infuſion being liquid, paſſes in five or ſix, ſo that it hath little or no effect, unleſs you give him the Drugs and Infuſion mixt together.

Never purge a Horſe in the beginning of a Diſeaſe, becauſe the Humour not yielding to the Remedy, is thereby over-heated, and brought to a fermentation, which increaſes the Diſeaſe inſtead of diminiſhing it: And ſince in Horſes we cannot obſerve any certain ſign of Coction, and ſeparation of bad Humours, which occaſion the Diſeaſe, their Urines being almoſt always troubled, and not much unlike to one another, and the Excrements of the Belly almoſt the ſame; therefore we ſhould delay it until the Horſe be recovered: But this is to be only under

derſtood of acute and violent Diſeaſes; for whe the Diſtemper begins once to ſlacken, then the Hu mour which occaſioned it is concocted, ſeeing i cauſes no longer any ſymptom. And becauſe Na ture many times neglects to expel the Humour ſh has overcome, therefore it is that it muſt be evacu ated by purging, leſt it ſhould ſpring up a-new a gain, and occaſion a Relapſe: So that in Fevers and other violent Diſeaſes, a Man ſhould neve purge a Horſe, neither in their beginning, nor whe they are at their height.

You are alſo, as much as poſſible, to forbea purging in time of exceſſive Heat or cold. But i you are neceſſitated to do it in Winter, you ar then to keep the Horſe well covered, in a warm Stable, from whence he muſt not ſtir during hi Purgation; but if it be in Summer, then keep hi in a temperate place, and when he begins to purge walk him half an Hour in one's hand, every two Hours, and continue it for half a Day, to aſſiſt hi to empty.

A Horſe that is to be purged, ſhould be kep four, five or ſix Hours without eating before h take it, and as long after. You may alſo, for th more precaution, give him a Clyſter the Night be fore, which ſhall be compoſed according to the na ture of his Diſeaſe.

From the time he took his Purgation, until i have done working, (which will be about forty hours) let him eat no Hay, but take him from th Rack at the end of every four hours, and give hi about half a Peck of wet Bran.

When the Horſe hath done purging, you may, i you will, give him a Clyſter, to perfect the evacua tion of that which the Medicament hath not brough away: After which you may feed and order him a formerly.

In making of Pills, after you have broken and aten your Drugs courſly, mix the Compoſition th two Pounds of freſh Lard, or for want of it, e like quantity of freſh Butter; and having bea- and mixt all well together in a Mortar, make ls about the bigneſs of ſmall Tennis-Balls, and en the Horſe has ſwallow'd them, give him, in Horn, ſome White-Wine to carry them down to Stomach, and to take away the Bitterneſs from Mouth.

If it be for a Drench, you are alſo to beat them urſly, and either to mix them with a Decoction with Wine, and letting it infuſe about a quarter an hour, give it to the Horſe early in the Morn- , with a Horn, after he has been tied up two ours to the Rack.

If you make uſe of a ſimple Infuſion, which hath great Effect upon Horſes, then the Drugs be- infuſed all Night, the Liquor is to be poured off xt Morning, amongſt which you are to diſſolve ne kind of Electuary or Powder in a ſufficient antity; and when the Horſe has taken it, rinſe Horn with the remainder of the Decoction, or h Wine, and make him ſwallow it; after which ſh his mouth with a little Wine, to take away bad Reliſh.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Of Clyſters.

Lyſters are of ſo great uſe for the Preſervati- on of a Horſe's Health, and curing of Diſeaſes, we have no Remedy which equals them; for a ſter given in ſeaſon will ſave a Horſe's Life. ers, and the exceſſive beating of the Flanks, are ly allayed but by the reiterated uſe of good

Clyſters. And if any time they make no ſenſib alteration to the better, yet at leaſt they refreſh a give eaſe; and never did Clyſter given orderly, a according to method, prove prejudicial to any Ho whatſoever.

Common Farriers don't give above a Quart three Pints of Decoction in a Clyſter, which h generally no great effect; for beſides that the L quor is given in too ſmall a quantity, they a ſpare Drugs, and commonly mix nothing with t Decoctions, but ſalted Water, Honey, and O I think a Clyſter ſhould have two or three Qua of Decoction, or elſe it will moiſten and waſh b little: For as a Horſe drinks ten times more th a Man, and that People give alſo twenty tim more than the Doſe for a Man to purge him, follows that the ſame proportion ſhould be obſerv for Clyſters.

When you intend to purge a Horſe by Clyſte put no kind of fat into it, becauſe Oils and Grea adhere to the Inteſtines, and ſo hinder the effect the Purgative; but rather uſe *Common-Salt*, *Sal-Ge Polychreſt*, or warm *Urine*, all which prick and ir tate the expulſive Faculty: Whence it is that Cou trey-Farriers make commonly their Clyſters of t Water in which Cod-fiſh or Herring have be ſteeped; which by reaſon of its ſaltneſs, cauſes Horſe to empty well.

To make a Clyſter ſomewhat Purgative, a M may infuſe all Night in a proper Decoction, Ounce of *Sena*, and next Morning giving it a litt boil, ſtrain it to make a Clyſter.

A Clyſter ſhould not be given till the Horſe great Gut be cleared of its Dung, which by Fa riers is called *Raking*. Cauſe ſome body who has ſmall hand to anoint it with Oil or Butter, a thruſt it up into his Fundament, taking care not ſcratch the Gut with his Nails, and draw forth

Dung he can conveniently bring away. Or herwiſe thruſt up into it about the bigneſs of a ge Hen's Egg of *Caſtile-Soap*, anointed with Oil make it enter with more eaſe; half an hour er which, the Horſe will empty; ſo that uſing s you need not Rake him, becauſe the Soap will it ſufficiently of it ſelf. Having thus cauſed n to empty, place him with his Fore-parts a little wer than his Croup, and thruſting into his Funment a Horn made for that purpoſe, open at the all end, pour into it by degree the Clyſter, which uſt be Milk-warm; and if it ſhould ſtop in the orn, without paſſing down, you are to make the orſe move his Tongue, and then ſtrike him ntly with the palm of your hand upon the Reins, ich will make it enter: This done, put him into Stable again, tied up to the Rack, without oving him afterwards, contrary to the common actice of Farriers, who walk the Horſe while the yſter is yet in his Guts.

It is alſo fit that your Horſe be tied up to the ack two hours before his Clyſter, and that he eat t until he hath render'd it, or about an hour after hath taken it.

They that walk their Horſes after a Clyſter, ake them render it too ſoon, whereas it ſhould retained a reaſonable time: If he could be made keep it a full hour, it would be ſo much the tter; and therefore a large Syringe made on rpoſe is better than a Horn, becauſe the Horſe ceives it better, without ſo much as needing to be ken out of the Stable, and being leſs moved after civing it, he will have the leſs cauſe to render it o ſoon. It ſignifies but little to ſtop a Horſe's ndament with Hay, or to tie down his Dock, to der him from rendring it; for none of theſe meods will prevent him from voiding his Clyſter, if have an inclination to it.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of Blooding Horſes, and Precautions to be obſerved therein.

BLooding is very profitable for curing of Fevers, the Farcy, Mange, Strokes of all ſorts; for Defluxions upon any part of the Body, the Eyes excepted; for the foundering in the Body, Vertigo, Head-ach, and many other Diſeaſes.

The firſt Reaſon for Letting-blood is *Plenitude*; which is when the Veſſels are ſo very full of Blood that they can ſcarce contain it without burſting, or that there is more Blood than is needful for the entertainment of the Parts, ſo that Nature cannot govern it: *Omne enim nimium Naturæ inimicum.*

The ſecond Reaſon is, *the exceſſive heat of the Blood:* In this caſe blooding refreſhes and appeaſes the boiling of it.

The third Reaſon is, *that we may take away the corrupt Humours contained in the Veins, which by their Putrefaction can produce but bad effects: Therefore Nature being eaſed by this evacuation, doth the more eaſily digeſt the reſt.*

The fourth Reaſon is, *that when the Blood hath not Liberty enough to run and paſs freely through its Veſſels, blooding gives it vent and ſo facilitates its motion.*

The fifth Reaſon is, *to make a Revulſion, by altering its courſe, when it carries it ſelf from one part to another with too great impetuoſity, and in too much abundance.* Now in this caſe People endeavour to retard its Courſe, or to procure another for it quite another way.

The ſixth and laſt Reaſon for Blood-letting is *to give eaſe and relief to any Part that is over-charged with Blood*; which is performed by bleeding the part afflicted.

Blood-

Blood-letting is neceſſary, by way of prevention, all Horſes which feed well and labour little. It uld be done twice a Year.

t hath alſo its Inconveniencies, when practiſed eaſonably; for then it maketh a revulſion of the rits, which are the ſource of ſtrength and natu- heat; and alſo takes away the aliment appointed the nouriſhment of the Parts. You ſhould there- e conſult your Horſe's ſtrength, to know if he endure Blood-letting, and to conſider if he be y weak; for then he would have more need to made up by good feeding, than to loſe his od.

Young Horſes, as well as old, are to be bled as ly as poſſible. I ſay the ſame of ſuch Horſes as their Aliments without being concocted and di- ted; ſuch as thoſe who have much whole and igeſted Oats amongſt their Dung, unleſs the rſe ſwallow them without chewing, which is quently done.

Neither are you to bleed cold and phlegmatick rſes, nor thoſe which work in an exceſſive cold untry, nor in any Country in great Heats or ex- ive Colds, their Bodies then ſtanding more in d to be ſtrengthen'd than weaken'd.

People commonly bleed Horſes in the Jugular ns, which lie on each ſide the Neck, for ſeveral eaſes; as the Farcy, Mange, Repletion, and for vention.

For Bites or Blows in the Eyes they take Blood m the Temples with a ſmall Lance.

For Head-aches, or for being diſguſted or over- ed by exceſſive Labour, or for Colicks and the es, they have a little Lance made purpoſely for ning the Veins beneath the Tongue.

Alſo for Cholicks, Vives, and being much over- ed, they bleed in the Griſtle of the Noſe, with- regarding whether they hit the Vein or not.

When a Horſe is diſguſted, dull, haraſſed, t
over-heated, they bleed in the middle of the Pal
above the fourth Bar, with a Lance or ſharp Hor

If your Horſe loſe too much Blood by a ſtro
thus given him in the Palat, you are to raiſe
Head very high, by tying a Cord about his up
Fore-Teeth, as if you were going to give hi
Drench, and it will ſtop of its own accord.

I ſaw once a Horſe that died of a ſtroke t
given him in the Palat with a Horn, and the Bl
could not be ſtopped neither with Vitriol, nor w
a Button of Fire, or any thing elſe they could
ply; ſo that the Horſe loſt all his Blood and d
I have ſince fallen upon a Remedy that would h
ſaved him, and which is but a Trifle: Take the
of a Walnut-ſhell, and applying the hollow ſid
it to the Orifice of the Wound, preſs it a little h
upon it, and ſo hold it for a quarter of an Ho
after which the Shell will ſtick of its own acco
and ſo ſtop the Blood, which perhaps no other
medy could have done.

For ſtrains in the Shoulder, or the Mange
thoſe parts, they take Blood from the *Baſilick*
Fore-Thigh Veins; but this is rarely done, and w
it is, they do it commonly with Fleems, and
with a Lance.

For Strains and Infirmities in the Hams and Kn
they take Blood from the Paſterns with Flee
Lance.

For beating in the Feet, and Infirmities of
Legs, ſuch as Swellings and Oppreſſions of
Nerves, Horſes are let blood in the Toes with
Butteris or Drawing-Iron.

For Cholicks, and ſometimes alſo for the Fa
the Veins of the Flanks are opened with a
Lance made for that purpoſe.

For Blows and Strains in the Haunches, Blo
drawn with Fleems in the flat of the Thighs.

For the Fever and Purſineſs, they bleed with a ng Lance in the Tail or Dock.

When a Horſe is blooded, make a good large ifice in the Vein, that the thick and terreſtrial ood may be evacuted; becauſe when the Orifice too ſmall, it is only the moſt ſubtil Blood that is awn, ſo that the bleeding doth more harm than od.

When you intend to bleed a Horſe, let him reſt Day before, and alſo the Day following; and him be tied up early in the Morning to the Rack, hout Water or Combing, for fear of too much tating his Spirits; then draw with a pair of eems, that ſhould be of a reaſonable breadth for reaſon before given, about three Pounds of ood, and then leave him tied to the Rack for two urs.

After which you ſhall give him ſome ſcalded Bran, the following Maſh: Take half a Peck of good ll-ground Malt, and put it into a Pail by it ſelf; n take a Gallon or five Quarts of fair Water, ſet it on the Fire, and when it hath boiled a le, put as much of it into the Malt as will moi- n it, working and ſtirring them with a piece of Wood; after which pour in the reſt of the Wa- , and mix all very well together; then cover cloſe and let it ſtand two hours. When the rſe is ready to take it, cruſh and ſqueeze the lt with your hand as much as poſſible, and give im to drink Luke-warm. I ſay, it muſt be lit- more than Milk-warm; and if it prove too hot oo thick, you may rectify both, by adding a lit- cold Water to it, but be ſure not to make it too nor too thin.

This Maſh is found to agree well with Horſes ch are indiſpoſed or ſick, and is therefore here down; the Author having given no directions

to make one, by reaſon, I ſuppoſe, that Malt is not much uſed in *France*.

The *Germans* gallop their Horſes before bleeding, to the end, ſay they, that the bad Blood, which is as the Lee, may be mixed with the good, and ſo both drawn together. But they ſhould conſider that Blood is not with the ſame tranquillity in the Veins, as Wine is in a Hogſhead, whoſe Lee lies at bottom. And if the whole Maſs of Blood in a Horſe's Body, being about fifty Pounds, does circulate through the Ventricles of the Heart in about ſix Hours ſpace, as Experiments have diſcovered, it will follow, that there is no need of any violent agitation, but on the contrary, the Horſe ſhould be kept calm and quiet, for fear of loſing too many of his Spirits.

Thoſe who are very careful of their Horſes, not only let them reſt on that Day wherein they are bled, and the Day before and after; but alſo give them only Bran inſtead of Oats on thoſe three Days.

In taking Blood you are to regulate the quantity according as your Horſe is a great Feeder, and as his Veins are full and ſtretched, and accordingly as it iſſues forth with violence; having ſtill regard to the quality of the Diſeaſe, his Strength, Age, and the Seaſon.

It is a general Maxim, that without very good and preſſing Reaſons, a Man ſhould never make great evacuations by Blood-letting, becauſe there is made by it a too great diſſipation of the Spirits, and alſo Crudities formed in the Veins, which are the origin of ſeveral Diſeaſes.

CHA

CHAP. XXXVI.

How to judge of the Quantity and Quality of Blood.

ALtho' it is not the common practice of Farriers to receive a Horſe's Blood into a Veſſel, however it is very neceſſary, that a Man may thereby be able to judge of the Quantity and Quality.

A Quart of Water weighs about two Pound, and Blood is near of equal weight with Water: Therefore firſt try how many Pounds of Water the Veſſel contains, and when you know how much Space two Quarts of Water will take up in a Veſſel, the ſame Space will be filled with four Pounds of Blood.

Obſerve if it run calmly and ſlowly, and without impetuoſity; as alſo if it cleave to your Fingers when you touch it, becauſe if it do, it is a Sign that it is viſcous, and apt to occaſion Obſtructions: Therefore in that Caſe you are to bleed your Horſe frequently.

Blood which froths much when receiv'd into a Veſſel at a pretty diſtance, betokens heat and agitation of the Spirits; from whence People conclude, that a Horſe is over-heated, either by ſuperfluous Nouriſhment, or too violent Labour; or otherwiſe, that he is of a vigorous Conſtitution: Such Horſes ſhould be let blood at leaſt twice in the Year, by way of Prevention.

When Blood coagulates ſoon and eaſily after it is drawn, and hath a great many Fibres in it, it is a Sign that its ſubſtance is thick and terreſtrial; but if it with difficulty congeal, then it is more fluid and ſubtil.

If the Blood be very ſerous, that is, watry, it betokens a Weakneſs in the Reins, or an Obſtruction in the Veins.

Blood whoſe ſuperficies is yellow, but black be
neath, betokens a great deal of Heat, and that Bil
predominates.

Blood full of Phlegm and Water, is a ſign tha
the Horſe is of a cold and moiſt Complexion, an
he ſhould be very ſeldom let blood except upon
neceſſity.

Blood of a plumbeous or earthy colour, betoke
that a Horſe is Melancholick, and ſhould be bl
ſeldom bled. The Blood of Aſſes is of this colour.

In a word, if the Blood be very red, it is a ſig
it is good; if yellow, that it is bilious; if pale an
whitiſh, that it is not well prepared, and that it
charged with Phlegm; but if it be livid and green
iſh, that it is melancholick and terreſtrial.

To judge of the Quality of Blood after it is re
ceived into a Veſſel, you are to ſet it in a plac
where the Sun may not dry it, and without expo
ſing it to Smoke, Wind, or Duſt.

If Blood will not congeal and fix, it is a ſig
the Horſe is full of bad Humours, and ſtands in nee
of reiterate bleeding, and ſhould be purged alſo t
take away thoſe corrupt Humours, which by thei
Putrefaction over heat the Blood in the Veins, an
thereby are the cauſe of all Diſeaſes. This kind o
Blood is the worſt of any, and ſhould therefore b
evacuated; only take care to do it by degrees, an
not too much at one time.

When the Blood is viſcous and thick, ſo tha
when you break it with your Fingers it immediatel
rejoins and continues firm, it denotes Plenitude, an
that the Horſe ſhould be frequently bled.

If you would judge of the Quality by its taſt
that which is ſweeteſt is the beſt and moſt natural
if it be inſipid, it is pituitous and phlegmatick;
bitter, it is bilious and cholerick; if acid and ſti
tick, it is terreſtrial and melancholick; but if ſaltiſh
then it betokeneth brackiſh Phlegm.

Whe

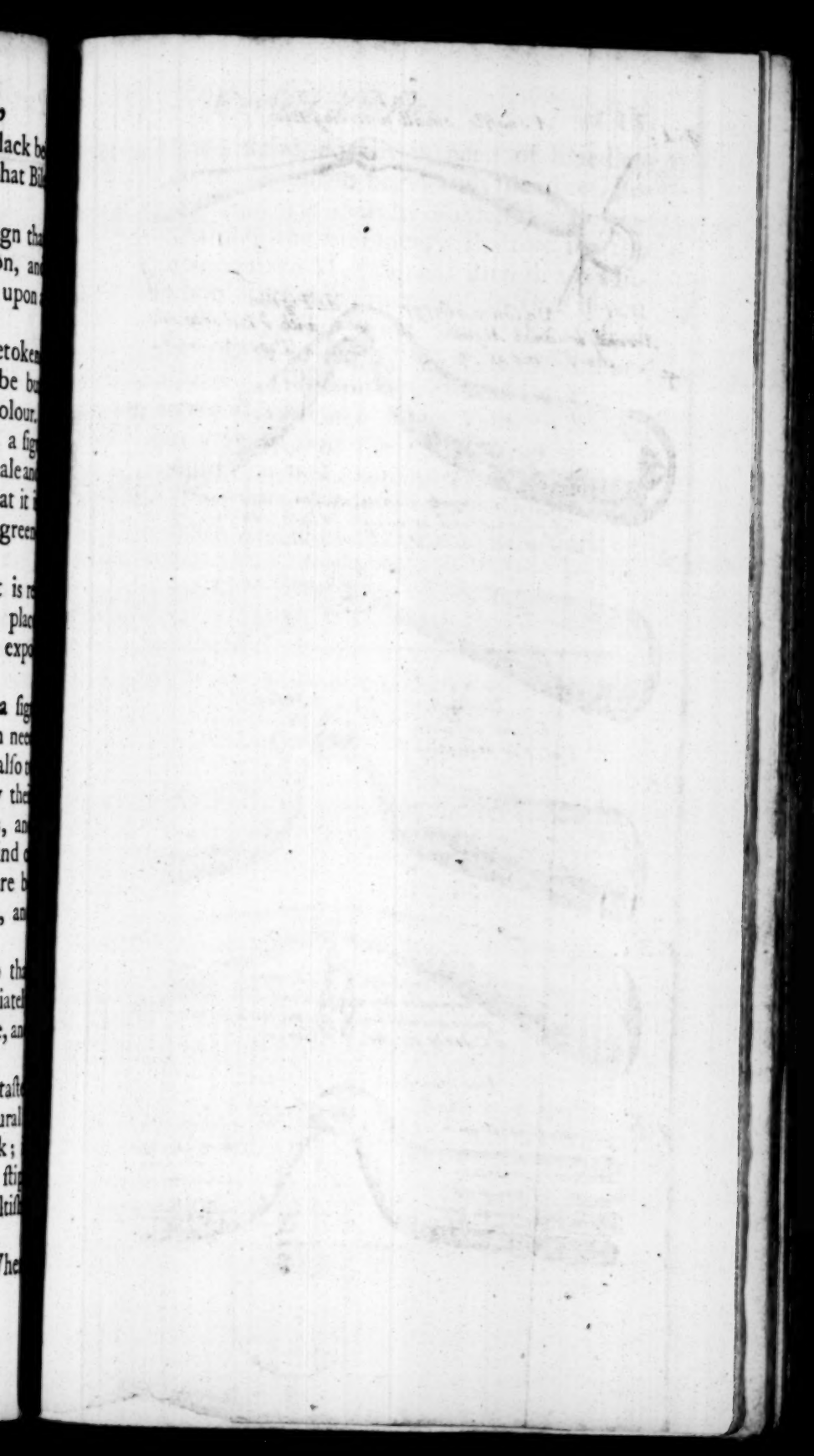


Fig: 1.

Un Filet.
A Snaffle, small watering Bitt

Fig: 4.

Un Canon à Gorge de Pigeon
Around or Canon Mouth with ye Liberty after
the Forme of a Pigeons Neck.

Fig: 2.

Un Simple Canou, on Canon à Couplet.
A plain round or Canon Mouth, and only joynted
in ye Middle, to make a kind of Liberty for the Tongue.

Fig: 5.

Un Canon Montant.
Around or Canon Mouth with an
Upset or Mounting Liberty.

Fig: 3.

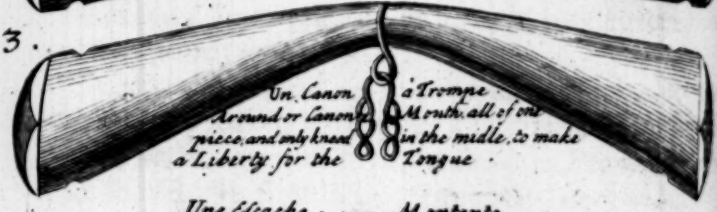


Fig: 6

Une Escache Montante.
A plain or simple Scatch Mouth, with
an Upset or Mounting Liberty.

pt 1:

When Horſes ſtand equally in need of bleeding and purging, it is fitteſt to begin with bleeding, becauſe it cools, and may thereby hinder the Purgation from inflaming the Humours: Becauſe for the moſt part, a purgative Medicament ſtirreth up Humours, which it doth not evacuate; ſo that if you ſhould immediately take Blood, while the excited Humours are thus in agitation, the Veins would attract that ſtirred up Humour which was not evacuated, and which being once in the Veins, is capable of ſpoiling the reſt of the good Blood.

In fine, Blood-letting contributes much to the true knowledge of a Horſe's Conſtitution, and more than any other evidence, whether of Mark or Colour; alſo a Man may thereby judge of his Health and Vigour.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of Bits.

TO bit a Horſe is to give him ſuch a Bridle as is moſt proper to gain his conſent to thoſe Actions you require of him.

The Iron which is put in a Horſe's Mouth, is called a *Bit* or *Bit-mouth*.

In the middle of the *Bit-mouth* there is always an arched ſpace for the lodging of his Tongue, which is called the *Liberty*.

The Duke of *Newcaſtle* adviſes to put as little Iron into a Horſe's Mouth as poſſible; and we in *England* ſeldom make uſe of other than Snaffles, Canon-mouths jointed in the middle, Canon with a Faſt-mouth, and Canon with a Port-mouth either round or jointed: But our Author gives a deſcription of fifty ſix ſorts of Bits, and the Figures of eighteen of them in a printed Plate, moſt of which

he ſays, being very rude, and ſpoiling Horſes Mouths, are generally laid aſide: I ſhall therefore deſcribe ſuch of thoſe Bits only, as are at preſent moſt in uſe amongſt us: And firſt,

Of the Canon-mouth jointed in the middle. Fig. 2.

This always preſerves a Horſe's Mouth whole and ſound; and altho' the Tongue ſuſtain the whole effort of it, yet that part is not ſo ſenſible as the Bars, which have their feeling ſo very fine, that they feel the preſſure of this Mouth through the Tongue, and thereby obey the leaſt motion of the Rider's Hand: If then the Bit-mouth reſteth wholly upon the Bars, it would be a ready means to turn a Horſe's Mouth deſperate. The larger it is towards the ends fixed to the Branches, the more gentle it will be, becauſe it will thereby be ſo much the leſs capable to conſtrain a Horſe. It ſhould be always held as a certain Maxim, that a Man ſhould make uſe of this Mouth to a Horſe as long as he can; that is, if with a ſimple Canon-mouth he can draw from a Horſe all the obedience he is capable of giving, it will be in vain for him to trouble himſelf to give him another, becauſe this is the very beſt of all.

Of the Canon with a faſt Mouth. Fig. 3.

Next cometh the Canon-mouth all of one piece, and only kneed in the middle, to make a liberty for the Tongue. This is proper to make ſure thoſe Mouths, which being too ſenſible, tickliſh, or weak, chack or beat upon the Hand. This Bit will fit ſuch Horſes Mouths, becauſe it reſts always in one place, ſo that thereby deadning in a manner that part, it maketh the Horſe to loſe his apprehenſiveneſs, who in a little time will reliſh this Bit-mouth better than the laſt, which being jointed in the middle, reſts upon the Bars unequally, ſometimes upon one ſide, and ſometimes upon t'other. This

nevertheleſs more rude, becauſe it is not jointed the middle, but all of one piece. The greateſt exterity in forging this Bit-mouth is to project the iddle of it a little forwards, thereby to give the ore play to the Horſe's Tongue, and cauſe the it to reſt rather upon the Gums or outſides of the ars, than upon their very ridges.

Of the Canon with a Port-Mouth. Fig. 5.

A Port-Mouth is a Canon with an upſet or ounting Liberty, which is proper for a Horſe that ath a good Mouth, but a large Tongue. It work- h its effect upon the Lips and Gums, and becauſe e Tongue is diſengaged, it will ſubject a Horſe ho hath his Bars high, and in ſome degree ſenſible. is of excellent uſe, and if well made will never urt a Horſe's Mouth.

f the Canon Mouth with the Liberty, after the Form of a Pigeon's Neck. Fig. 4.

When a Horſe hath too large a Tongue, ſo that its thickneſs it ſo ſupports the mouth of the Bit, at it cannot work its effect upon the Bars, this *berty* will a little diſengage his Tongue, and there- ſuffer the mouth of the Bit to meet with and ſt upon his Gums, which will make him ſo much more light upon the Hand.

This is alſo good for thoſe who ſometimes make of one Rein, becauſe they may pull it without rting his Bars, which cannot be done with Mouths at have other kinds of Liberties.

a Scatch-Mouth, with an Upſet or mounting Liberty. Fig. 6.

Theſe are more rude than Canon-Mouths, be- ſe they are not fully ſo round, but more edged, are preferable to them in one reſpect, which is, t thoſe parts of a Canon-Mouth to which the Branches

Branches are faſten'd, if not well riveted, are ſubject to ſlip, ſo that a Man is then left to his Horſe's Diſcretion: But the ends of a Scratch-Mouth can never fail, becauſe of their being over-lapped, and are therefore abſolutely moſt ſecure for vicious and ill-natur'd Horſes.

Of a Canon-Mouth with the Liberty after Mr. Pignatel's *faſhion.*

This is proper for a Horſe with a large Tongue and round Bars; ſeeing it is not at all ſupported by the Tongue, but only a little by his Lips. A Man ſhould take care never to work a Horſe with one Rein, ſo long as he is carrying one of theſe Bit-Mouths, becauſe he would infallibly break and ſpoil his Bars.

Sir *William Hope* deſcribes it in this manner: "It "is a Bit with a gentle falling and moving up and "down, and the Liberty ſo low as not to hurt the "roof of the Horſe's Mouth; which is the beſt Bit certainly for all Horſes which have any thing of a big Tongue, and therefore he recommends that Liberty above all things in Bits, with the Branches *a la Coneſtable. Plate* 3. *Fig.* 6.

I ſhall paſs over the reſt of the Bit-Mouths mentioned by our Author, ſuch as thoſe with Pears, Balls, Melons, *&c.* there being no ſuch rude Bit-Mouths now to be ſeen, but inſtead thereof People now make uſe of ſtrong and hardy Branches.

Some are of opinion, that there is no better way to fit a Horſe exactly with a Bit, than to have a great many Bits by them, and change them, until they fall upon that they would have: But be ſure at firſt to give him a gentle one, rather than a rude, and ſee that it be right lodged in his Mouth; that is, not ſo high as to make him frumple his Lip, nor ſo low as to reſt upon his Tuſhes.

This done, cauſe one to mount him, and let him try to pull the Horſe two or three ſteps back: You will know as he is going back if his Head be firm, and if he perform it frankly, or only obeys with reluctancy, that ſo you may give him another Bit, which may gain his conſent.

If he incline to carry low, you are not to give him a Liberty for the Tongue, which will riſe too high; for that by tickling his Palat, would bring his Head down between his Legs.

Large Curbs, providing they be round, are always moſt gentle: Take care that it reſt in its proper place, a little above the Beard, for without this the Bit-Mouth will not have the effect you might expect from it.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of Branches.

THE Branch is to be proportion'd according to the deſign a Man hath either of bringing in, or raiſing a Horſe's Head.

The Line of the Banquet is that part of the Branch whereby we judge of its effects, and which discovers to us its ſtrength or weakneſs. *See Plate* 3. *Fig.* 4.

A ſtrong or hardy Branch is that whoſe Sevil-hole the lower end of it is placed upon the outſide of the line of the Banquet. *See Plate* 3. *Fig.* 4, 5, and 8.

A gentle Branch is that whoſe Sevil-hole is placed on the inſide of the ſaid Line. *See Plate* 3. *Fig.* 1.

A rude and hardy Branch will bring in a Horſe's Head, proportionably as it is more or leſs hardy; whereas a gentle Branch, by diminiſhing the effect of the Bit-Mouth, makes a Horſe more eaſily to bear

bear the preſſure of it, who before could hardly endure it.

The further the Branch is from a Horſe's Neck the greater ſtrength will it have in pulling, and will bring it beſt in, provided it be in the Hands of a Perſon who underſtands to make uſe of it.

Short Branches are ruder than long, if they have both of them the ſame ſhape and turn; becauſe the effects of a long Branch coming from a Diſtance do not conſtrain a Horſe ſo ſuddenly as a ſhort which beſides its great conſtraint is alſo unpleaſant.

The Branch muſt be proportion'd to the length of a Horſe's Neck, and one may ſooner err in chuſing one too ſhort than too long. Yet after a little obſervation, a Man ſhall rarely fail when he ſees a Branch, to be able to ſay, that it is for a Horſe which hath ſuch a Neck: And when he ſees how any Horſe carries his Head, he will immediately diſcover what Branch is proper for him, becauſe he carries ſo and ſo, and hath ſuch a Neck.

I.

A ſtrait Branch after the form of a Piſtol.

See Plate 3. Fig. 1.

This is commonly the firſt given to young Horſes, to form their Mouths, and make them to liſh a Bit.

II. Fig. 2.

A Branch after the Conſtable of France's *faſhion.*

This Branch is proper for a Horſe which naturally carries his Head well, and in as becoming poſture as poſſibly he can.

III. Fig. 3.

A Branch after the form of a Gigot or Leg.

This is alſo proper for Horſes which naturally carry well; and will prevent him from carrying when weary.

IV.

IV. Fig. 4.

A Branch after the form of a bent Knee.

This is proper for Horſes which arm themſelves gainſt the Operation of the Bit, which is done two Ways:

1. By bringing in ſo very much their Heads, hat the lower part of the Branches reſt upon their reaſts or Counters: The common Remedy is to ive them ſhorter Branches, which is ſo far from ectifying it, that it conſtrains them more, and hereby obliges them to arm themſelves more ſtrong- than they did at firſt. Now this ſort of Branch, o' ten Inches long, yet is ſo turned, that it can- ot ſo ſoon reach their Counters, as an ordinary anch of ſix Inches long, becauſe inſtead of pul- ng down their Noſes, as other Branches general- do, this raiſes them.

2. The ſecond way of Horſes arming themſelves, , that when a Man would reſtrain them, they turn ſo very much their Heads, that they immediately uch their Necks with their Chins, and thereby nder the Branches uſeleſs. There is no remedy r ſuch, but to place a Ball of Wood (covered ith Velvet or any other thing, to make it appear at) betwixt their Jaw-bones, upon the Chaul- nd of the Bridle. The bigneſs of this Ball ſhould proportioned according to the hollow between e upper parts of the Jaws; becauſe were it too le, it would be uſeleſs and without effect; and it were too big, it would not only appear too uch, but would alſo ſhift from one ſide to the her: But being ſo adjuſted, that the half of the ll may enter between the two Jaw-bones, and the er half remain without, and meet with his roat, it will then keep in its place, by reaſon t the hollow between the Jaw-bones ſtraitens as deſcends, ſo that the Ball cannot be diſlodged,

but muſt of neceſſity prevent the Horſe's arming himſelf.

V. Fig. 5.

A Branch after the French Faſhion.

All Horſes do not arm themſelves, but many carry low; therefore the raiſing a Horſe's Head is one of the moſt difficult things we undertake, because a Man may bring in a hundred, when he will not raiſe ſo much as one. However, the two Branches following will produce this effect, the one more, the other leſs.

The firſt is this Branch after the *French* Faſhion, which is hardy about a third of an Inch at the Sevil-hole, and kneed an Inch and three quarters at the Jarret or Ham, with the Eye of the Branch a little higher than ordinary, to give the more force to the Branch: It will therefore be proper for raiſing a Horſe which carries his Head low, becauſe the Sevil at the lower end of the Branch, inclining backwards towards the Neck, hath borrow'd a ſufficient ſtrength from the Ham, which is pretty much kneed in that part, to make it the more powerful for raiſing.

VI. Fig. 6.

Another Branch more hardy than the preceding.

The former Branch would raiſe a Horſe's Head altho' but little, becauſe it is only hardy at the Sevil about a third of an Inch, whereas this Branch has two thirds of an Inch at the Sevil-hole, and about two Inches at the Ham, and is therefore proper to raiſe a Horſe's Head that carries very low: The falſe Ham or part of the Branch which is bruiſed and advanced forward, more than the other part of the Branch to which it is ſoldered, is a great help to it, becauſe it augments the ſtrength of the lower part of the Branch: The Eye being of a good height will alſo give ſtrength to the operation of the Branch, and the Shoulder which is ſo turned as to

to conſtrain too much, will likewiſe aſſiſt the Branch to raiſe.

VII. Fig. 7.

Another Branch which brings in a Horſe's Head more than the preceding.

This is hardy about two thirds of an Inch at the Sevil-hole, and hath a falſe Ham; that is, the Branch at that part is bruiſed or ſet forwards, ſo that the moſt advanced part of this Branch is about an Inch and three quarters.

The principal effect of this Branch is to bring in, it being hardy to the very Sevil-hole: The half Ham augments its ſtrength, and the lower part of the Branch which ſtands inclined towards the Horſe's Neck, makes it to raiſe a little; ſo that it will be good for a Horſe which carries his Neck ſtrait out, and hath therefore difficulty to bring in his Head to ſuch a becoming poſture as it ought.

This Branch brings in a great deal, and raiſes but little, which is juſt what we ſhould make uſe of for ſuch ſtrait ſtretched Necks; becauſe by bringing their Heads very much in, we oblige them to turn and bend their ſtrait Necks after the form of an Arch: But ſince it would be dangerous to bring them too much in, and thereby to bring their Heads betwixt their Legs, therefore the lower part of the Branch is made to incline backwards towards the Horſe's Neck, which raiſes and places their Heads in the moſt beautiful poſture ſuch Necks are capable of.

VIII. Fig. 8.

Another Branch more hardy than the preceding.

This Branch is hardy about an Inch and one ſixth part of an Inch, and being equally hardy at the Ham and Sevil-hole, is proper for Horſes which carry their Heads high enough, but thruſt out their Noſes. If a Man make good uſe of his Legs, as he is pulling in hard a Horſe's Head, there are very

few

few Horſes but what he will oblige to bring do
their Noſes.

Theſe are all the different ways that Horſes ca
their Heads or Necks, together with the Branch
proper for them.

It remains that I diſcourſe of ſuch Necks as a
too ſlender, and whoſe Mouths will not endure t
preſſure of the Bit upon their Bars, nor conſequent
any thing of a firm Hand. I told you the fi
Branch was proper for ſuch Horſes, but Peop
having no fancy to give ſuch Branches to Journey
Pads, they may make uſe of the ſixth Branch, an
render it more gentle at the Sevil-hole by half a
Inch, which will make it proper for them. Note
that the further the Sevil-hole is without the Li
of the Banquet, the harder and ſtronger the Brac
is; and the more it approacheth, or even come
on this ſide the ſaid Line, ſo much the more gent
it is.

CHAP. XXXIX.

A Diſcourſe of Breeding, and how to raiſe a g and beautiful Race of Horſes.

THE Goodneſs of Horſes depends much up
the trueneſs of the Race, the Quality of t
Grounds where they run, their manner of feedi
when houſed, and the method of governing th
while young.

Among all the Authors who have written on th
Subject, no one hath given ſuch exact Inſtructio
as the Duke of *Newcaſtle*; but his Book being ve
ſcarce and dear, and treating of many curious thing
more proper for a Maſter in the Art of Riding th
for a private Gentleman, our Author thought h
ſhould do ſervice to the Publick, by preſenting
wi

Plate 5, Chap: xxvi of Sup:

Fig: 1.

A true and perfect Passage upon narrow Circles to the Left Hand.

Fig: 2.

A true and perfect Terra a Terra upon large Circles or a Square to the left Hand.

Fig: 3.

A true and perfect Pirouyte to the right Hand.

Fig: 4.

The true and exact way of raising A Horse before upon Pesates or Corvets, between the Pillars.

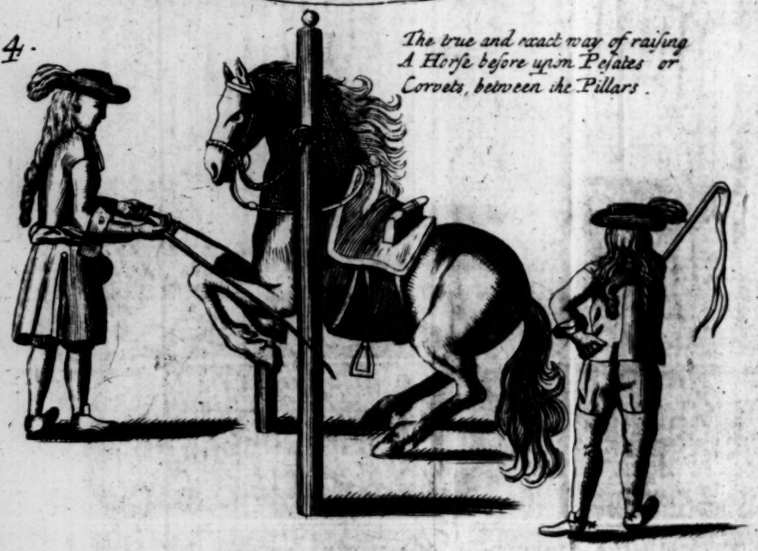


Fig: 5.

The true and exact way of raising a Horse before upon Pesates or Corvets, without the Help of the Pillars.

Fig: 6.

The true and exact way of teaching A Horse all kind of high Ayres, by the help of one Single pillar only.

Fig: 7.

The true and exact way, of teaching a Horse to go in Capriols.

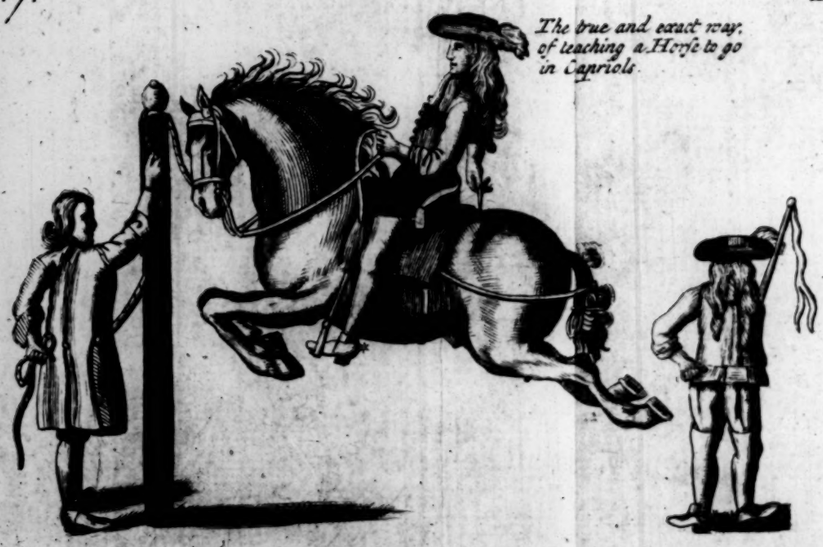
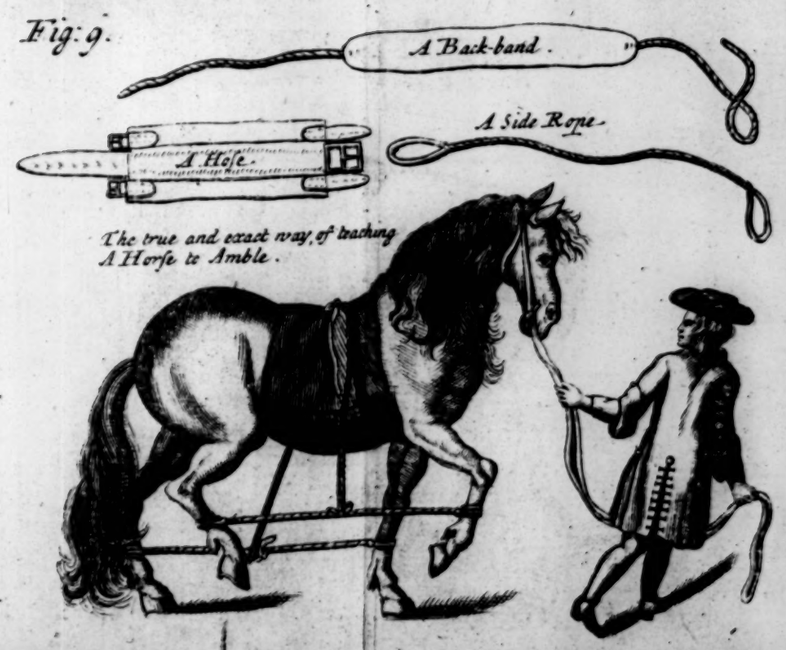


Fig: 8.

The true and exact way of teaching A Horse to go in Croupads.

Fig: 9.



The true and exact way of teaching A Horse to Amble.

an Abſtract of what he wrote on this Sub-
with ſome Remarks of his own; which the
er will find diſtinguiſh'd by this Mark (") in
largin.

e beſt Horſe for a Stallion is a good and beau-
Barb, or Spaniſh Horſe, free from thoſe Infir-
which are called Hereditary, ſuch as weak
Spavins, Purſineſs, Cheſt-foundring, as alſo
eet; with this diſtinction only, that ſuch Im-
tions as happen by accident, are not accoun-
ereditary.

That which I have to ſay againſt the Spaniſh
rſes is, that they beget Colts of a leſs ſize than
mſelves; neither do the Mares hold ſo eaſily to
m as to the Barbs: For of ten Mares cover'd
a Spaniſh Horſe, the one half will not be with
l, whereas they hold ſooner to the Barbs, if
Stallions be ſix Years old; for being younger
y deceive the Mares.

pprove not of covering Mares in one's Hand,
ing them with Ropes: For this Action of
e ſhould be performed with Freedom and
and not with Reluctancy, and againſt their

ither do I regard whether the Moon be in her
aſe or Increaſe, or if the other Celeſtial Bo-
e in ſuch or ſuch a Conjunction, as if Colts
o be begotten by Aſtronomy.

ture is moſt wiſe in her own Works; amongſt
, the greateſt is the Act of Generation, where-
e preſerves each Species to continue it to the
the World: And we ſee that this wiſe Na-
s ſo circumſpect in this Action, that although
ffer two different kinds to mix by Generation,
at which proceeds therefrom doth not after-
generate; becauſe, were it otherwiſe, each
ind of Species would in time be loſt. Let us

therefore follow herein the Laws of Nature, whi
is moſt wiſe in the Act of Generation.

When you have choſen your Stallion, thr
Months at leaſt before the time he is to cover, fe
him with good Oats, Peaſe or Beans, or with cou
Bread, and little Hay, but a good deal of Whe
ſtraw, ſtepping him out twice a day to the Wate
and after he hath drunk, walk him up and down
Hour, without making him ſweat. If he were n
thus brought in wind before he covers, he would
ther become purſey and broken-winded, or ru
great risk of being ſo; and were he not well fe
he could not perform the Taſk, or at leaſt the Co
would be but pitiful and weak; and although y
nouriſh him well, yet you will take him in ag
very lean. If you give him many Mares he w
not ſerve you ſo long, and his Mane and Tail w
fall away through Poverty; and you will find it d
ficult to recover and bring him into a good Con
tion of Body for the Year following: Give him Ma
therefore according to his ſtrength, that is twelve,
fifteen, or at moſt twenty.

We ſhould in *England* cover our Mares in the
ginning of *June*, that ſo they may foal in *May*;
which Month there is plenty of Graſs, which
make the Mares have a greater abundance of M
for the better nouriſhing of their Foals. " Mares
" with Foal eleven Months, and as many Days
" they are Years old. For example; A Mare
" nine Years old will carry her Foal eleven Mon
" and nine Days; ſo that a Man may ſo order
" Mares to be covered that their Foals may
" brought forth at ſuch time as there will be ab
" dance of Graſs.

You ſhould about the end of *May*, at which ti
there is commonly ſtore of Graſs, put your Ma
into an Incloſure, which may be capable to f
them the whole time the Stallion is to be with the

that they are in ſeaſon, in which Incloſure all your
res ſhould be put together, as well thoſe which
barren as others. Then lead forth your Stalli-
having firſt taken off his Hind-ſhoes; but his
re-ſhoes muſt be kept on for the preſervation of
Feet: Then let him cover one twice in hand, to
der him the more calm and gentle; after which
e off his Bridle, and let him go freely to the reſt,
whom he will become ſo familiar, and uſe them
indly, that they will at laſt make love to him;
hat not one of them will be hors'd but as they
in ſeaſon. After he hath ſerved them all, he
try them again, and will only cover ſuch as
ingly receive him. He knows very well when
deſire no more his company, and will then
at the ſides of the Incloſure that he may be gone;
hich time he is to be remov'd, and your Mares
into a freſh Incloſure.

Theſe are the wiſe Means Nature makes uſe of,
I aſſure you, that of twenty Mares there will
three fail; whereas if they were cover'd in
d, the one half would not hold. There ſhould
built in that Incloſure wherein the Stallion runs
the Mares, a little Lodge to retire and preſerve
from the ſcorching Heats; in which there
ld be alſo a Manger, wherein you are to give
his Oats, Peaſe, ſplit Beans, Bread, or what
he likes beſt: And he muſt be always thus had
re of while he is with the Mares, which will be
t ſix or ſeven Weeks.

You are to take care when you cover your
lares either in Hand or otherwiſe, that the Stal-
on and Mare feed alike; *viz.* if the Stallion be
Hay and Oats, which is commonly call'd *Hard-
eat*, the Mare ſhould be alſo at Hard-meat, o-
erwiſe ſhe will not ſo readily hold. In like man-
r if the Stallion be at Graſs, the Mare is alſo
be put to it. Mares which are very fat, bold

" with great difficulty; thoſe which are but indiff
" rently fat and plump, conceive with the great
" eaſe and facility.

" Mares retain a great deal better when they a
" hot or in ſeaſon; this Heat excites the Hor
" who upon his part performs that Action with t
" greater Ardour and Vigour. When the Mare
" to be cover'd in hand, that ſhe may the more c
" tainly hold, let the Stallion and her be ſo plac
" in the Stable, as they may ſee each other, a
" ſo let them be kept for ſome time which will a
" mate them both; ſo that Generation will ha
" ly fail.

" To bring a Mare in ſeaſon, and make her
" retain, you are to give her to eat for the ſpace
" eight Days before you bring her to the Ho
" about two Quarts of Hempſeed in the Morni
" and as much at Night: If ſhe refuſe to eat
" mix it with a little Bran or Oats, or elſe m
" her to faſt for a while; and if the Stall
" eat alſo of it, it will contribute much to G
" neration.

As for the Age of the Stallion, he ſhould not
ver before he be ſix Years old, nor after he is fifte
But as to this laſt you may regulate your ſelf acco
ing to his Strength and Vigour. As to the Age
Mares, they ſhould not be cover'd before they
three Years old; but the goodneſs of the Ma
and Foals which they ſhall bring forth, ſhould re
late you as to this.

" It is a Maxim, that a Mare ſhould never
" horſed while ſhe is bringing up her Foal, bec
" the Foal to which ſhe is giving ſuck, as wel
" that in her Belly, will receive prejudice by it,
" the Mare herſelf will be alſo ſooner ſpent:
" People fancy it to be good Huſbandry if a M
" bring forth yearly a Foal; whereas things rig
" conſider'd, there is more loſt than gained. H

" e

ever, if you will have your Mare cover'd, let it be ſeven or eight Days after ſhe hath foaled, that ſo ſhe may have time to cleanſe; and if you can conveniently, do not give her the Stallion until ſhe deſire him; and alſo increaſe by all means poſſible that Paſſion, as by ſtrong feeding, *&c.* At leaſt the Foal to which ſhe gives ſuck will be better by this Method, and thereby receive the more ſtrength to follow her at Graſs, as alſo the Mare will more eaſily conceive, being brought thus in ſeaſon.

" Thoſe who deſire to have Males, although the Duke cannot aſſent to it, may practiſe what follows; which may be experimented alſo upon other Creatures, ſuch as Cows, Goats, Sheep, *&c.* You muſt then bring the Mare in ſeaſon, and let her be cover'd very early in the Morning any time from the fourth Day of the Moon until it be full, but never in the decreaſe; and thus ſhe ſhall not fail to bring forth a Male-Colt, the truth whereof a little Experience will diſcover.

You may provide yourſelf of young breeding Mares from your own Race; which as they are good, and of a good Breed, will bring you forth more beautiful Foals than any other, in reſpect that they have been engendred by a good Stallion, and at the ſame that covers them did alſo beget them; for there is no ſuch thing as Inceſt among Horſes. But you are not to make uſe of your Colts for Stallions, becauſe they will much degenerate from the goodneſs of true Barbs; and if you ſhould ſo make uſe of them from one Generation to another, they would at laſt become like to the natural Race of the Country wherein they are: Therefore I would never adviſe you to chuſe a Stallion from your own Breed, but rather that you would change him for a good Barb or Spaniſh Horſe; but ſtill make choice of the moſt beautiful Mares of your own Race to breed on.

CHAP. XL.

When Foals are to be weaned or ſeparated fr their Dames, and how they are to be order'd.

YOU ſhould have a Lodge large enough to co tain all your Mares, that ſo upon occaſion th may be defended from the Injuries of the W ther; for there is no Creature to which Cold is greater Enemy than to Horſes. Many are of O nion that Foals ſhould ſuck until they be a Year two old: But this is a great miſtake, becauſe makes them become dull and ill-ſhap'd, and mak you loſe the moſt part of that time for the fertil of your Mares.

You ſhould wean your Foals at the beginning Winter, when it beginneth to grow cold, that is bout *Martinmas*, or the middle of *November*, wean them three Days before full Moon, and h about their Necks upon a piece of Rope ſeven eight Inches of the end of a Cow's Horn, to ca hold of them upon Occaſion; after which bri them all into your Stable, with Racks and Mang pretty low ſet.

" I rather think the reaſon why moſt Foals " vance ſo ſlowly, and are not capable for Serv " until they be ſix or ſeven Years old, is bec " they have not ſuck'd long enough: Whereas " they ſuck'd the whole Winter over, they wo " be as good at four or five Years old, as they " now at eight. You may therefore judge by " if it be good Huſbandry to wean ſo ſoon.

Let them all ſtand looſe together, and untied, w good ſtore of Litter, feeding them with good Ha Wheat-bran and ſometimes a few Oats; for it folly to ſay that Oats make Foals become blind, their Teeth crooked.

" I am of opinion that Oats will wear their Teeth " and make them ſooner to change, and alſo raze: " Therefore the beſt way is to break them in a Mill, " becauſe by endeavouring with their Jaws to bruiſe " and chew them, they ſtretch and ſwell their Eye " and Nether-Jaw-Veins, which ſo attract the Blood " and Humours, that they fall down upon the Eyes, " and are many times the occaſion of loſing them: " So that it is not the heating Quality of the Oats, " which is the cauſe of this, but the difficulty they " have in chewing them.

" It is further to be obſerv'd, that Foals thus fed " with Grain, do not grow ſo high upon their Legs, " but become broader and better knit than if they " had eaten nothing but Hay and Bran, and will " better endure fatigue.

When the Weather is good, drive them forth into ome incloſed place, where they may ſport themelves. Put them to Graſs about the end of *May*, or s ſoon as there is Graſs enough to feed them, and put l thoſe of one Year old together. You ſhould alſo ve a Lodge capable to hold them all, the Door hereof ſhould be very large, that they may not rt one another in going in or out.

" There are ſome Foals beneath ſix Months old, " which although their Dames have abundance of " Milk, yet decay daily, and have a Cough by rea- " ſon of certain Pellicles or Skins that breed in their " Stomachs, which obſtruct their breathing, and at " laſt totally deſtroy them. The Remedy is to take " the Bag wherein the Foal came forth of its " Mother's Belly, and drying it, give as much of " it amongſt Milk as you can take up with three Fin- " gers. This Remedy is alſo good againſt all Diſ- " eaſes that happen to them beneath ſix Years old. " But if you cannot get the Bag, then dry the Lungs " of a young Fox, and uſe it inſtead of the afore- " ſaid Powder.

At the end of a Year, in the ſame Seaſon, viz. about *Martinmas*, you are to take in the Foals again, which will now be a Year and a half old. Order, tie, and dreſs them as the reſt of your Horſes, and make them as gentle and familiar as poſſible. The next Summer, when they are two Years old, you may again put them to Graſs, or keep them in the Stable, that you may the more eaſily fit them for backing; but they are never to be backt until they be full three at leaſt.

" There are ſome Colts which having been well " fed until they be a Year old, will attempt the co- " vering the Fillies. This rarely happens at one " Year old, but frequently at one and a half, and " others at two, and two and a half, according to " their Conſtitution and Feeding. So ſoon as you " perceive this, you muſt ſeparate them, leſt they " ſhould ſpoil themſelves.

It is good to houſe your Foals every Winter, and to put them to Graſs every Summer untill they be paſt three Years old, and they will be much the ſtronger and better ſhaped. It matters not what kind of Paſture they feed in, providing it be but dry, and have a watring place in it; for if they can fill their Bellies once in twenty four Hours, it is ſuf- ficient. The Secret therefore of raiſing fine Horſes in cold Countries, conſiſts in nothing elſe than keep- ing them warm in Winter, feeding them with dry Food, and turning them out in Summer to dry Paſtures.

Take two Colts alike well ſhap'd, begot by the ſame Stallion upon two Mares equally beautiful, and keep one of them warm in the Winter time, feed- ing him alſo with dry kind of Food untill he be three Years old, and he will be almoſt as well ſhap'd as his Sire, which I ſuppoſe to be either a Barb or Spa- niſh Horſe. Suffer the other again to run all Win- ter in the Fields until he be three Years old, and

he ſhall have his Head and Neck big and thick, his Shoulders charged with Fleſh, and ſhall for his Stature or Size, be a moſt lubberly and perfect Cart-horſe: Whereby you may ſee how much dry Food and warm houſing do contribute to the Beauty of Horſes.

CHAP. XLI.

The ancient Method of preparing running Horſes.

A Running Horſe ſhould be ſomewhat long Bodied, Nervous, of great Mettle, a good Wind, a good Appetite, very ſwift, and ſenſible of the Spurs. He ſhould be of an Engliſh Breed, or a Barb, of a little Size, with pretty ſmall Legs, but the Back-ſinews at a good diſtance from the Bone, ſhort-joynted, and neat well-ſhaped Feet; for large Feet are not at all for this Employment.

To prepare him for a Race, give him neither Hay nor Oats, but Bread made of half Barley and half Beans, baked in large and thick Cakes; let them be rather ſtale than new; three Pound at Noon, and three Pound at Night, is ſufficient in twenty four Hours. Inſtead of Hay give him Wheat-ſheaves unthreſhed, with the Ears upon them: Let his Drink be luke-warm Water mixed with a Handful or two of Bean and Barley-meal. Cover him well in a Stable without Light, and let him be well litter'd and kept warm Night and Day.

On the fifth Day in the Morning, after he has faſted three Hours on the Bridle, take a Pound of freſh-butter, before it be waſhed or ſalted, and mixing

mixing with it twenty five or thirty Cloves of bruiſed Garlick; make your Horſe to ſwallow it in Balls as big as large Wallnuts, with a Quart of White-wine, keeping him afterwards with his Head tied up in the Bridle pretty high, for three Hours; then feed him as before, with Bread, warm Water, and Wheat-ſheaves, but moderately of the laſt, becauſe you are not to fatten him, but on the contrary, (by diminiſhing and hardning his Fleſh) to increaſe his Wind and Vigour.

On the ſeventh Day air him abroad for the ſpace of an Hour juſt after Sun-riſing, and as much at Night before Sun-ſet, ſometimes racking or ſtepping, and ſometimes galloping him. But if he continue too fat, then do the ſame before Sun-riſing and after Sun-ſet. Then bringing him back, rub and cover him well, and feed him as before: And thus continue to air and exerciſe him every Day, giving him every fifth Day his Pound of Butter made up with Garlick into Balls; and alſo obſerving not to air or take him abroad on the Day that he takes his Balls, nor the Day following.

When he has taken three Doſes of his Garlick-balls; that is, fifteen Days after you firſt began to put him in keeping, you are to exerciſe him for two Hours in the Morning, and as much at Night, ſometimes at full Speed, then at a good Gallop, and afterwards at a Step, that he may recover his Wind: Remembring, as I have already told you, not to air him on the Day he takes his Balls, nor on the Day after: But upon the other Days when you have gallop'd him hard, diſmount, and lead him home in your Hand well cover'd; then rubbing and wiping him all over until he be perfectly dry, let him ſtand upon his Bridle with his Head tied up for three Hours, then give him his Water ſomewhat more than luke-warm, and feed him as before: And

thus you are to order him for a Month, giving him his Garlick-Balls every fifth Day: But on the laſt five or ſix Days of the Month, you are to run and gallop him as ſharply as his Wind will allow him, giving him *Liſtenings* now and then in his Running, to take his Wind. Let his Exerciſe be for two Hours in the Morning, and as much at Night, leading him always back to the Stable in your hand, having firſt well covered him, and then rubbing and drying him, give him his Water and Meat as I have directed.

If after all this his Dung be ſtill ſlimy and viſcous, it ſhews that he is not as yet prepared; you muſt therefore continue his Balls, and Exerciſe, until his Dung come from him pretty dry, and without humidity.

Two Nights before the Match he ſhall be put in the Muzzle all Night, and about two in the Morning give him three Pints of Sack, wherein twenty or twenty five new laid Eggs are beaten, then tie him up to the Rack two Hours, after which mount him, and put him to a gentle Gallop, then to a full ſpeed as long as his Wind will allow it; afterwards to a Gallop again to give him Wind; and thus you are to exerciſe him three Hours, then cover him, lead him home in your Hand, and rubbing him and drying him, tie him up with the Bridle to the Rack for three Hours; then give him his Water, but it muſt now be as hot as he can drink it, and then feed him as formerly.

On the Day of the Match give him his former quantity of Sack and Yolks of Eggs well beaten together, two Hours before he is to run; and he muſt be alſo tied up to the Rack ſix Hours before you give him his Sack. And on that Day, and the Day preceding, he is to eat but half his allowance of Bread at each Meal, and but half the Wheat-ſheaves you were accuſtomed to give him.

Upon

Upon the Days your Horſe is not to run, you are to feed and exerciſe him as I have told you: But if you find him exactly prepared, then give him Garlick-balls every ninth Day only.

If in the time of his dieting, or afterwards, the Horſe ſhould diſguſt or become coſtive, give him good Clyſters made of two Quarts of Milk and a Pint of Sallad-Oil, the whole being well mixed and luke-warm.

Theſe kind of Horſes are never to be rid but with very ſmall Snaffles, for fear of hindring their Breathing and Wind, which one of our great Bits would certainly do. The Rider is to lean a little forward, to prevent the Wind taking too much hold upon his Body, a Cap inſtead of a Hat, very ſmall and ſharp Spurs, and he is to ſpur near to the Flank with little ſtrokes, becauſe ſtrong and great ſtrokes do rather hinder than augment his ſpeed.

The Method here ſet down by Monſieur *Solleſel*, concludes the firſt part of his Book: But he having never made tryal of it himſelf, (his Countrymen being generally great Strangers to this Diverſion) he gives it only upon the recommendation of an *Engliſh* Jockey. I thought therefore it would not be amiſs, that ſince it differs ſo much from the manner of preparing Race-Horſes uſed at this time, to ſubjoin the modern way of preparing Horſes for a Courſe, collected from the beſt Authors who have treated on this ſubject.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLII.

The modern way of preparing running Horſes.

A Horſe deſigned for Racing ſhould be tractable, and no ways Reſty or Skittiſh. His Head ſhould be ſmall and ſlender, with wide Noſtrils and a large Throple. Let him have alſo a pretty large Reach, and good Feet. His Age ſhould be ſix Years at leaſt, no Horſe under that Age having ſufficient ſtrength for a four Mile Courſe, without running the hazard of being over-ſtrained.

The next thing to be conſidered is the limitation of time for preparing a Horſe for a Match; and it is generally agreed by judicious Horſemen, that (unleſs the Match be for an extraordinary Sum) two Months is ſufficient. But herein you are to have regard to the eſtate of your Horſe's Body.

As *Firſt*, If he be very fat, foul, or taken from Graſs.

Secondly, If he be extreamly lean and poor.

Thirdly, If he be in good caſe, and hath had moderate exerciſe.

Now for the firſt, you muſt take two Months at leaſt to bring him into order: For he will require much Airing, great carefulneſs in Heating, and diſcretion in Scouring.

For the ſecond, that is, very poor, get as long time as you can; and let his Airings be moderate, and not before or after Sun, feeding him liberally, but not ſo as to cloy him.

For the third, a Month or ſix Weeks may be ſufficient.

In the next place, you muſt conſider his particular Conſtitution; as if he be fat and foul, yet of a free and waſting nature, apt quickly to conſume

and loſe his Fleſh; in this caſe, you muſtnot have too ſtrict a Hand, neither can he endure ſo violent Exerciſe, as if he were of an hardy diſpoſition, and would feed and be fat upon all Meats and Exerciſes.

Again, If he be in extream Poverty, and yet by nature very hardy, and apt ſoon to recover his Fleſh, and long to hold it; then by no means ſhould you have ſo liberal and tender a hand, nor forbear that exerciſe which you would uſe to a Horſe of a tender Conſtitution, weak Stomach, and free Spirit.

The firſt Fortnights Feeding of a Horſe who is fat, foul, or newly taken from Graſs.

Aſſoon as his Body is emptied, and the Graſs voided, which will be within three or four Days at moſt, you ſhall every Morning at break of Day, put on his Bridle, being firſt waſh'd in Ale, or Beer; and after you have dreſſed him, cover him according to the Seaſon of the Year. Then clap on his Saddle, and girt the foremoſt Girt pretty ſtrait, and the other ſomewhat ſlack, and wiſp him on each ſide of his Heart with pretty ſoft Wiſps between the two Girths, that both of them may be of equal ſtraitneſs; then put before his Breaſt a warm Breaſt-Cloth, and let it cover both his Shoulders. Then (if you have taken no Tobacco) ſquirt a little Ale or Beer out of your Mouth into the Horſe's, leaving ſome body to trim up the Stable in your abſence. For your Horſe muſt always ſtand upon good ſtore of dry Litter, Night and Day, and it muſt be either Wheat-ſtraw or Oat-ſtraw, for Barly-ſtraw and Rye-ſtraw are unwholſome, the firſt cauſing Heart-burning, the laſt Scouring.

When you are mounted, walk him a Foot-pace, which we call Racking, for a Mile or two, (for you muſt neither Amble nor Trot, becauſe they are both

both prejudicial to ſpeed,) upon ſmooth and equal Ground, and if it have a gentle Riſing ſo much the better: There gallop him gently, afterwards walk him ſoftly, that ſo he may cool as much one way as he warms another. And when you have thus exerciſed him a pretty ſpace, and the Sun is newly riſen, rack him down to ſome freſh River or clear Pond, and there let him drink at his pleaſure. After he hath drunk, bring him gently out of the Water, and rack him away very eaſily, and not as ignorant Grooms do, who as ſoon as a Horſe comes out of the Water, force him into a Gallop; which either teaches him to run away with you as ſoon as he is water'd, or maketh him refuſe to drink, fearing the Violence of his Exerciſe which is to follow: When you have thus walked him a little calmly, put him into a Gallop gently, and exerciſe him moderately as you did before; then walk him a little Space, after which offer him more Water: If he drink, then gently gallop him again; if he refuſe, then gallop him to occaſion Thirſt, and thus always give him Exerciſe both before and after Water.

When you think he hath drank ſufficiently, bring him home gently without a wet Hair, or the leaſt Sweat upon him, and when you are come to the Stable-door provoke him to Piſs if you can, by ſtirring up ſome of the Litter, which is at the Door, under him. If he do not ſtale at firſt, no matter, a little Cuſtom will bring him to it, and is good for his Health, and will keep the Stable clean.

This done, tie his Head up to the Rack in his Bridle; then rub down his Legs with hard Wiſps, as ſtrongly as you can, looſe his Breaſt-cloth, and rub his Head, Neck, and Breaſt with a dry Cloth; then take off his Saddle, and rub him all over, eſpecially his Back where the Saddle ſtood; then cloathing him according to the Seaſon, girt on his Surcingle,

cingle, and ſtop it with ſmall and ſoft Wiſps, which will make it the eaſier. Stop his Feet with Cow-dung, or his own Dung, a very little moiſtned with freſh Water, then throw into the Rack a little bundle of Hay well duſted and wrapt hard together, and let him eat it ſtanding upon his Bridle. When he hath ſtood ſo an Hour, take it off, and rub his Head and Neck very well with a Hempen or Hair-Cloth, then drawing his Bridle, make clean the Manger, and put a quart of ſweet, dry, old, and clean dreſs'd Oats into a Sieve that may keep the good and full, and let the light Oats go through it; and if he eat them with a good Appetite, let him have again the ſame quantity, and ſo let him reſt till Eleven a Clock with the Windows cloſe; for the darker you keep him the better, becauſe it will make him lie down and take his reſt, which otherwiſe he would not ſo readily do. At Eleven a Clock rub his Head and Neck as before, and give him another Quart of Oats; then leave him in the dark Stable till One after Noon, at which time rub him and feed him as before, giving him alſo another ſmall bundle of Hay, and leave him dark till watering time.

Watering time being come, dreſs him as in the Morning, then Cloath, Saddle, lead him forth and urge him to empty; then mounting him, rack him abroad, but not to riſing Ground as in the Morning, if you can find other that is plain and level, and there Air him in all Points as you did in the Morning, galloping him gently before and after his Water, rack him home to the Stable-door, and in your way let him ſmell upon every old and new Dung you meet with, to provoke him to empty. Being alighted, do as you did in the Morning, both without Doors and within, and ſo let him reſt till Nine at Night.

At Nine rub down his Legs well with Wiſps, d his Head and Neck with a clean Cloth; then ning up his Cloathes, rub all his hinder Parts, d give him a Quart of ſifted Oats, and then a le hard bundle of Hay, and toſs up his Litter, leave him till next Morning.

And thus you ſhall keep him conſtantly for the t Fortnight, which will ſo take away his Foul- s, and harden his Fleſh, that the next Fortnight u may adventure to give him ſome gentle Heats. whereas it may be objected, that many Horſes have good Appetites, would be half ſtarved or ome very weak, if they were ſcanted to a Quart Oats at a Meal. To this I anſwer, that I ſet down this proportion as an infallible Rule, ing told you, that if he eat it with a good uch you may give him another; ſo leaving proportion to your own judgment and diſcre- n.

The ſecond Fortnights Feeding.

n this Fortnight you ſhall do all things as in the ; only before you put on his Bridle, you ſhall him a Quart or better of clean ſifted Oats, n bridle and dreſs him, cloath, ſaddle, air, r, exerciſe and bring him home, as in the Fortnight; only you ſhall now put no Hay his Rack, but give it him out of your Hand, dful after handful, and ſo leave him on his le for an Hour: Then after Rubbing, *&c.* another Quart of Oats and ſet them by. Then a Loaf of Bread that is three Days old at leaſt, e after this manner.

The firſt Bread.

Take three Pecks of clean Beans, and one Peck o
fine Wheat, mix them together, and grind them in
to pure Meal. Then bolt it pretty fine, and knea
it up with great ſtore of freſh Barm and Lightning
but with as little Water as may be: Labour it we
in a Trough; break it, and cover it warm that
may ſwell: Then knead it over again, and mould
into big Loaves, and ſo break them well, and l
them ſoak ſoundly. After they are drawn from th
Oven, turn the bottoms upward, and let them coo
At three Days old you may give him this Bread, b
not ſooner; for nothing is more apt to ſurfeit tha
new Bread. If it be dank or clammy, ſo that th
Horſe takes diſtaſte thereat, then cut the Loaf in
thin Shives, and lay it abroad in a Sieve to dr
and then crumbling it ſmall amongſt his Oats, y
may give it him without danger. When you give hi
this Bread, chip it very well, and crumbling it pre
ty ſmall, mix it with the Oats you had ſifted and l
by. You may give him as much Bread as m
countervail the quantity of Oats, or more if y
think fit, and ſo leave him till eleven a Clock, a
then give him the ſame quantity of Oats and Bre
and let him reſt till the Afternoon.

At One Afternoon, if you intend not to gi
him an Heat the next Day, feed him with Bre
and Oats as in the Forenoon, and ſo every M
following for that Day.

But if you intend the next Day to give him
Heat, then you ſhall only give him a Quart
clean ſifted Oats, but no Hay, and ſo let him
till Evening. At four a Clock give him the l
quantity of clean-ſifted Oats; and after he has e
en them, Bridle, Dreſs, Cloath, Saddle, Wa
Air, Exerciſe, bring home, and order him, as
fore ſhewed; only give him neither Hay nor Br
amo

mong his Oats for that Night. After he hath ſtood bout an Hour upon his Bridle, give him another uart of Oats, and when he hath eaten them, put ſweet and clean Muzzle upon him, and ſo let him ſt till nine at Night. At nine give him another uart of Oats, and when he hath eaten them, put his Muzzle again, toſs up his Litter, and leave m till next Morning.

The Muzzle is to keep the Horſe from eating up s Litter, from gnawing upon Boards and Mud-alls, *&c.* They are made ſometimes of Leather mp'd full of Holes; but theſe are unſavory d unwholſome; beſides they are too cloſe and o hot, and both make a Horſe ſick, and cauſe m to forbear Reſt. But the beſt Muzzles for inter or Summer are the Net-Muzzles, made ſtrong Packthread, and knit very thick and cloſe the bottom, and then enlarged upwards to the ddle of the Horſe's Head; at which place they e bound about with a Tape, and have alſo a Loop d String, whereby they are faſtned to the Horſe's ead.

The next Morning come to him before Day, if be ſtanding on his Feet; but if he be laid, by no ans diſturb him. Take a Quart of well-ſifted ts and rub between your Hands with ſome ſtrong e or Beer, but let not them be too moiſt for fear offence; and when he hath eaten them, dreſs d ſaddle him as formerly. Then being ready to forth, tye his Bridle-Rein over the top of the ck, ſo as you may draw his Head aloft. Then e a new laid Egg or two, and breaking them in Mouth, make him to ſwallow them down, waſh- his Mouth after it with a little Beer or Ale, and ead him out, not forgetting to provoke him to pty at the Door: Then mount and rack him gent- o the Courſe, making him by the way to ſmell at y Horſe's Dung you ſhall meet with.

When you are come within a Mile or thereabouts of the Starting-Poſt, diſmount and take off his Body-Cloth and Breaſt-Cloth, and girt on the Saddle again: Then ſending away your Groom with thoſe Clothes, and the dry rubbing Clothes, let him ſtay at the end of the Race till you come. This done, rack your Horſe gently up to the Starting-Poſt, if there be any, making him ſmell at it that ſo he may know the beginning and end of the Courſe. There ſtart him roundly and ſharply, and give him his Heat according to the following Directions.

Some few things to be obſerved in giving of Heats.

Firſt, Two in a Week are ſufficient for any Horſe.

Secondly, That one of them ſhould always be given on that Day of the Week on which your Horſe is to run his Match, and that alſo ſtill to be the ſharpeſt for encreaſing of his Swiftneſs; the other being only a ſlow galloping over the Courſe, more to encreaſe Wind and cauſe Sweat, than to improve Speed. As ſuppoſe your Match is to be upon *Monday*, then your Heating-Days muſt be *Mondays* and *Fridays*, and the ſharper Heat to be upon the *Monday*: If the Day be *Tueſday*, then *Tueſdays* and *Saturdays*: If *Wedneſday*, then *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays*, by reaſon of the *Lord's-Day*: If *Thurſday*, then *Thurſdays* and *Mondays*, and ſo of the reſt.

Thirdly, You ſhall give no Heat (but in caſe of neceſſity) in Rain or foul Weather, but rather defer Hours and change Days; for it is unwholſome and dangerous. And therefore in caſe of ſudden Showers and uncertain Weather, you ſhall have for your Horſe a Hood lined quite thorow to keep

out the Rain. Nothing being more dangerous than old Wet falling into the Ears, and upon the Nape of the Neck and Fillets.

Fourthly, Give your Heats, (the Weather being seasonable) at the break of Day, but by no means in the Dark, as being unwholsome and dangerous.

Fifthly, When you begin your Heat, start your Horse roundly and sharply, at near a three Quarter-speed; and if it be on the Day of the Week that his March will fall on; then according to his strength, goodness of Wind, and chearfulness of Spirit, run him the whole Course thorow; and by no means do any thing in extremity or above his Wind; but when you find him a little to yield, then draw a little, and give him ease, that he may do all with Pleasure, and not with Anguish: For this manner of training, will make him take delight in his Labour. The other Heat in each Week must be more gentle, the design of it being only to encrease Wind and cause Sweat, that so the Scouring you are to give him after his Heat may have some new Grease to work upon and bring away. You should therefore let him go over the Course at a slow and gentle Gallop; for if both the Heats were smart, the Horse would not be able to hold out, there being so short an Intermission between them for him to rest and recover his Vigour. Also in coursing you shall observe upon what Ground he goes best; as whether Up-hill or Down-hill, upon smooth-ground or rough, wet or dry, a Level or Ground somewhat rising, that you may manage him for your advantage.

When you have finish'd your Heat, and gently gallop'd him up and down (the Groom being ready) ride him into some warm Place or Corner, and

with your Scraping-knife, made of a broken Sword-Blade, or of a thin piece of old hard Oak, ſcrape off the Sweat from every part (Buttocks excepted) until you can make no more ariſe, moving him a little now and then, leſt his Limbs become ſtiff; then with dry Cloths rub him all over; take off his Saddle, and having ſcraped his Back, and rubbed it near dry, put on his Body-Cloth, and Breaſt-Cloth, and girt on the Saddle again; then mount and gallop him gently, now and then wiping his Head, Neck and Body as you ſit upon his Back. Laſt of all, walk him about the Fields to cool him; and when you find him begin to dry apace, rack him homewards, ſometimes ſteeping, ſometimes galloping: But bring him not to the Stable till you find him throughly dry. When you are come to the Door, intice him to empty, then tie him to the Rack, and (having prepared it yourſelf before, or at leaſt one for you againſt your coming) give him one of theſe Scourings following.

Two excellent Scourings for Running-Horſes; either of which may be ſafely given after a Heat, to bring away molten Greaſe, or other Foulneſs in a Horſe's Body.

Take a Pint of Syrop of Roſes, or for want of it a Pint of ſtrong honyed Water, and diſſolve into it of Caſſia, Agarick and Myrrh, of each an Ounce, ſhaking them well together in a Glaſs; then being mull'd and made warm upon a gentle Fire, and the Horſe newly come from his Heat, give it him luke-warm.

Another.

Take a Pint of Canary, Malaga, or Sherry, and pulverizing an Ounce of the fineſt Rozin, put it therein; which being incorporated, add to them

ix Ounces of Oil-olive, and two Ounces of brown Sugarcandy beaten to Powder, with an Ounce of he Juice of Savin, or Powder of Rhubarb; mix or rew all together, and warming it over a gentle Fire, ive it the Horſe luke-warm.

How to order him after his Scouring.

As ſoon as you have given it to him, rub his Legs well, take off his Saddle, and if his Body be dry, run ſlightly over it with a Curry-comb, then Bruſh; and laſtly rub him over very well with a dry Cloth, and clothe him up warm, throwing alſo over him, if the Weather be cold, a looſe Blanket. Let him faſt full two hours after taking the Scouring; and during that time go not out of the Stable, but keep him away by making a noiſe, and ſtirring him now and then.

After he has faſted upon the Bridle two Hours, take a Handful of Wheat-ears, and coming to him feel the Roots of his Ears, and under his Clothes next to his Heart, and upon his Flanks; and if you find any new Sweat ariſe, or Coldneſs, or that his Flank beat, or Breaſt move faſt, then forbear to give him any thing, it being a ſign there is much Foulneſs ſtirred up, on which the Scouring is working with a conquering Quality, which makes him a little ſick: So that you ſhall only take off his Bridle, put on his Collar, toſs up his Litter, and abſent yourſelf (the Stable being dark and quiet) for two Hours, which is commonly the longeſt time that Sickneſs will continue: But if you find no ſuch Indiſpoſition in him, then give him the Ears of Wheat three or four together; and if he eat one handful give him another, and ſo until he eat three or four handfuls, but no more: Then drawing his Bridle and rubbing his Head well, give him a little Bundle of Hay well duſted; about an Hour

after give him a Quart of clean Oats with two or three Handfuls of ſplit Beans amongſt them, and break alſo into them two or three Shives of Bread clean chip'd, and then leave him for two or three Hours.

At Evening, before you dreſs him, give him the like Quantity of Oats, Beans and Bread, and when he hath eaten them, Bridle, Dreſs, and Cloath him; but you ſhall not air him abroad this Evening, becauſe the Scouring yet working in his Body after the Heat, he muſt not have any Water at all. After he is dreſs'd and hath ſtood two Hours on his Bridle, give him three Pints of clean Oats waſhed in Beer or Ale, which will inwardly cool him as if he had drank Water, and you are ſure he can receive no prejudice by it. After he has eaten all his waſh'd Meat, and reſted upon it a little Space, you ſhall at his feeding Times, which have been ſpoken of before, with Oats and ſplit Beans, or Oats and Bread, or all together, or each of them by itſelf, according to the liking of the Horſe, feed him that Night in a plentiful Manner, and leave a Knob of Hay in the Rack when you go to bed.

The next Day early, firſt Feed, then Dreſs, Cloath, Saddle, Air, Water, and bring him home as at other Times; only have a more careful Eye to his emptying, and obſerve how his Greaſe and Foulneſs waſteth. At his feeding Times, feed him as was laſt ſhewed you, only very little Hay, and keep your Heating Days and the Preparation the Day before, as hath been declared. Thus you ſhall ſpend the ſecond Fortnight, in which your Horſe having received four Heats Horſeman-like given to him, with four Scourings, there is no doubt but his Body will be inwardly clean. You ſhall therefore the next Fortnight order him according to the Directions following.

The Third Fortnight's Feeding,

The third Fortnight you ſhall make his Bread finer than it was formerly; as thus:

The Second Bread.

Take two Pecks of clean Beans, and two Pecks of fine Wheat, and grind them well together; then bolt and knead it up with Barm or Lightning, and make it up as you did the former Bread.

With this Bread, having the Cruſt clean cut away, and Oats and ſplit Beans mix'd together, or ſeverally if you think fit, feed your Horſe at his uſual Meals, as formerly, only with theſe few differences.

Firſt, you ſhall not give the Heat which falleth upon the Day of the Week the Match is to be run upon, ſo ſmartly and violently as before, that he be not overſtrained and made ſore before the Match. Next you ſhall not after his Heats give him any ſcourings; but inſtead thereof inſtantly upon the end of his Heat, after he is a little cooled and clothed up, and in the ſame place where you rub him give him one of the following Balls as big as a Hen's Egg.

The true Receipt of Mr. Markham's *famous Cordial Balls, ſo much eſteemed by the Generality of our* Engliſh *Farriers.*

Take Anniſeeds, Cummin-ſeeds, Fennegreek-ſeeds, Carthamus-ſeeds, Elecampane-roots, and Coltſfoot, of each two Ounces, beaten and ſearced very fine, as alſo two Ounces of the Flour of Brimſtone. Then take an Ounce of the Juice of Liquoriſh, and diſſolve it on the Fire in half a Pint of White-wine:

wine: Then take of the Chimical Oyl of Anniſeeds an Ounce, of Sallad-Oyl, Honey and Syrup of Sugar, or for want of it *Moloſſus*, of each half a Pint; mix all with the former Powders, and with as much fine Wheat-Flour as will bind and knit them together; work them into a ſtiff Paſte, which keep in a Gally-pot cloſe covered, and give as you find occaſion.

If to prevent Sickneſs; anoint a Ball all over with Freſh-Butter, and give it him as a Pill in the Morning faſting: Then ride him a little after it, or let him ſtand upon his Bridle for an Hour, Feeding and Watring according to cuſtom; and do this three or four Mornings together.

If for a Cough or violent Cold, or to fatten a Horſe; then give them for a Week together, or longer if needful.

If your Horſe has an inward rattling by reaſon of a Cold or Rheum, diſſolve a Ball in a Pint of Sack, and give it him warm. Or if you diſſolve it in warm Water, it will have the ſame effect, and fattens exceedingly. A Ball in the Morning before Travel will prevent his wearying too ſoon; in the heat of Travel will refreſh his Spirits; and after travel will recover Wearineſs and prevent Sickneſs.

The Fourth and laſt Fortnight's Feeding.

For the fourth and laſt Fortnight you ſhall make your Bread much finer than either of the former.

The laſt and fineſt Bread.

Take three Pecks of fine Wheat, and one Peck of Beans, grind and bolt them through the fineſt Bolter you can get; then knead it up with new ſtrong Ale and Barm beaten together, and the Whites of twenty Eggs or more, and no Water at all, but inſtead thereof

thereof a ſmall quantity of new Milk; then work it up, bake and order it as the former; and with this Bread, having the Cruſt firſt cut away, clean Oats, and ſplit Beans, all mixed or ſeveral, feed your Horſe at his ordinary Feeding-times, as you did the Fortnight before: Only you ſhall obſerve theſe few Directions following.

Firſt you ſhall keep your Heating-Days the firſt Week of this Fortnight; but the ſecond or laſt Week you ſhall forbear one Heat, and not give your Horſe any five Days before his Match, but inſtead thereof long and ſtrong Airings and Water-courſes, to keep him in Wind.

You need not in this Fortnight to give him any Scouring at all: And if Morning and Evening you burn Frankincenſe in the Stable, it is wholſom for the Horſe, and he will delight therein.

In this Fortnight, when you give him any waſht Meat, waſh it not in Ale or Beer, but in the Whites of Eggs or Muſkadine, being more wholſom and leſs purſey. This Fortnight give him no Hay, but what he takes out of your Hand after his Heats, and that but in little quantity and clean duſted.

The laſt Week of this Fortnight, if he be a foul Feeder, you muſt uſe the Muzzle continually: But if he be a clean Feeder, and will touch no Litter, then three Days before the Match is ſufficient.

On the Morning the Day before your Match, feed well before and after Watring and Airing; and water as at other times before Noon, and after Noon diminiſh his Portion of Meat a little.

Before and after Evening-Airing, feed as at Noon, and water as at other times; but be ſure to come home before Sun-ſet.

This Evening you are to trim and ſhoe your Horſe, taking care not to hinder his Feeding, nor to interrupt his Reſt: For I have heard Horſemen ſay, that when they had ſhod their Horſes with

with light Shoes or Plates, the Night before th
Courſe, their Horſes have taken ſuch notice thereof
that they would neither eat what they gave them
nor lie down to take any reſt all the Night follow-
ing: But a Horſe muſt be old and long experien-
ced in this Exerciſe to make ſuch ſubtil Obſervations
However, I adviſe that things of neceſſity be don
upon this Day, rather than upon the Morning o
the Courſe, becauſe on that Morning he ſhould hav
nothing to trouble him.

Late at Night feed as you did in the Evening
and give him what he likes beſt, according to h
Stomach, only as little Bread and Beans as poſſible
then putting on his Muzzle, and toſſing up his Li
ter, leave him quiet till next Morning.

The next Morning (being that of the Matc
Day) come to him before Day, take off his Muzzle
rub his Head well, and give him a pretty quantit
of Oats waſhed in Muſkadine if he will eat them
or elſe in the Whites of Eggs. If he refuſe both
then try him with fine dreſs'd Oats, dry and mix
with a little Wheat: After he hath eaten them, i
he be a ſlow emptier, walk him abroad, and in th
places where he uſed to empty, there entice him t
it, which, as ſoon as he hath done, bring hi
home, put on his Muzzle, and let him reſt unt
you have warning to make ready. But if he be
free Emptier, then you need not ſtir him, but l
him lie quiet.

When you have warning to make ready, take o
his Muzzle, and having waſhed his Snaffle in a lit
Muſkadine, bridle him up. But before you brid
him, if you think him too empty, give him thre
or four mouthfuls of the waſh'd Meat laſt ſpoken o
Then bridle up and dreſs him. Afterwards pitc
ing your Saddle and Girths with Shoemakers-Wa
ſet it on his Back and girt it gently, ſo that he m
only feel the Girths, but have no ſtraitneſs: Th

ay a clean Sheet over the Saddle, and over it his ordinary Cloaths, then his Body-Cloth and Breaſt-cloth, and wiſp him round with ſoft Wiſps. And being ready to draw out, give him half a Pint of the beſt Muſkadine in a Horn, and ſo lead him away.

In all your leading, uſe gentle and calm motions, ſuffering him to ſmell upon any Dung, and where you find Ruſhes; long Graſs, Heath, or the like, walk in, and entice him to Piſs; but if you find no ſuch help, then in ſome certain places where you lead him, and eſpecially near to the place where you are to mount; and having accuſtomed him to it before, break ſome of the Straw wherein he is wiſped, under him; and thus intice him, if you can, to Stale or Piſs; and if any white or thick Foam or Froth ariſe about his Mouth, with a clean Handkerchief, wipe it away; and, carrying a Bottle of clean Water about you, waſh his Mouth now and then with it.

When you are come to the place of Starting, before you uncloath the Horſe, rub and chafe his Legs well, then pick his Feet, and waſh his Mouth with Water, mount his Rider, and having adjuſted the Stirrups, let him walk him ſoftly to the Starting-Poſt, and there ſtarting fair, let him run him to the beſt advantage.

Some uſeful Obſervations while a Horſe is preparing for a Match.

If his Dung be neither ſo thin that it will run, nor ſo thick, but that it will a little flatten on the Ground, and of a pale yellow colour, then is the Horſe clean and well fed. If in round Pellets, and blackiſh or brown, it ſhews inward Heat. If greaſie, it ſhews foulneſs. If red and hard, then he hath had too ſtrong Heats, and Coſtiveneſs will follow.

follow. If it be pale and looſe, it ſhews inward coldneſs of Body, or too moiſt feeding.

If his Urine be of a pale yellowiſh colour, rather thick than thin, and of a ſtrong Smell, it ſhews Health. If it be of a high complexion, clear and tranſparent, like old March-Beer, then is he inflamed in his Body, and hath taken ſome Surfeit. If it be like Blood, or inclining to Blood, he hath too ſore Heats, been over-ridden, or ridden too early after Winter-Graſs. If green, it ſhews a Conſumption of the Body. If with bloody Streaks, an Ulcer in the Kidnies. If black, thick, and cloudy, it preſages Death.

If he ſweat ſtanding ſtill in the Stable, or walking a Foot-pace, or the like; or if his Sweat be white and frothy, like Soap-ſuds, then is he foul and wants Exerciſe. But if the Sweat be black, and as it were only Water thrown on him, then is he luſty and in good caſe.

Altho' I have given no Directions for Watering in the Evening, after a Heat; yet you may in the three laſt Fortnights (finding your Horſe clean, and the Greaſe quite conſumed) ſomewhat late at Night give him a reaſonable quantity of Water made Milk-warm, and faſting about an Hour after it. Alſo if the Weather be unſeaſonable, you ſhall at your Watering-Hours, Water in the Houſe with warm Water, throwing into it it a handful of Wheat-Bran, or Oat-meal, but Oat-meal is the beſt.

CHAP

CHAP. XLIII.

Of Ambling.

THere are many different Methods uſed in teaching Horſes to Amble; ſuch as Ambling by the help of a plowed Field, by Weights, by Hinder-Shoes with long Spurns or Plates at the Toes, by the help of fine Liſts, *&c.* all of which are defective, and have great Inconveniencies attending them. I ſhall therefore ſhew you the trueſt and eaſieſt way to make a Horſe to Amble, which is this.

Mount his Back, and try with your Hand, by a gentle and deliberate Racking, and preſſing of the Horſe forward, by helping him in the Weeks of his Mouth with your Snaffle (which muſt be ſmooth, big, and full) and correcting him firſt on one ſide, then on the other with the Calves of your Legs and ſometimes with the Spur. Now if you can make him of himſelf to ſtrike into an Amble, though ſhuffling and diſorderly, there will be much labour ſaved. But if you find he can by no means apprehend the Motion you deſign to teach him, ſtruggle not with him, but make uſe of the Tramel in manner following.

The Form of a Tramel.

Firſt, for the *Side-Ropes*; they muſt be made of the beſt, fineſt, and ſtrongeſt Pack-thread, twiſted by the Rope-maker into a ſtrong Cord, not above the bigneſs of a ſmall Jack-Line, with a Nooſe or Loop at each end, ſo ſtrong as is poſſible to be made. Neither muſt they be twiſted too hard, but gently, and with a yielding Quality, for that will bring on the Motion more eaſily, and keep the

Tramel from breaking. Now theſe Side-Ropes muſt be juſt thirty ſix Inches in length for an Horſe of an ordinary Stature, and longer or ſhorter according to the ſize of the Horſe.

Secondly, The *Hoſe*, which muſt be placed in the ſmall of the Fore-Leg, and the ſmall of the Hinder-Leg, above the Paſtern-Joints, they muſt be made of fine, ſoft, and pliant Girt-Web, lined with double Cotton: Over the Girt-Web muſt be faſten'd ſtrong Tabs of white Neats-Leather well-tallowed, and ſuited to an even length, and ſtamped with Holes at equal diſtance, which Tabs ſhall paſs through the Nooſes of the Side-Ropes, and be made longer or ſhorter at pleaſure with very ſtrong Buckles, and which Hoſe are to be made faſt about the Horſes Legs with ſmall Buckles. Now theſe Hoſe of Girt ſhould be four Inches in length, and the long Tabs with the large Buckles ten.

Thirdly, The *Back-band* being of no other uſe but to bear up the Side-Ropes, ſhould (if you tramel all four Legs) be made of fine Girt-Web, lined with Cotton; but if you tramel only one ſide, then an ordinary Tape will ſerve, being ſure that it carries the Side-Ropes in an even line, without riſing or falling; for if it riſe, it ſhortens the Side-Rope; and if it falls, it endangers tangling. In ſhort, the *Side-Ropes* muſt be firm, without yielding a jot; the *Hoſe* muſt be ſoft, lie cloſe, and not move from their firſt place; and the *Back-band* muſt be flat, light, and ſo defended from the Fillets that it may not gall.

Having brought your Horſe into an even ſmooth Path, having the *Hoſe* made faſt about his Legs, untie the long Tabs of the near Fore-Leg, and the near Hinder-Leg, then put to them the Side-Rope, and ſee that he ſtand without ſtraitning or enlarging his natural ſituation, and in that even and juſt length ſtay the Side-Rope by a ſmall Tape faſten'd up

p to the Saddle: Then with your Hand on the Bridle, ſtraitning and pulling his Head, put him ently forward; and, if need be, have the help of By-ſtander to put him forward alſo, and ſo force im to amble up and down the Road, with all the entleneſs you can, ſuffering him to take his own eiſure; and tho' he ſnapper, or ſtumble, or per-aps fall now and then, yet it matters not: Do ou only ſtay his Head, give him leave to riſe, and ith all gentleneſs put him forward again.

And that this may be done with the more eaſe nd leſs amazement to the Horſe, it is not amiſs t his firſt Trameling) to give your *Side-Ropes* more ngth than ordinary, that the Twitches may be ſs ſudden, and the Motion coming more gently, e Horſe may ſooner apprehend it. But as ſoon he comes to a little Perfection, then put the *de-Ropes* to their true length; for an Inch too ng is a Foot too ſlow in the Pace; and an Inch o ſhort, cauſes rowling, twitching up of the Legs, d indeed a kind of plain halting.

When the Horſe will thus amble in your Hand rfectly, being Trameled on one ſide, you ſhall n change it to the other ſide and ſo from one e to another, till with the Half-Tramel he will n and amble in your Hand without ſnappering ſtumbling, both readily and ſwiftly. When s is attained to, which if he be tractable, cannot above two or three Hours Labour, you may then t on the whole Tramel, with the broad, flat, ck-band, trameling both ſides equally, and ſo run n in your Hand along the Road, at the utmoſt gth of the Bridle; then pauſe, cheriſh, and to gain; and when he is perfect in this, then put n upon rough Ways, where there are Clots, hol-neſs, and falſe Treading.

When he is thus perfect in Hand, ſet a Boy or om upon his Back, making the Horſe to amble

under him, whilſt you lead and ſtay his Head to prevent Danger, or to ſee how he ſtrikes. Then mount your ſelf, and with all gentleneſs increaſe his Pace more and more, till you come to Perfection. And as you did before in Hand, ſo do now on his Back, firſt with the Half-Tramel, then with the whole, and change from one ſide to another, and alſo alter Grounds; and this you muſt do twice or thrice a Day.

When you have brought him to Perfection, you may take away the Tramel and exerciſe him without it; but let it be done upon the High-way, and not in a private ſmooth Road, which affords but a coſening Pace, and will be left upon every ſmall Wearineſs: Therefore pace him on the High-way three, four, or five Miles in a Morning, and if you find him willing to forſake his Pace, put on the Half-Tramel again.

CHA

CHAP. XLV.

Of the Vices in Horſes, and how to prevent, correct, and remedy them.

IF your Horſe carry his Head and Neck awry, obſerve to which ſide he inclines it, and ſtrike him twice or thrice with the contrary Spur: But if he be very ſtiff-necked on the right ſide and plying or bending on the left, then hold the right Rein ſhorter than the other, and when you perceive him to incline that way, give him ſudden checks, having a ſharp Wire faſten'd in the Rein, that ſtriking in his Neck, he may be obliged to hold it ſtrait, obſerving to check him upwards, leſt he get a habit of ducking down his Head.

If your Horſe duck down his Head, check him ſuddenly with the Bridle, and ſtrike him with the Spurs, that he may be ſenſible of his Fault. If he be ſtanding, make him bring his Head into its right Place, as he ſtands; if going, let it be whilſt he is moving; and when he obeys, be ſure to cheriſh him, and he will ſoon underſtand the meaning.

If your Horſe be ſubject, upon the leaſt Occaſion, to ſhake his Head and Ears, or move the latter when he intends to kick, or bite, or caſt you, ſtrike him on the Head with your Wand, and at the ſame time give him a check with your Bridle, and a ſtroke with your contrary Spur, putting him ſuddenly out of his Pace, and then make him ſtop, that he may have leiſure to underſtand your meaning; and the like do when he ſtarts, or when he flinches, which is a ſign of his intending to bite, or ſtrike with his Heels.

If he be *Reſty*, that is, will not go forwards, the Way then is to pull him backwards, and perhaps

he will then go forwards; this ſeldom fails: But if it ſhould, then make uſe of your Spurs to the purpoſe, and let another Perſon on Foot whip him forward; and altho' he rebel a long time, the Whip and Spurs will perſwade him at laſt, if they be given ſharply, ſoundly, and in time; and when once you begin, you muſt continue them until he yield; provided it proceeds from Stubbornneſs, and not from Fainting or Sickneſs.

If he *rears an end*, that is, riſes ſo high before as to endanger his coming over upon his Rider, you muſt give him the Bridle, and leaning forward with your whole Weight, give him both your Spurs as he is falling down; but Spur him not as he is riſing, for that may cauſe him to come over upon you.

If he be apt to *fall down upon the Ground*, or *the Water*, nothing better than a pair of good Spurs applied as ſoon as you perceive him going about it, which will put him from thinking more of it. But if he deſiſts, then correct him no more at that Time: For bad Horſemen are the Cauſe of moſt of theſe Vices, by correcting out of Time, whereby they are ſo far from making a Horſe ſenſible of his Fault, that they fright and put him into Confuſion, and make him at laſt become Reſty.

If he be apt *to run away*, you muſt get a gentle Bit, with a ſlack Curb, and keeping a gentle and eaſie Bridle-hand, firſt walk him without *ſtooping* but only *ſtaying* him upon the Hand by little and little, and then trot him a while, and put him again from a Trot to a walk, ſtaying him by Degrees, and always cheriſhing him when he obeys you. When you find him thus far peaceable, put him from his Trot to a gentle Gallop, and from that to a Trot, and from a Trot to a Walk, ſtaying him by Degrees with a gentle Hand, and uſing this Method for a while with Patience and Judgment, it may probably prevent his running away.

But ſuppoſe he do run away, what is to be done then? For it is certain, that the more you pull the Bridle-Reins and hurt him, by ſtraitning the Curb, the more he will pull, and run the faſter. In this Caſe, if you have Field-room, when ever you find him begin to run, let him go by ſlackning the Bridle, and giving him the Spurs, continually, ſharply, and ſoundly, until he begin to ſlack of his own accord; and uſing him in this Manner whenever he runs away with you, I dare undertake that at laſt you will cure him, there being no Remedy like this for a Run-away Horſe.

If your Horſe be skittiſh and apt to ſtart, ſo that you are never free from Danger whilſt on his Back; if it proceed from a weak Sight, whereby things are repreſented to him otherwiſe than they are, give him time to view them well, and then ride him up gently to them. But if he be naturally fearful, and apt to ſtart at the hearing of any ſtrange ſounds, you muſt accuſtom him to the noiſe of Guns, Drums, and Trumpets, and in Time he will take Delight in them.

A Compendious

TREATISE

OF THE

ART of RIDING.

Collected from the beſt Modern WRITERS on that SUBJECT.

THE

PREFACE.

YOU *have in the preceding Part, all that any* Gentleman *needs to know either as to* Buying, Keeping, Shoeing, Bitting *and* Breeding, *all kinds of Horſes, for whatſoever Service they are deſigned. But there being little or nothing of the* Art *of* Riding *contained in it, I have annexed to it the following Treatiſe of* Horſemanſhip, *collected from the Duke of* Newcaſtle, *Sir* William Hope, *and the beſt modern Writers of this Subject.*

THE *deſign of the enſuing Treatiſe is not to inſtruct ſuch who were never initiated in the* Art *of* Horſemanſhip: *No Reading in the World being capable to make a Man Maſter of any* Practical *Art, without having firſt had ſome Experience in it. But as it is not intended for*

for Perſons altogether ignorant of Riding *ſo I dare be bold to promiſe a great deal of Succeſs to ſuch as ſhall diligently practiſe theſe Directions; which is all that can be reaſonably expected from the beſt Book that can be written upon any* Practical Art *whatſoever.*

A Co

A Compendious Treatise of the Art of Riding.

CHAP. I.

Of what Stature and Age a Horſe ſhould be that is deſigned for the Manage.

HOrſes of a middle ſize have commonly moſt Strength, Spirit, and Agility, and not one in a hundred but proves good; when of large Horſes not one in a thouſand. Make choice therefore of a ſhort truſſed Horſe, well coupled, with good Feet and Legs, lively, full of Spirit and Action. And altho' great Maſters ſay, that if a Horſe have a great Head, thick Neck, and fleſhy Shoulders, he will be hard on the *Hand*; yet the Duke of *Newcaſtle* obſerves, that he had known more *Thick-Hands*, *Necks*, and *Shoulders*, to be light on the *Hand*, than he had known of *fine ſhaped* and *ſlender Fore-hands:* And that it is neither the one nor the other that cauſes it, but meerly the ſtrength of his *Chine*. For if a Horſe that hath a great Head, thick Neck, and fleſhy Shoulders, have alſo a good *Chine*, he will be light on the Hand: Provided there be no Imperfection in his Legs or Feet, eſpecially Before, for then he will lean on the Hand, to eaſe the Grief of his Legs: And the Farrier muſt cure him and not the Horſeman. For the Art of Riding will not make a lame Horſe ſound.

As

As to the Age moſt proper to begin to work a Horſe for the *Manage*, let him not be too young. Not only becauſe his Underſtanding (if we may ſo call it) is not yet come to him, but alſo that a Horſe of three Years old, being but a Griſtle, frequent ſtops and going back, will ſpoil him, by ſtraining his Back, and ſtreſſing his Hams. Nay, although your Horſe be ſix, ſeven, or eight Years old, you ſhould not ride him above once a Day: For a Horſe being Fleſh and Blood, cannot endure ſo much Labour with ſo little Reſt; and no Exerciſe is more violent for a Horſe than the *Manage:* And if you ride him twice in one Day, he will not recover it in two or three: For if he oppoſe his Rider, which all Horſes will do at firſt, you muſt correct him ſoundly, and ride him ſo long until he obey you in ſome ſmall meaſure; and by that time you will have rid him ſo violently and ſo long, that he will hardly be fit for Riding next Morning, much leſs to be rid any more that Day. Nor can you even give him his Meat, Water or Reſt in order; the want of which muſt make him ſick, and ſubject to many Diſeaſes. Whereas if you ride him moderately, and when you find him to obey you, then to take but a little of him that Morning, that he may be incouraged to do the ſame again, he will then be lively and vigorous, take pleaſure in you and the *Manage*, and learn more in one Month, riding him but once a Day, than he ſhall do in three, riding him twice.

CHA

CHAP. II.

A Deſcription of the Natural *Paces of a Horſe.*

NO Man can make a Horſe to go perfectly in *Ayres* or *Artificial* Motions, unleſs he firſt exactly underſtand the *Natural* Paces or Motions of a Horſe's Legs, which are three, *viz.* a *Walk*, a *Trot*, and a *Gallop:* To which may be added an *Amble*, becauſe ſome Horſes naturally have it, and ſuch are commonly the ſwifteſt Amblers of any. And firſt,

Of the Walk.

In a *Walk* a Horſe lifts two Legs of a ſide, one after the other, beginning with a *Hind-Leg* firſt; as if he lead with the Legs of the right ſide, then the firſt Foot he lifteth, is his *far Hind-Foot*, and in the time he is ſetting it down (which in a *Step* is always ſhort of the tread of his *Fore-Foot* upon the ſame ſide) he lifteth his *far Fore-Foot*, and ſetteth it down before his *near Fore-Foot:* Again, juſt as he is ſetting down his *far Fore-Foot*, he lifts his *near Hind-Foot*, and ſets it down again juſt ſhort of his *near Fore-Foot*, and juſt as he is ſetting it down, he lifts his *near Fore-Foot*, and ſets it down before his *far Fore-Foot*. And this is the true Motion of a Horſe's Legs upon his *Walk*.

Of the Amble.

The difference between a *Walk* and an *Amble* is only this, that in a *Walk* he lifts two Legs of a ſide *one after the other*, whereas in an *Amble* the two Legs of a ſide are raiſed at the *very ſame time*. For if your Horſe be *Walking*, and you would have him to *Amble*,

Amble, you muſt ſtay him well upon the Hand, and work him forwards with the Calves of your Legs one after the other, and thereby force him to ſet down the *Fore-Foot* of that ſide wherewith he leads ſooner than otherwiſe he would, which makes it juſt to anſwer the motion of the *Hind-Leg* of that ſide: As for example, if he lead with the *Far-ſide* he removes his *Hind-Leg* and *Fore-Leg* of the ſame ſide at one time, whilſt the other two Legs of the *Near-ſide* ſtand ſtill, which is two of a ſide in the Air, and two upon the Ground at the ſame time. *See Plate* 5. *Fig.* 9.

Of the Trot.

A *Trot* is two Legs in the Air and two upon the Ground at the ſame time croſs-wiſe, or in the form of a St. *Andrew*'s Croſs. And as in the *Amble* you ſtaid your Horſe upon the Hand, and preſſed him forwards with the Calves of your Legs *one after the other*, ſo on the contrary, if your Horſe be *Walking* and you would have him to *Trot*, you muſt ſtay your Bridle-hand, and preſs him on with both your Calves at *one and the ſame time*, which will force him to advance the *Hind-Leg* of the ſide wherewith he did not lead, ſooner than otherwiſe he would, and ſo move at the very ſame time with the *Fore-Leg* of that ſide wherewith he began to lead; which is the true action of the *Trot*, that is *Hind-Leg* of one ſide, and *Fore-Leg* of the other at one and the ſame time.

Of the Gallop.

A Horſe in Galloping ſtrait forwards, may lead with which Fore-Leg he pleaſeth, altho' Horſes do it moſt commonly with their right Fore-Leg: But with whatever Fore-Leg they lead, the Hind-Leg

the ſame ſide muſt follow it, otherwiſe their Legs ſaid to be *diſunited.*

To bring a Horſe's Legs right which are *diſunited*, u muſt ſtay him a little upon the hand, and help m with the Spur upon the contrary ſide to that which he is diſunited: For example, If he be united on the *right* ſide, help him with the *left* ur; and if he be diſunited upon the *left* ſide, then ite him with the *right* Spur, by ſtaying him as I d, a little upon the Hand, and alſo helping him the ſame time with the Calves of your Legs.

Although in Galloping ſtrait forwards a Horſe ay lead with which Fore-Leg he pleaſes, yet in *Circle* he is confined to lead always with his ore-Leg within the *Turn*, otherwiſe he is ſaid to llop *falſe*, but in both caſes the Hind-Leg of e ſame ſide muſt always follow. And thus much the *Natural* Paces.

CHAP. III.

of all the Artificial Motions which a Horſe can make.

THE *Artificial* Motions are ſeven, *viz. Terra a Terra*, a *Demy-Air* or *Demy-Volt*, a *Corvet*, *Capriole*, a *Croupade*, a *Balotade*, and a *Step*, and *Leap:* Of all which in order.

Terra a Terra is nothing elſe but a ſhort and preſt allop with the *Croup in*, in which a Horſe's Legs move more quick than in an ordinary Gallop, d mark but two times, as *Pa*, *Ta*, and not four in the Gallop. *See Plate* 5. *Fig.* 2.

A *Demy-Air* or *Demy-Volt* is an *Air* in which the ore-parts of the Horſe are more raiſed than in

Terra a Terra: Alſo the motion of the Horſe Legs is more quick in *Terra a Terra* than in t *Demy-Volt.*

A *Corvet* is an Air wherein the Horſe's Legs a yet more raiſed than in the *Demy-Volts*, being a kin of Leap-up, and a little forwards, wherein the Hor raiſeth both his Fore-Legs at once, equally advance (that is when he is going ſtrait forwards, and not a Circle) and as his *Fore-Legs* are falling, he im mediately raiſes his *Hind-Legs* as he did the *For* that is, equally advanced, and not one before th other, ſo that all his four Legs are in the Air once, and as he ſets them down he marks but tw times with them. *See Plate 5. Fig. 5.*

A *Capriole* is when a Horſe at the full heighth his *Leap* yerks or ſtrikes out his Hind-Legs as ne and even together, and as far out as ever he c ſtretch them, in which Action he makes a noiſe *Claque* with them. *See Plate 5. Fig. 7.*

A *Croupade* is a Leap, where the Horſe pulls u his Hind-Legs, as if he drew them up to his Bel *See Plate 5. Fig. 8.*

A *Balotade* is a Leap wherein the Horſe offers ſtrike out with his Hind-Legs but doth it not, on making an offer, and ſhewing the Shoes of h Hind-Feet, but does not ſtrike. Of theſe three l Leaps the *Capriole* is moſt eſteemed, being the mo perfect Leap of all.

A *Step* and a *Leap* is as it were three Airs; th Pace or Step is *Terra a Terra*, the raiſing is a *Corv* and then the *Leap* finiſhes it.

CHA

CHAP. IV.

Of the true Seat a Man ſhould keep on Horſe-back.

BEfore you come to practiſe the Artificial Motions of the laſt Chapter, it will be neceſſary at you ſhould underſtand a true Seat, without hich it will be impoſſible to perform any of them ell.

Firſt then, approaching your Horſe's left Shoulr, obſerve if the Bridle be well placed in his outh, the Curb right, and Girts faſt, and every ng in good order; then taking the Reins of the idle in your left Hand, together with the Pommel the Saddle, or a lock of his Mane, lay your ht Hand faſt upon the hinder part of the Saddle, d placing yourſelf eaſily in the middle of the Saddle, u muſt ſit upon your Twiſt, advancing your ily towards the Pommel as much as you can; ep your Shoulders a little backward, your Legs at down, as if you were on Foot, and your ighs and Knees turn'd inward, griping faſt with n; plant your Feet firmly in the Stirrups, and p them almoſt parallel to the Horſe's ſides, your els a little lower than your Toes, which ſhould paſs thorow the Stirrups above two Inches; ur Hams ſtiff, and Legs not too far from the rſe's Sides, nor yet ſo near as to touch them.

The Reins of the Bridle being, as I ſaid, in your Hand, your Thumb upon them, and little Finſeparating them, your Elbows a little diſtance m your Body, the Bridle-Hand juſt over the ck of the Horſe, and about three Fingers above Pommel, and two before it.

When a Horſe makes any rude Motion, you mu
oppoſe it by acting quite contrary to what he doth
That is, you muſt meet that which comes to you
As for Example, if the Horſe riſes before, then yo
muſt incline your Body a little forward to him
In like manner, if the Horſe ſtrike out behind, o
raiſes his Croup, you muſt put your Body backward
which is contrary to the Horſe's motion; for di
you follow the Horſe, you would put your Bod
forward, and ſo be in danger of being thrown. Th
beſt way therefore is to ſit ſtrait as much as poſſible
and then the Action of the Horſe will keep you up
on your Twiſt.

CHAP. V.

The true Method of ſuppling a Horſe's Shoulders, o first riding him upon Circles.

TO make a Horſe obey the Hand and Heel of h
Rider, is the only aim of the whole Art
Horſemanſhip; and to make him obey your Han
you muſt firſt ſupple his Shoulders. Now it is a
ways the inward Rein of the Cavezon, and inwa
Leg of the Rider, with the outward Rein of t
Bridle which doth this: Therefore practiſe yo
Horſe upon this Leſſon of the Cavezon's Rein a
Leg of a ſide, until you find him very ſupple a
eaſy to turn, and alſo very light. This muſt be do
upon large Circles, of one Piſte or Thread. Bu
ſhall firſt ſhew you how to fix your Cavezon.

Take one of the Reins of your Cavezon (whi
is alſo to have a Headſtal and Chaulband) whi
muſt be of a good length, with a Ring at one e
of it; through which draw the other end of t
Rein, until you make a Nooſe or Loop at that e

the Rein next to the Ring, which Loop put over e Pommel of the Saddle, making the reſt of the ein to come down between your Thigh, and the re-bolſter of the Saddle, and then put the reſt of e Rein through the Ring of the Cavezon upon at ſame ſide, and bring the end of it back again ward you, either to hold in your Hand (which would always adviſe you to do, ſo long as you are pling of a Horſe's Shoulders) or to faſten with a ckle to the Pommel of the Saddle, there to re-ain fixt, ſo long as you intend to ride him to that nd upon which the Rein of the Cavezon is made t; and when you have done with riding him to t hand, do the ſame with the Rein upon the her ſide.

Your Cavezon being thus ordered, and the Reins the Bridle in your left Hand, if you go to the ht, pull with your right Hand the inward Rein the Cavezon low, and towards your Knee, hin the Volt or Circle, helping him alſo with ur Leg within the Turn, to bring in his outward oulder, which is Rein and Leg of a ſide; and s is to be done firſt upon a Step, the Bridle-hand newhat low, and a little upon the inſide of the orſe's Neck; but now and then you muſt carry it on the outſide, and then immediately bring it in to its place, which is a little upon the inſide; erwards again place it upon the outſide as you ll find occaſion for it: Now this pulling of the ard Rein of the Cavezon, and helping alſo with inward Leg or Spur, giveth a Horſe a good Plye; although the principal aid of the Bridle ſhould be ys with the outward Rein, which is to carry Hand a little upon the inſide of his Neck, yet inward Rein is alſo made uſe of (which is to y the Bridle-hand upon the outſide of his Neck) nlarge the Circle, and prevent a Horſe's ſtrait- or cloſing it too much. It alſo gives him an

Apuy, by making him endure the Bit, for th
makes it both work upon his Bars and Places of th
Curb.

If you continue a little upon a Step, this Leſſo
of Rein and Leg upon a Side, you will find yo
Horſe to grow eaſy upon it, which will prepare hi
for a good Trot, and to gallop large upon Circles
one Piſte or Tread, his Croup always out, whi
will ſupple his Shoulders extreamly, eſpecially th
without the Turn, ſo that it may paſs for the be
of all Leſſons; the ſuppling of the Shoulders bei
the Foundation of a good Manage, and that whi
all good Horſemen ſhould at firſt chiefly aim at.

However, the working thus with Rein and L
of a Side, the Horſe's Croup out, doth at firſt pu
Horſe very much upon his Shoulders, and mak
him alſo to preſs a little too hard upon the Bit; b
in five or ſix Days riding he will be no more up
his Shoulders, but upon the contrary, he will be
to ply his Haunches, and endure to be kept up
them, if you ſupport him a little with the Brid
and ſtay him upon the Hand now and then, and i
mediately ſlack it again.

You muſt alſo know, that in performing t
Leſſon, if you do not bring in the Horſe's outw
Shoulder with it, you do nothing; and therefore
bring it in, you muſt cauſe the inward Shoulder
come back within the Turn, as it were towards y
that ſo it may be preſſed, and carry the wi
Weight of the fore-parts of the Horſe, while at
ſame time the outward Shoulder is at Liberty th
may ſupple; ſo that altho' you are now and t
to carry your Bridle-hand without his Neck,
you muſt immediately replace it again within,
work with the outward Rein of the Bridle, that
may bring in his outward Shoulder; for if a Ho
Shoulders be not very eaſy and ſupple, it will
only be a means to make him reſiſt and defend

elf againſt you, but it will alſo make him uncapable to perform any thing in the Manage as he ought, and nothing doth more ſupple them than this Leſſon of Rein and Leg of a ſide with the Cavezon.

Now if you perform this Leſſon exactly, the Horſe's Hind-Legs will make two Circles conſiderably larger than thoſe made by his Fore, and altho' his Croup be very much out, and that he inclines and leans ſo very much upon his inſide, as may make you apprehenſive that he will fall, yet it is ſo much the better, and he goeth alſo ſo much the more ſecure; therefore give him no other Leſſon than this upon the Trot and Gallop, either in large or narrow Circles, until his Shoulders be well ſuppled, and that you find him gallop light: But do not begin to gallop him until you find him ſo light and ready that he offer to gallop of his own accord, when he is trotting after this manner; and uſing this method, you ſhall firſt ſupple him upon a Walk, next upon a Trot, and then upon a Gallop. See Plate 4. *Fig.* 6. but there the Cavezons inward Rein is pulled high, and croſs the Horſe's Neck as it were, and not low towards the Knee, and therefore is more proper for a ſhort Trot than ſuppling of the Shoulders, altho' it be very good for both. Now what hath been ſaid of going to the right Hand, may be eaſily applied to going upon the left, the difference being only this, that you muſt hold your Bridle with your right Hand, and pull the Cavezon's inward Rein with the left.

CHAP. VI.

How to ſtop a Horſe, and make him go back.

AS to Stopping, you ſhould at firſt practiſe
but ſeldom, and very gently, and ſtop hi
rather by degrees, and with two or three Falcad
or times, than all at once and upon a ſudden; f
this weakens the Reins and Back of a young Hor
very much who hath not been accuſtomed to
Therefore when you intend to make a Stop, p
your Body and Shoulders a little back to make t
Horſe ply his Haunches, and griping him ſowewh
hard with your Thighs, pull the inward Rein
the Cavezon, and make him in this poſture to for
pretty firm Stops, at the ſame time helping hi
with your outward Leg; but you muſt never a
tempt ſuch Stops until your Horſe begin to be lig
and eaſy upon his Trot; and when you find th
he begins to ſupple and gallop light, his Head
and Croup out, then accuſtom him to freque
ſtopping; to perform which exactly, you muſt p
hard, as I ſaid, the inward Rein of the Cavezo
and make your outward Leg by approaching it ne
his ſide, bring in your Horſe's outward Hind-Le
otherwiſe he cannot ſtop upon his Haunches, b
cauſe his outward Haunch would be without t
Volt. You muſt alſo take care, when you are fi
teaching him to ſtop, not to make him advance
riſe before, for this hath ſpoiled many a Horſe, m
king them at leaſt pull to riſe ſo high before, th
they are in danger of Renverſing, or coming ov
upon their Rider. Therefore never teach your Hor
to riſe before after you ſtop him, until he be w
ſettled upon the hand; for indeed the raiſing o
Horſe before, or upon Peſates, ſhould be one

the laſt things a Man ſhould teach his Horſe, or he may happen to ſpoil him. *See Plate* 4. *Fig.* 7.

If you would have your Horſe go back upon a ſtrait Line, then leaning back a little with your Body, and ſlacking your Thighs, pull equally both the Reins of the Cavezon, one being in each Hand very ſtrongly, to ſee if you can force him back but one ſingle ſtep or two at firſt; for if you can bring him to perform that, he will in a ſhort time do more; but if he altogether oppoſe you, by fixing his Fore-Legs upon the Ground, and remaining immovable as a Rock, then pull hard the Reins of the Cavezon one after the other, as if you were ſawing of Wood, and this perhaps will make him yield to you. But if notwithſtanding this he ſtill reſiſt you, then it is a ſign his Shoulders are not yet ſupple enough for it, therefore continue to ſupple them yet better, and then he will certainly comply with you.

Thus you muſt do to make your Horſe go back in a Strait Line, which is the moſt uſeful; but if you would make him go back in a Circle, then make uſe of the inward Rein of the Cavezon, and outward Leg, juſt as you was ordered to do upon a Stop, and ſo make him go back in a round, which will help alſo to put him upon his Haunches. Note, That altho' I adviſed you to make but gentle Stops at the beginning, yet I do not ſay the ſame of going back, becauſe the ſooner you accuſtom him to go back, the ſooner will he be put upon his Haunches.

After you have ſuppled his Shoulders ſufficiently, and you ſtill find him hard on the Hand, by not being upon his Haunches, then trot him upon large Circles of one Piſte or Tread, of at leaſt twenty four or thirty Foot Diameter, and ſtop him often with pretty hard ſtops, helping him always with your outward Leg, to bring in his outward Haunch; and your Shoulders and Body a little back, ſtop him

thus when he leaſt thinks of it: But if he incline to ſtop of himſelf, then preſs him forward without ſtopping of him, and then upon a ſudden ſtop him again when he is not expecting it. Repeat this often upon the Trot and Gallop, which will both ſettle him on the Hand, and put him upon his Haunches: But after you have gained this point, you muſt not practiſe this Leſſon ſo frequently as before, becauſe it pinches a Horſe too much on the back, and makes him afraid to go frankly forwards: Therefore your Diſcretion muſt guide you, and, as I have told you, you muſt accuſtom him to ſtop upon a Walk and Trot before you adventure to ſtop him upon a Gallop, otherwiſe you may pinch his Reins, ſtrain his Back-ſinews, and make him utterly to diſguſt the Manage.

CHAP. VII.

How to make a Horſe ſenſible and obedient to the Heels, or to anſwer exactly the Spurs.

HAving in the two preceding Chapters ſhewn you how to work and ſupple a Horſe's Shoulders, with the Cavezon Rein in your Hand, and not tied to the Pommel of the Saddle, which is the better half of your work; I will now teach the other half, which is to make him obey your Heels and to work Shoulders and Croup together, the Cavezon's inward Rein being ſtill kept in your hand and not tied to the Pommel.

Pull the inward Rein of the Cavezon with your hand to bring in his outward Shoulder, and preſs him upon the inſide of the Turn, that his Legs without the Turn may be at liberty to lap over his inward Legs, which is called by Horſemen *Paſſage*, and is performed for the moſt part with the outward Rein

Rein of the Bridle and outward Leg, that ſo a Horſes Legs may have the more Liberty to lap the one over another, however the inward Rein is ſometimes to be made uſe of to ſtay him, if his Shoulders go too far before his Croup. The firſt Leſſon you ſhall give him upon paſſaging, muſt be with his Head to a Wall or Palliſade, pulling the inward Rein of the Cavezon, to whatever Hand you are going, hard to you, and helping at the ſame time with your outward Leg, to make him go ſideways, and with the half of his Shoulders always before his Croup; if he do not obey your Heel, give him the Spur gently upon that Side. You may alſo ſometimes give him this Leſſon in the open Fields. *See Plate* 4. *Fig.* 9.

If your Horſe will not anſwer your Heel, by putting in his Croup, but throweth it always out, and upon your Spur, then his Head being to the Wall, pull the outward Rein of the Cavezon from the Turn, helping him alſo with your outward Leg, and your Hand alſo if there be need for it: Now this will infallibly force in his Croup, but then he will go falſe, becauſe the outward Rein of the Cavezon being pulled, will make him look from the Turn, and ſo his Croup will go before his Shoulders, than which nothing can be more falſe: Therefore after you have wrought him thus falſly, to cure his Vice, fall to the true way of Riding again.

When your Horſe obeys your Heel upon the Paſſage along a Wall, then work him with the ſame Leſſon upon large Circles, pulling, as I ſaid, the Cavezon's inward Rein hard to you, to bring in his outward Shoulder, bending his Neck extreamly, and helping with your outward Leg, which is Leg and Rein of contrary Sides, taking always care that the half of his Shoulders go before his Croup, and if he do not anſwer your Heel, then give him the Spur with your outward Leg; alſo whatever Hand you

teach

teach him to Paſſage upon firſt, make him do as much to the other, which is but changing Bridle-hand, Cavezon-Rein and Leg, and when you find him obedient in Paſſaging upon large Circles, his Croup in (which will put him upon his Haunches,) then make him go the Paſſage in little Circles, whoſe Diameter is little longer than his own length. *See Plate* 5. *Fig.* 1.

Your Horſe being perfect in the aforeſaid Leſſons of Paſſaging along a Wall, and in Circles upon a Trot to either hand his Croup in, then put him to a ſhort or ſlow Gallop upon large Circles his Croup in, after this manner: Pull the Cavezon's inward Rein hard to you on the inſide of his Neck, and help him with your outward Leg, poiſing or reſting a little more upon your outward Stirrup than upon the inward, taking alſo care to advance your outward Shoulder, to whatever hand you are going; and thus bend his Neck extreamly, that he may be preſſed upon the outſide of the Turn, and his Legs at liberty within the Turn, which is moſt proper for the ſhort Gallop his Croup in, or *Terra a Terra*, which are near the ſame. Help him alſo now and then with your Voice, and make him form good Stops. *See Plate* 4. *Fig.* 8.

When your Horſe is perfect in theſe Leſſons, by the help of the Cavezon's inward Rein held in your Hand, I would then adviſe you to fix it with a Buckle to the Pommel of the Saddle, and to work a little more with the Bridle, that he may underſtand its operation upon his Bars, and the place of the Curb a little better than he hath done hitherto; and ſo work him upon all the former Leſſons, but now more upon a Square than upon a Circle, and ſee that you make him round the Angles well: For it is found by Horſemen that a Circle ſubjects a Horſe's Croup too much, therefore make uſe of a Square, with Cavezon-Rein and Leg of a ſide, and helping for the

moſt part with the outward Rein of the Bridle to ſupple his Shoulders; or Rein and Leg contrary, to put him upon his Haunches; and preſſing him upon the outſide of the Turn, give his Legs liberty within, helping him for the moſt part with the inward Rein of the Bridle and outward Leg, and ſometimes alſo with the outward Rein of the Bridle, when his Shoulders go too far out, and his Croup too much in.

Another good Leſſon is this; make your Horſe go ſideways, or Paſſage him upon one Hand, then put him forwards twice or thrice his own length; then make him go ſideways upon the other Hand, and put him forwards again, and ſo ſideway and forwards from Hand to Hand, which will make him very attentive to the motion of your Hand and Heels: But the open Fields are more proper for this performance, than a cloſe or covered Manage.

The inward Rein of the Cavezon being tied to the Girths, or pulled low within the Turn towards the Rider's Knee, worketh a Horſe's outward Shoulder, preſſes his Legs within the Turn, and leaves his Legs at Liberty without the Turn, is excellent in Trotting or Galloping upon Circles of one Tread; for this ſupples his Shoulders his Croup being a little out, which brings in his outward Shoulder more: It is alſo excellent in Paſſaging his Croup a little in, to make him with the more eaſe lap one Leg over another, becauſe by the help of it his outward Shoulder is brought in; but if you ſhould preſs his Croup too much in, it would be impoſſible for him to go, becauſe the Rein being tied to the Girths or pulled low, worketh and bringeth in his outward Shoulders, and by putting his Buttock too much in, you put back his outward Shoulder, which is a quite contrary Action, and cannot be done at the ſame time. This inward Rein is alſo excellent for Corvets upon Circles, becauſe it brings in the Horſe's outward Shoulder,

der, and conſequently gives liberty to the Croup. Now in all theſe Leſſons if his outward Shoulder come not in enough, you muſt then turn your Bridle-hand a little within his Neck, which will work the outward Rein, and conſequently help to bring in the outward Shoulder, and make your Horſe ſupple and eaſy to Turn.

But as this tying of the Cavezon's inward Rein to the Girths, or pulling it low, makes an oblique Line within the Turn, and therefore worketh the Horſe's outward Shoulder; ſo ſecondly, the ſame Rein tied faſt to the Pommel of the Saddle, makes an oblique Line croſs the Horſe's Neck, which Line, with the help of the Rider's outward Leg, puts back the Horſe's outward Shoulder, and forwards his inward Shoulder, and ſo preſſes him upon the outſide of the Turn, and gives his Legs liberty within the Turn, which is moſt proper for *Terra a Terra*, or the ſhort Gallop, his Croup in, but is nought for Corvets, becauſe it ſubjects his Croup too much; yet it works his *Croup* mightily, either *Leg and Rein* contrary, his *Croup out*, or in *Paſſaging* his *Croup* in upon narrow Circles of his own length or a little larger. Therefore when you have a Horſe's Head to the Wall, if you would work his *Shoulders*, pull the *Cavezon's inward Rein* low, and towards your *Knee*; but if you would work his *Croup*, then pull it croſs his *Neck*, with your *Nails* up, and towards your *outward* Shoulder.

Having now ſhewn you the different Operation of the *Cavezon's inward Rein*, when tied to the *Girths* and pulled *low*, or tied to the *Pommel* and pulled *high* and croſs the Horſe's Neck, which is of great conſequence to be exactly underſtood by any Perſon who deſigns to be a compleat Horſeman; I ſhall now ſhew you to what degree of ſtraitneſs that ſame *outward Rein* ſhould be drawn, when firſt to be made faſt to either *Pommel* or *Girths*: You muſt then draw

the *Rein* no ſtraiter, than to make your Horſe look with one Eye into the *Turn*, that is only juſt ſo ſtrait as that he may not look out of the *Turn*, becauſe if you ſhould draw it ſtraiter, he not being as yet accuſtomed to it, it would make him to turn round almoſt in one place, inſtead of going forward, and be a ready means to make him become *Reſty*; therefore ſhorten the Rein of the *Cavezon* proportionably, as you ſhall find your Horſe well accuſtomed to ride with his Neck thus plied and bent, ſo that at length you will come to make him look with almoſt both his Eyes into the *Volt* or *Turn*, which will make his Body ply, and form a part of the Circle wherein he is Riding, which is the true and exact Poſture of Body of a *Ready Horſe*, in going his Manage upon a Volt or Circle, his Croup in.

Your Horſe being perfectly well accuſtomed to perform all his Leſſons with the *Cavezon's inward Rein* thus tied to the Pommel of the Saddle, perfect him with the the Bridle alone, working him ſtill upon a *Square*, making him to point a little out with his Head at each Corner or Angle, and then to round them well.

There is no Leſſon comparable to *Paſſaging the Croup in*, to make a Horſe obey the *Hand* and *Heel*, and to raiſe him now and then upon *Peſates*, and then *Paſſage* him again: But as I have already told you, your Horſe muſt be well advanced before you adventure to make him riſe before, or you may happen to ſpoil him.

I ſhall conclude this Chapter with a few very uſeful Directions as followeth.

If your Horſe preſs forward too much, ſtay him well upon the Hand or pull him back: If he offer to go back, preſs him forward: If he go ſide-ways againſt your will to the right Hand, put him ſide-ways upon the left; and ſo on the contrary. If he put his *Croup* too much out, by throwing it upon

your outward Heel, then with your *outward* Spur put it in; and if he puts it in too much, by throwing it upon your *inward* Heel, then with your *inward* Spur force it out again. If he go too much upon his Shoulders, then *ſtop* him frequently, and make him *go back*, and alſo ſtay him well upon the *Hand*, as you are *galloping* him; but if he go upon his *Hanches*, then continue him ſo. If he *riſe before* when you would not have him, then as he is falling give him the Spurs; and being thus put from his own Will to yours, he will become a *Ready Horſe*.

CHAP. VIII.

The true and exact Method to make a Horſe go Terra a Terra.

THE *Square* for *Terra a Terra*, is preferable to a Circle; therefore work your Horſe always upon a pretty large Square of twenty four or thirty Foot Diameter, and do you ſit ſtrait in the Saddle, poiſing a little more upon your *outward* Stirrup than your *inward*, but do not lean too much upon it, only the *outward* Leg to be a little longer than the *inward*, and the inward Leg to be a little before it, and but a very little neither. You muſt reſt all upon the *Twiſt* and *Stirrups*, and ſit as near to the Pommel of the Saddle as you can, your *outward* Leg cloſe to the Horſe, with the Knee of it turned inwards, and ſtiff in the *Ham* to bring the Calf of your Leg the nearer to the Horſe's ſide. Then for the *Bridle-Hand*, if you are going to the *Right-Hand*, put your Hand upon the outſide of his *Neck*, turning up your little Finger to make it reſpect your *Left-Shoulder*, which will pull the *inward Rein* that lieth above your little Finger, your Arm being a little oblique from your Body, and your *Left-Shoulder* turned a little in, which

which will make your Body reſpect a little the *Right-Side*; and this poſture will of neceſſity make the Horſe go a little *couched* upon his outſide. You muſt turn your Head and look upon the inſide of the *Turn* to the inſide of the Horſe's *Head*, which will be a means to keep your Hand ſteddy; for did you look to your *inward* Shoulder, it would remove your *Bridle-Hand* too much within the *Turn*, and did you look juſt between the Horſe's Ears, your *outward* Shoulder would not come in enough, ſo that neither he, nor you, nor the Horſe, would be oblique as you ſhould; your *Bridle-Hand* in rounding the corners or Angles of the Square, muſt be carried *circularly* with the Horſe, and *ſteddily*, but yet only ſo as to feel him.

Now the Horſe being thus *couched* upon his *outſide*, by the poſture of your Body, the pulling of the *inward* Rein of the Bridle enlarges him *before*, by pulling as it were his *inward Fore-Leg* from the *outward Fore-Leg*; which puts his *inward Hind-Leg* near to his *outward Hind-Leg*, which narrows him *behind*, making him to bow in the *Gambrels*, eſpecially in his *outward Hinder-Leg* whereon he reſteth moſt, and thruſts his *inward Hind-Leg* under his Belly, which with all the helps above-mentioned, makes him go very much upon his Haunches: For the Horſe being thus preſt upon the outſide, muſt of neceſſity look within the *Square* or *Turn*; and his *Fore-Parts* being enlarged, will make him embrace the *Corners* of the *Square* the better when he is to round them: His *Hind-Legs* alſo being within the Lines of his *Fore-Legs*, he muſt needs be upon the Haunches; and his *inward Fore-Leg* being in a manner pulled from his *outward Fore-Leg*, his *inward Fore-Leg* with which he leads will appear to be longer than his *outward Fore-Leg*, and make the firſt and largeſt *Circle* or *Square*, which is right, and ſo his *outward Fore-Leg* will make the ſecond, and his *inward Hind-Leg* the third, becauſe it is thruſt ſo much before his

outward

outward Hind-Leg, and under his Belly; and then his *outward Hind-Leg* will make the fourth and leaſt *Square* or *Circle*, becauſe it is ſo much piled in the *Gambrel* by reſting upon it.

Remember that you keep not your *Bridle-hand* too high, but low, that ſo your Horſe may go low and preſt, becauſe he will always go according to the height of your Hand: Now *Terra a Terra* ſhould always be low and preſt. But I muſt alſo tell you that the pulling the *inward Rein* of the *Bridle* preſſes the Horſe upon the *outſide*, weighs him up, and puts him upon the Haunches, eſpecially upon his *outward Hind-Leg*; ſo that all his Body leaneth upon the *outſide*, and he cannot bring in his *outward Shoulder*, for it is bound up as it were, to give his *Fore-Leg* within the *Turn* liberty to lead. Now you may know by his *Neck*, whether he is couched or leans upon his *outſide* or not; for if he do, his *Neck* will lean all on the *outſide*, and your Body, if you follow the motion of the Horſe, will incline to be *concave* on the *outſide*, and *convex within*, which would be very unbecoming, and therefore you muſt, as much as poſſible, prevent it; ſo that the Horſe being thus preſt and couched upon the outſide, bringeth in his Haunch as he ſhould do, and hath three Legs in the Air at once, to wit, his two *Fore-Legs* and his *inward Hinder-Leg*, with a *leap* forward *low* and *preſt*.

The ſame directions muſt be obſerved for the *left Hand* as for the *right*, only altering the *Bridle-hand*, *Body* and *Legs*; and for the *Bridle-hand* it is neceſſary that when you *go on the left Hand*, you ſhould put your Hand on the contrary ſide of his Neck, which is without, your *Arm* cloſe to your *Body*, and Knuckles of your *Bridle-hand* turned towards his Neck, which will pull the *inward Rein* of the *Bridle* for the *left Hand*, becauſe it lies under your little Finger, and this will make both your Body and the Horſe's oblique, and alſo make every thing

elſe anſwer, as well in going to the *left Hand*, as it did in going to the right.

But if you intend to change Hands upon *Terra a Terra*, then your Body being ſtill oblique with the Horſe's, and your Knuckles towards his Neck, and upon the *out-ſide* of it, to which Hand ſoever you are going let his *Shoulders* firſt come in a little before you change him, and then help him with that Leg, which was the *inward* before you changed, and then holding him up with your *Bridle-hand* upon the out-ſide of his *Neck*, put him forwards. Now why his *Shoulders* ſhould come in a little before you change him, is to fix his *Croup* that it may not go out. Remember alſo to be always ſtiff in the *Hams*, and to keep your Heels down, that ſo you may bring the Calves of your Legs to him; the ſame is to obſerved in changing upon *Demy-Volts*. *See Plate* 5. *Fig.* 2.

CHAP. IX.

Of changing upon Demy-Volts.

YOU muſt ſit oblique, your Hand on the outſide, and your outward Leg cloſe to him, the Knuckles of your Bridle-hand towards his Neck, and when he takes his *Demy-Volt*, let him go a little more than half a Turn, to fix his Croup before you change him; and then help him with the inward Leg firſt, and then hold him up with your Hand, and a little on the outſide of his Neck. This from the Wall is beſt, but by a Wall it cannot be; for you cannot go through the Wall, and therefore by a Wall it can be but a juſt Half-Turn or *Demy-Volto*, which you may help with the inward or outward Rein at pleaſure, ſo you keep his Croup to the Wall, that he may keep his Line, and not falſify his *Demy-Volto*. Make

uſe always of the outward Rein, when you would bring in his outward Shoulder. I ſhould next proceed to ſpeak of Corvets, but becauſe a Horſe ſhould be perfect in Peſates before he comes to Corvets, I ſhall explain them to you.

CHAP. X.

Of Peſates.

A Peſate is when a Horſe riſes handſomely before and upon his Haunches, and at the ſame time bends his Fore-Legs up to his Body. Now this is ſo neceſſary an Action, that without a Horſe can do it perfectly, he ſhall never go well in any Ayr. The Cavezon's inward Rein being in your Hand, or tied to the Pommel, help him with the outward Rein of the Bridle, and in Paſſaging raiſe him as high as you can, and hold him there gently, without giving him occaſion to fret; then walk him a little, and raiſe him again, and do this quite round the Volt or large Circle you are working him upon, which will make him in a ſhort time to form a true Peſate. Now altho' your Horſe muſt be perfect in Peſates before you offer to put him upon any Ayr, yet they ſhould never be taught him at firſt Riding, before he is pretty far advanced in the Manage, and be rendred obedient to the Hand and Heels.

If your Horſe do not encline to riſe eaſily before upon Peſates, when you are upon his Back, then put him between the Pillars, as in *Plate* 5. *Fig.* 4. help him with two Rods upon the outſide of his Fore Thighs, and in a ſhort time he will come to do it. Now I do not think that the Pillars ſerve for any other uſe but this, neither would I ever adviſe you to make uſe of them but in this caſe; and ſo ſoon as ever you find your Horſe to riſe eaſily, then take

him quite from them, with a Reſolution never to put him betwixt them again; for I aſſure you, they conſtrain and ſubject a Horſe's Croup too much, and alſo make him to go by Rote, which is what a Man ſhould ſhun as much as any one thing in the managing of a Horſe: But the uſe of the Cavezon doth abſolutely help this; for with it he cannot go by Rote, becauſe with it, neither the Eyes nor Ears do any thing, but the Horſe merely obeys the Hand and Heels of his Rider, which maketh all Horſes go perfectly, and rarely fails.

Never force or preſs your Horſe too much to any thing, as Going-back, Stopping or Riſing-before, eſpecially young Horſes, which ſhould never be much preſt, nor ſtopt too hard or ſhort at firſt; for if you do, you may give them ſuch a Crick or Taint in the back as they may never recover. The Stop upon a Trot ſhould be hard and on a ſudden; the Stop upon a Gallop, with two or three little Falcadoes: and never ſtop and raiſe him together, but ſtop firſt and raiſe him afterwards.

CHAP. XI.

For Corvets ſtrait forwards.

YOur Seat muſt be the ſame as in *Terra a Terra*, only not altogether ſo ſtiff nor ſo oblique, the Bridle-hand even with his Neck, and your Knuckles towards his Neck on which hand ſoever he goes, but your Hand ſtill juſt over his Neck, two or three Fingers above the Pommel, and a little forward, without any other Help but to ſtay him a little upon the Ground; for every Horſe will take his own time better than you can give it him, but quick it ſhould be upon the Ground, and then ſtay him in the Air upon the Hand, your Body always going to that end

of the Horſe which comes to you, that is, bend little to him as he riſes, but ſo inſenſibly that th Spectators may not perceive it: You are alſo to ſit a forward to the Pommel as you can, your Body be ing ſtrait, and your Thighs and Knees as cloſe as they were glued to the Saddle, but your Toes a litt down and low, that you may have your Nerv weak from the Knees downwards, and ſtrong fro the Knees upwards, and do not help him with yo Legs at all, unleſs he put in his Croup too muc which muſt be put out with your inward Le or put out his Croup too much, which muſt be p in with your outward Leg: But except in theſe cas or that he go not forward enough at each time, n ver help him with your Legs, but leave his Croup fr and at liberty to follow his Fore-Parts which lead.

To make him go in Corvets ſtrait-forwards, or long a Wall, tie the Cavezon's Rein which is fro the Wall, to keep that Hind-Leg near to the oth Hind-Leg which is next the Wall, and begin with t or three Peſates, and then walk him forwards a litt then corvet him again; and if you feel him on t Hand, and that he alſo go forward with it, he w quickly be dreſt; but if he preſs forward too muc then cauſe him to make his Corvets in one place, a then put him on again. But to make this m plain, ſuppoſe it be your right Shoulder that is n the Wall, then you muſt tie the left Rein of the C vezon to the Pommel, which doth not only keep b the Hind-Leg upon the ſame ſide the Cavezon Re tied, but alſo ſupples and prepares him to go Cor upon the Volts to the left Hand. Again, if it be y left Shoulder which is to the Wall, tie the right R of the Cavezon to the Pommel for the ſame Reaſ firſt walking him, and then raiſing him upon Corv until you make him continue his Corvets with intermiſſion the whole length of the Wall. An for the Bridle-hand you muſt remember that in C

ets forward you are always to help with the Rein ext to the Wall or outward Rein, to enlarge him efore, and to narrow him behind, becauſe he leads ith his Fore-Parts, and his Hind-Parts follow to eep the Ground which his Fore-Parts have got, his ore-Parts being at liberty, and his Hind-Parts preſt. If your Horſe beat upon the Hand, it is becauſe e does not endure or obey the Curb, and in that aſe you muſt raiſe him very high upon Peſates, and old him there, which will put him upon the Curb, nd make him endure it; but if this will not do, en Gallop him upon a ſtrait Line by a Wall, or herways, and from his Gallop ſtay him upon the land, and then let him go in Corvets; or let him allop forward a ſhort Gallop, then ſtop him and iſe him three or four Peſates very high, and hold m on the Hand when he is up; and this in all robability will cure him; if not, then trot him, d ſtop him with good hard Stops, and alſo pull m back ſometimes, and this will ſettle him upon e Hand: Your Stirrups muſt be of an equal length, d rather a hole too ſhort than too long. And ſo uch for Corvets forwards. *See Plate* 5. *Fig.* 5.

For Corvets ſideways.

Help, as I ſaid, with the Bridle only, and not th your Legs, and putting his Head to the Wall, ou go to the right-hand, help with the outward in, and let the Horſe go ſideways, that is, the f of his Shoulders before his Croup; and let him s make three or four Corvets ſideways; then walk n again ſideways, and Corvet him again, and thus lk him and Corvet him ſideways, by degrees dimiing his Walk, and augmenting his Corvets, until go all in Corvets which he will ſoon do. Uſe like Helps for the left as for the right.

For Corvets backwards.

Firſt pull him back, and cauſe him to make three or four Corvets in one Place; then pull him back again, and Corvet him in one Place; and thus pulling him back, and Corvetting in one Place, diminiſhing the pulling back, and augmenting the Corvets, he will at laſt go backwards in Corvets perfectly. But you muſt remember to help always with the Bridle-Rein next to the Wall, to narrow him before and enlarge him behind, that ſo he may be there at liberty, becauſe his Hind-Parts lead and his Fore-Parts follow, to keep the Ground which his Hind-Parts have got; therefore his Hind-Parts being at liberty, and his Fore-Parts preſt, your Bridle hand muſt be low, that the Horſe may not go too high; and your Body a little forward to give his Hinder-Parts the more liberty to lead, and do not help with your Legs at all, but with your Bridle-hand pull him back every time he falleth to the Ground, and with the Aids he will come to Corvet backwards perfectly well.

For Corvets upon the Volts.

To put a Horſe upon Corvets in a Circle or Volt, the Cavezon's inward Rein muſt be at firſt tied to the Pommel, and his Croup muſt not be put in too much. But he ſhould rather at firſt teaching go upon Circles of one Tread, for here to keep out the inward Hinder-Leg is the main Buſineſs; help therefore a little with the outward Rein of the Bridle, and raiſe him three or four Corvets, then walk him upon the Circle and Corvet him again, and ſo diminiſh your Walk and augment your Corvets, until he make a whole Turn or Volt upon Corvets; and when he is perfect upon them in Circles of one Piſte or Tread, then let him go upon Corvets with his Croup a very little

upon the Volts, which is the Perfection of Corvets upon them. You muſt always in Corvets upon Volts help with the outward Rein, but give him no help with your Legs at all.

To change upon Corvets do thus; if your Horſe be going to the right-hand, and you would change him, then put your inward or right Leg gently to him, and hold him a little up with your Bridle-hand on the inſide of his Neck, your Knuckles always down, upon which Hand ſoever you go; and as ſoon as he hath changed, take your right Leg from him, and help no more with your Legs at all, only the poiſe of your Body, upon changing, is to be a little upon the outſide: The ſame very Helps are to be made uſe of when you change from the Left, *viz.* Left Leg and outward Rein. Now the reaſon why upon changing I begin firſt with the Leg and not with the Bridle-hand, is this; if I ſhould begin with the Hand, he would ſtop, and if I turned my Hand to the inſide, his Croup would go too much out and be loſt, becauſe I ſhould have no feeling of it, and therefore I begin with the Leg, but inſtantly hold him up with my Hand, ſo that the two Helps are done ſo quickly after each other that none can perceive it: But if his Shoulders do not come in enough, then turn well your Hand to the inſide, and help with the outward Rein.

For the Croſs and Saraban *upon* Corvets.

Help with the outward Rein, which is to be pull'd firſt upon the one Side and then upon the other, after every Corvet from ſide to ſide, helping, as I ſaid, with your Bridle-hand only, and your outward Shoulder always following it, without any help from your Legs at all.

Horſes that are very Dull or very Fiery are improper for Corvets, being the moſt difficult Ayres that a Horſe can go, aud require a great deal of Judgment in the Rider, as well as Patience in the Horſe to perform them.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Capriole, Croupade, Balotade, *and a* Step *and a* Leap.

I Have already told you in the third Chapter what they are, ſo ſhall not need to repeat them but proceed to ſhew you how they are to be performed.

Firſt then for Capriols, you muſt ſit ſtrait, your Thighs and Knees as cloſe as if you were glued to the Saddle, your Stirrups a little ſhorter than ordinary, a hole or thereabouts, for too ſhort would throw you out of the Saddle, and too long would diſorder your Seat and make you loſe your Stirrups; you muſt alſo keep your Toes a little down, to ſlack your Nerves from the Knees downwards, or elſe the Horſe would bolt too much forwards each Leap, for a leaping Horſe ſhould never go forward above a Foot and a half at one Leap; and when you raiſe him, inſtantly put your Breaſt out, which will make your Shoulders go a little back; for if you do it not juſt as the Horſe riſes before, it will be too late to do it when he riſes behind and ſtrikes out.

Walk your Horſe forward, and then cauſe him to make one Leap, preſently after raiſing him high upon a Peſate or two, and ſtaying and keeping him up on the Hand; and thus augmenting your Leap and diminiſhing your Peſates, he will by little and little leap perfectly; and after he is perfect upon

ſtrait Line forwards, then you may put him upon Volts or Circles, and continue the ſame method; but the Circles muſt be ſomewhat large at firſt, and you muſt remember when you raiſe him to Leap, that you help him with the point of your Rod, upon the ſetting on of his Dock, or with the great end of it juſt behind the Saddle, the Rod being turn'd in your Hand and your Thumb downwards, and do it with one or more Strokes as you pleaſe, ſo it be done in time, which is when he is rais'd before; and always when you have done leaping, cauſe him to make a high Peſate or two.

As for your Bridle-hand, you muſt always make it work the outward Rein, to bring in his outward Shoulder, and narrow him before, and enlarge him behind, that ſo he may be preſſed upon the inſide of the Turn, and at Liberty without, that his Croup may go a little out, and be the more free and at liberty; for were his Croup ſubjected or bound up, he could not Leap; therefore the outward Rein is to be uſed for all Leaps whatſoever, either ſtrait forwards or upon Circles.

The Croupade is perform'd after the ſame manner, the difference conſiſting only in the way of helping with the Rod, which muſt be by ſtriking him a little above the Gambrels.

The Balotade is done after the ſame Method, only that you muſt ſtrike him with the Rod juſt upon the Middle of his Croup.

A Step and a Leap is an Ayre in which Horſes commonly go when they have not a good Apuy; for the Step puts him upon the Hand, and gives him eaſe to Leap, like one that runs before he leaps, and may leap higher than he that goes every time he leap. Now all Leaps are made upon the Hand, therefore ſee that your Horſe be well ſettled upon the Hand before you offer to try if he will Leap, becauſe nothing diſorders a Horſe's Mouth more than

than leaping. For Leaps of all kinds give no help with your Legs at all, only hold him up well with the Bridle-hand when he riſes before, that ſo he may riſe the higher behind, and when he begins to riſe behind, put your Bridle-hand a little forward, to hold him up before, and ſtay him there upon the Hand, as if he hung in the Air, and time the motion of your Bridle-hand, ſo as that you may take him as if he were a Ball upon the bound, which is the greatest Secret of all in leaping a Horſe right.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Piroyte.

THE Action of a Horſe's Legs in the Piroyte is very extraordinary; for your Hand being upon the outſide of his Neck to make him look into the Turn, before you begin the Piroyte you muſt in an Inſtant work violently with the outward Rein of the Bridle, to ſtraiten his Fore-Parts, and give his Hinder-Parts more liberty.

As he is going to the Right-hand, at the ſame time that he lifts his two Fore-Legs, he lifts his Hind-Leg without the Turn, ſo that he hath three Legs up at a time, and all the Weight of his Body at that time reſteth upon his inward Hind-Leg only; and when thoſe three Legs that were up come to the Ground his outward Shoulder comes in ſo quickly, that it makes his inward Hind-Leg to move at the ſame time almoſt in one Place, to ſupply the Place of a Center, that ſo he may make an exact Turn or Circle: I ſay, that at the ſame time his three Legs which were in the Air are ſet down, his inward Hind-Leg removes to accompany the Round or Circle, but in a manner ſtill in one Place: So that indeed the inward Hind-Leg is the Center upon which the Horſe turns, the

at the ſame time it moves round; and when the Horſe is ſo giddy that he can go no longer for fear of falling, he then thruſts his inward Hind-Leg forward beneath his Belly to ſtop himſelf.

Theſe are the Helps and Motions of a Horſe's Legs in the Piroyte, elſe he could not go ſo ſwiftly as he ought, and as Horſes always do when they are performing this Action; and becauſe the Horſe is upon his Shoulders, and preſt upon the inſide of the Turn, therefore it is that the only help is with the outward Rein of the Bridle, to bring in quickly his outward Shoulder, and give his Croup a little liberty, and that without any aſſiſtance from your Legs at all: But as the Horſe is turning you muſt take care to turn your Body well to the Turn, and alſo look upon the inſide of his Neck, and thus let him turn one, two or three times, as you ſhall think fit. *See Plate 5. Fig. 3.*

CHAP. XIV.

Of Paſſades.

FIrſt walk your Horſe ſtrait forwards, either by a Wall or Paliſade, and at the end ſtop and raiſe him two or three Peſates, and then turn him gently, helping with the outward Rein of the Bridle and outward Leg, and ſee that he do not falſify his Demy-Volt either with his Shoulders or Haunches in Paſſaging, but that both be juſt after he has turned.

Do as much upon the other Hand, and then begin to trot him upon the ſame ſtrait Line, ſtopping, raiſing him before, and turning him as you did upon the Walk, and when he is perfect upon the Trot, then put him to a ſhort Gallop upon the ſtrait Line, ſtopping and advancing him as you did before: But now let him perform his Demy-Tour or Volt, not by Paſſading, but upon his Ayr; and when he is perfect in

in this, then let him make a Paſſade upon a ſhort Gallop, without either ſtopping or raiſing before, but only turning when at the end of the ſtrait Line, which he will do exactly in a very ſhort time: But you muſt remember in Galloping to keep his Head always a little from the Wall, that his Croup may come to it, and ſo keep the Line that he falſify not his Demy-Volt; alſo before he turns it will not be amiſs to let him make two or three Falcades or Times, to firm his Haunches the better, and to turn with the better Grace.

If you intend to paſſade or run your Horſe at his full Carriere, then keeping his Head a little from the Wall, ſlack the Bridle-hand a little, and when at the end of the Paſſade preſs him with your Thighs, and ſtay him a little upon the Hand, that he may make two or three Falcades before you turn him, and then cloſe him with your outward Rein as in the Piroyte; for the Demy-Volt of a Paſſade at full ſpeed is nothing elſe but a half Piroyte, and therefore muſt have the ſame Helps with it. And thus Paſſade him from one hand to the other, making commonly a ſtrait Line, when you do it at full ſpeed, about five or ſix times the Horſe's length only, and ſo your Horſe will go perfectly upon Paſſades, which is the Touch-ſtone of a ready Horſe, and abſolutely one of the moſt uſeful things in the Manage for a ſingle Combat.

But it may be objected, that if a Man in a ſingle Combat make uſe of theſe Falcades or Half-ſtops before he turn upon the end of his Paſſade, it will give opportunity to his Adverſary to gain his Croup, which is accounted a very conſiderable advantage in a ſingle Combat. To which I anſwer, That it cannot be denied, but that ſuch half Stops have that inconveniency: But upon the other hand, if a Man do not make uſe of them upon Paſſades at full ſpeed, he will run into another inconveniency more dangerous, which is, That his Horſe being upon his full

Carriere,

Fig: 1.

The Best & most modern Fashion of Cavezon, with its Reins.

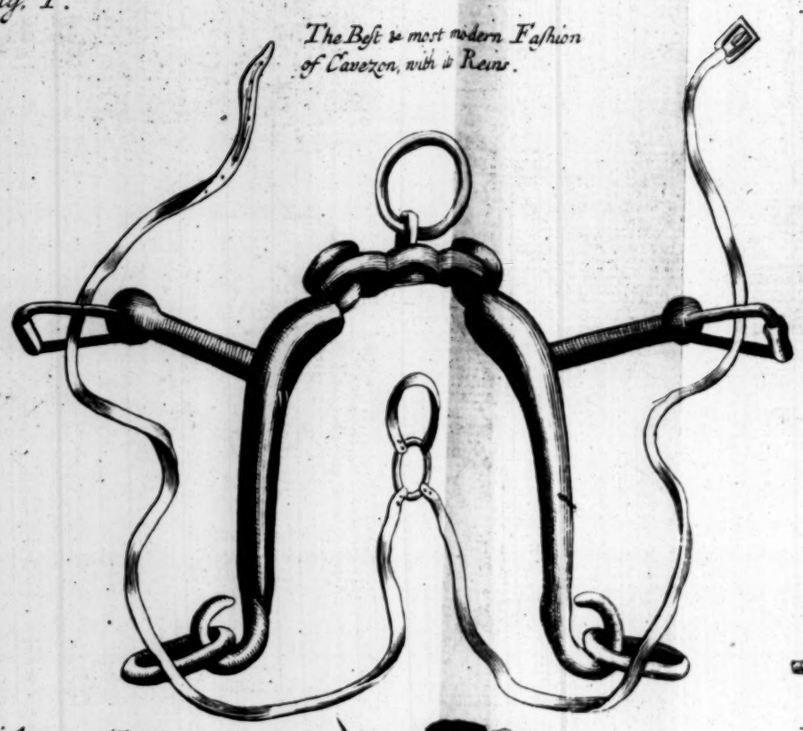


Fig: 2.

The Best and most modern Fashion of Great Saddle, or, Selle a piquer.

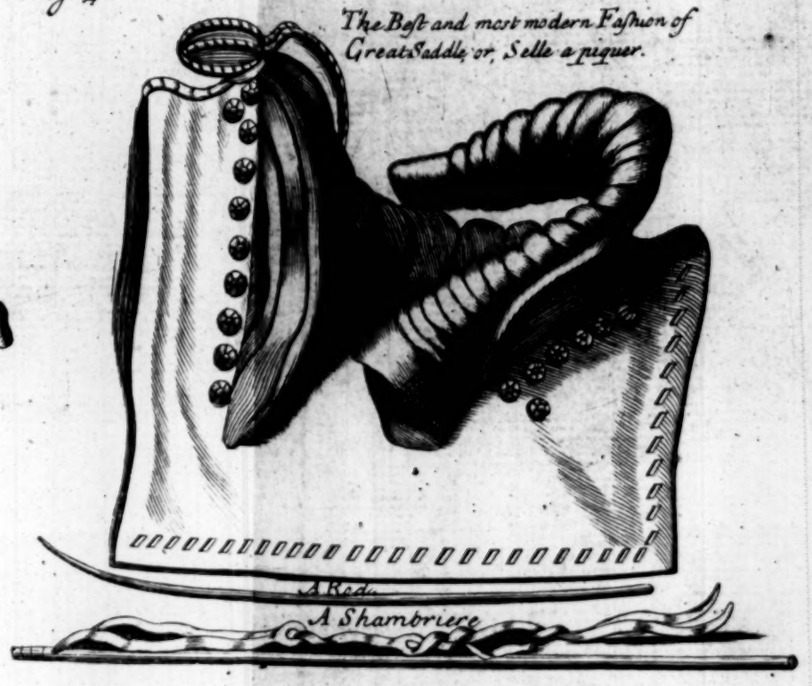


Fig: 3.

The Best and most modern Fashion of Rope Cavezon.

For the Pillars.

The best and most modern Fashion of Stirrups.

The best and most modern Fashion of Spurrs.

Fig: 4.

The True and perfect Seat upon Horseback.

Fig: 5.

The true and best way of Ordering An Unruly Colt, Before Backing.

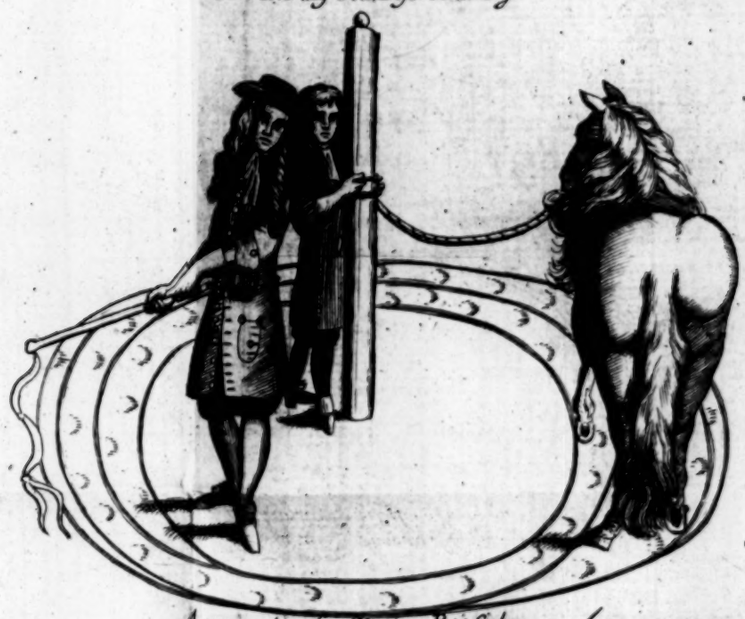


Fig: 6.

The true and best way of Suppling a Horses shoulders, Upon large Circles to the Right Hand.

Fig: 7.

A true & perfect Stop, Upon large Circles to the Left Hand.

Fig: 8.

A true and perfect Short, or Petit Galop, Upon Large Circles to the Right Hand.

Fig: 9.

A true & perfect Passage a long a Wall to the Right Hand.

Carriere, unleſs he make him form thoſe Half-Stops, he will be in danger of coming over every time he turns, riding with ſuch a force as a Man ſhould always do in Paſſading. And of two Evils it is beſt to chuſe the leaſt.

In Paſſades, help your Horſe always according to the Air with which he cloſes the end of his Paſſade; if with *Terra a Terra*, then with the inward Rein and outward Leg; but if with a half Piroyte, then with the outward Rein and outward Leg, and help always with the Rod upon the contrary ſide to which he is going.

CHAP. XV.

A new Invention to dreſs Horſes upon all Ayres, *by the help of one ſingle Pillar.*

ALtho' it muſt be confeſs'd that this Method is inferior to the Directions before given, yet it being curious and extraordinary, and in its kind very good, I ſhall here ſet it down.

Firſt bring your Horſe Sadled and Bridled to the ſingle Pillar, and there put him under the Button of the Bridle Reins, which is to draw down that little Button of Leather which moves up and down upon them, ſo near to the Horſe's Mane, that it may ſtay and fix the Branches of the Bridle at ſuch a degree of ſtraitneſs, as the Horſe may have but a very gentle feeling at firſt of the Bit, either upon his Bars or place of the Curb: This done, if you intend to make him go to the right hand, let a Groom take the Cavezon's inward Rein, and putting it about the ſingle Pillar a little higher than the Horſe's Head, keep it there very ſhort; then let another Perſon hold the long Rein of the Cavezon upon the outſide of the Turn in one hand, and a Stick with a Bodkin at the

end of it in the other, to prick him if he ſhould put out his Croup too much: And let another Perſon go behind the Horſe with a Rod to keep him from going back; then do you, being on Foot, raiſe him in one place, and be ſatisfied with a very little from him at once. Now, tying him ſhort in this manner, he cannot riſe high, and therefore goes upon his Haunches for his eaſe. After you have uſed him ſo a little, then help him with three Rods, your ſelf with two before, *viz.* one upon each Fore-Thigh, and another Perſon with the third under his Belly, which will put him very much upon the Haunches.

After if he can perform his Leſſon exactly in one place, then keeping ſtill the ſame inward Rein of the Cavezon ſhort about the Pillar, make him go upon his Volts, helping him, as I have told you, with three Rods, but be you then upon the outſide of the Horſe's Shoulders, to give him the more liberty to turn, and thus in a ſhort time he will go Corvets upon the Volts forwards perfectly well. Keep him ſtill ſo tied with the Cavezon Rein, and help with the three Rods as before, and go before and face him, and this will make him go Corvets backwards upon his Volts. Continue again ſtill the ſame Rein of the Cavezon about the Pillar, and you may make him go ſideways upon Corvets.

When he is perfect for the right-hand, then tie the left Rein of the Cavezon ſhort about the Pillar, and do in all things as you did for the right-hand: And when he goes perfectly without any Perſon upon his Back, then get upon him, the ſame Rein of the Cavezon being ſtill very ſhort about the Pillar, and make him go as you did before in every thing. *See Plate 5. Fig. 6.*

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the ſeveral Helps and Corrections with the Spurs.

THe Spurs ſerve as well for Helps as Correction: As Helps they go before and prevent Faults; as Corrections they come after. And a Man having nothing but his Hand and Heels to make a ready Horſe, the Spurs do half the Buſineſs, altho' it muſt be confeſs'd that the Hand hath the pre-eminency, and the ſettling a Horſe upon the Hand muſt always be firſt.

They are uſed as a Help thus; when a Horſe goes *Terra a Terra*, your outward Leg cloſe to him, when he ſlacks turn your Heel to him, and pinch him with the Spur, which you may eaſily do even to bring Blood, and no Body perceive it: And if a Horſe ſuffer and obey this while you ſtay him upon the Hand, you may with good reaſon ſay he is an excellent Horſe. There is another Help with the Spurs, which is neither ſo violent as a Correction, nor ſo preſſing as pinching, and it is this; when a Horſe gallops his Croup in, or *Terra a Terra*, if he obeys not your outward Leg enough, being cloſe to or very near his ſide, then make a motion of the Leg as if you did ſpur him, but with as gentle a touch as poſſible, and only to let him feel it and no more. Now if your Horſe underſtand theſe two preceding Helps with the Spurs, he will need them but very ſeldom after a while, and will obey you with the Calves of your Legs only.

The Spurs are a Correction for many things: If your Horſe rebel againſt what you would have him do, leave not ſpurring of him until you find him begin to obey, and when he obeys you in the leaſt, then alight and ſend him to the Stable, and the next Morning try him again, and if he obey you, cheriſh and make much of him, that he may know you have Mercy as well as Juſtice; for a Horſe hath Imagination, Memory and Judgment; and the wiſeſt Man in the World, were

were he put into the form of a Horſe, could not poſſibly find out more ſubtle ways to oppoſe a Man than a Horſe will: You muſt therefore uſe your Spurs as a Correction, but ſeldom, and upon juſt occaſion: As for Example, When he puts his Croup too much in or out, or if he refuſe to turn to that hand you would have him, then correct him with the oppoſite Spur. But if he be Reſty and will not go forwards, or be apprehenſive and ſkittiſh, or offer to Bite or Strike, then correct him with both Spurs. Alſo as I told you before, if he riſe too high before, or bolt upright, then to give him both your Spurs as he is falling down, may be a means to break him of it, but take heed not to make uſe of them juſt as he is riſing, leſt they make him come over upon you. Again, if he will not advance or riſe before, then a good ſtroke with both Spurs will make him riſe, provided at the ſame time you keep him firm and ſtayed upon the Hand, and as it were ſupport him a little with the Bitt; likewiſe if he be a dull Jade, or lazy and ſlack in his *Manage*, then to give him the Spurs will quicken him.

Now as the Spurs are of ſuch great efficacy when uſed with Diſcretion, ſo nothing makes Horſes more Reſty and Vicious, than when they are given out of time: And there are more Horſes made vicious by ill Riders and Bunglers, than are naturally ſo. The more unruly therefore a Horſe is, the more Calmneſs and Judgment is required in the Rider: For from a paſſionate Rider and unruly Horſe, what can be expected but Diſorder and Confuſion. And I muſt tell you, that a Horſe that hath been ſpoiled and made Reſty by ill Riding, either correcting him out of time, or letting him have his Will too much at firſt, is harder to be reduced to Obedience than the worſt natur'd Jade in the World. And thus I have deſcribed unto you all the Helps of the Hand and Heels, whereby you may perfect a ready Horſe either for Pleaſure or Service.

The End of the Firſt Part.

THE Compleat Horſeman: OR, Perfect FARRIER.

PART II.

The INTRODUCTION.

IN treating of the Diſtempers of Horſes, 'twill not be improper to premiſe their general ſigns of Sickneſs. The firſt ſign of illneſs in a Horſe, is a loathing of Food; next to that, a wild ugard look; cold Ears; a hot and foamy, or clam-y Mouth; the hair on his Flanks rough and ring, with ends paler than uſually; hard and lack, or greeniſh Dung; limpid Urine; weeping yes; a heavy drooping Head; an aptneſs to ſtumble; unwonted dulneſs and civility to other Horſes; equent riſing and lying down in the Stable, and oking towards his Flanks, which are doubl'd; beating of the Heart, ſenſible to one's hand, be-een the left Shoulder and Sengle; an indifferency d unconcernedneſs in what is done to him. If a orſe, after a long ſickneſs, piſſes without ſtriding, extending his Yard, and was not wont to do ſo

in Health, 'tis a fatal ſign. If the hair of his Tail and Skull is eaſily pluck'd off it portends Death. If he never lies down, or ſtarts up immediately when he does, it ſpeaks danger; but a continued lying in the declenſion of a Diſeaſe, is a very good ſign. If he turns up the whites of his Eyes, he is in pain, and will be long ill.

Theſe general ſigns give us to know, that a Horſe is ſick; but the particular Diſeaſe is to be diſcover'd by its peculiar ſigns.

In tracing all the Diſeaſes of Horſes, I ſhall follow the order of the parts of the body, beginning with the Head; and ſhall give a particular Deſcription of every Diſeaſe and its Cauſes, with a view of the moſt proper and approv'd Remedies.

CHAP. I.

Of the Diſorders of the Mouth; namely, the Lampas, Barbs, Wolves-Teeth, *and Wounds in the Mouth.*

Lampas. THE *Lampas* is a fleſhy lump or excreſcency, about the bigneſs of a Nut, in the roof of the Mouth, ſo that when you open the Horſe's Mouth, you may perceive that the roof riſes more or leſs above the Teeth. 'Tis common among young Horſes, the roof of their Mouth not being ſo harſh and dry as that of old Horſes. While a Horſe eats his Oats, it occaſions a pain that ſcares him from feeding. As for the Cure; it muſt be taken away with a red hot Inſtrument of Iron made for the purpoſe, and that at one ſtroke for fear of burning the Bone in coming over the place again, after the *Lampas* is cut through. I am of opinion, that it is beſt not to cut it off, you

young Horſes, till they have put forth all their Teeth, unleſs it be very troubleſome, and hinders 'em from eating.

Barbs are ſmall and inconſiderable lumps of fleſh under the Tongue, viſible when you put the Tongue aſide; which hinder the Horſe from drinking, and are eaſily cur'd, by cutting 'em off cloſe with a pair of Sciſſars, and rubbing the place with Salt. *Barbs.*

Wolves-Teeth, are over-grown Grinders, the points of which being higher than the reſt, prick the Tongue and fleſh in feeding, and ſo oblige the Horſe to leave off eating. They are ſeldom met with in young Horſes. If Teeth are not daily worn by chewing, they'l grow up to pierce the very roof of the Mouth; as I experienc'd once in a Mule, one of whoſe nether Grinders, upon the falling out of the upper Tooth, directly oppoſite to it, grew up into the void ſpace, and by degrees pierc'd the roof of his Mouth to the thickneſs of one's Finger. For cure; if a Horſe gives over eating, without any apparent ſign of illneſs in his Eyes or Hair, handle his Grinders, and, if you feel the points of them thro' his Lips, open his Mouth with an Iron Upſet, and the points will appear, which you muſt break off with a Googe, taking care that you do not ſtrike at a good Tooth, or looſen the Jaw: To avoid which inconveniency, inſtead of uſing the Googe, you may make the Horſe champ on a great File us'd by Locksmiths a quarter of an hour on both ſides, till the over-grown points are broke off. *Wolves-Teeth.*

Sometimes the Bit bearing too hard on a Horſe's Mouth, hurts it. If only the Tongue be hurt, ſhifting the Bit for a ſingle Canon-Bit, will cure it. If the other Jaw be ulcerated, and a point or prick be felt by one's Finger upon the Sore, it is a ſign the *Wounds in the Mouth.*

Bone is broken: In which Caſe you muſt put into the hole Spirit of Vitriol, or Spirit of Salt with Cotton (not by drops, leſt it fall upon a ſound part) holding the Horſe's Tongue with one hand, and keeping his Mouth open with the other, while it remains there; after that rub the Sore every Day with Honey of Roſes, till the Scar falls off, and the Bone ſcales; and then waſh it with Brandy, or put Sugar into it, till it heals. If by putting in your Finger you find only an Ulcer with ſtinking Corruption, but without points or ſcales, filling it three or four times a day with Sugar beaten ſmall, will quickly heal it. Sometimes the Bone is ſplit quite downwards, under the fleſh of the Jaw, and is corrupted by a matter that gathers into a Tumour, and corrodes the Skin: In this caſe, you muſt ſound the depth of the hole with a Probe, which I have ſeen reach to the very Mouth: Then make an inciſion with a red hot Knife, reaching downwards, and dividing the Skin to the very Bone, and touch the Bone ſeveral times with a red hot Iron, conducting it thither by the Probe, till all the corrupt part is throughly burnt. To haſten the falling off of the Scales, anoint the whole burnt part with good Oyl of Bays, every ſixth hour, for the ſpace of two Days. The hole in the beard being a moiſt ſpongy part, is often ſtop'd up with proud fleſh, which muſt be taken off with a hot Iron, or Sublimate.

CHA

CHAP. II.

Of a loathing of Food, or want of Appetite.

SOmetimes a Horſe is diverted from eating, by little Worms lodged within his Lips, both above and below, which cauſe ſuch an itching, that he is continually rubbing his Lips againſt the Manger. Theſe Worms appear like little puſhes, when you turn back the Lips, and are diſlodg'd by cutting the uppermoſt Skin where they appear, with a ſharp Knife or Lance, and rubbing the inciſion with Salt and Vinegar.

In a want of Appetite ariſing from any other cauſe, 'tis very proper to bleed him in the morning, in the middle of the roof of his mouth, between the two Crocks; or if it be a Mare, at the third or fourth furrow, with a ſharp pointed piece of a Hart or Bucks-horn. To ſtop the bleeding, give him two Pecks of moiſten'd Bran; and if that proves ineffectual, draw up his head with a halter, as if you were going to give him a Drench. But the moſt effectual and ready way of ſtopping the Blood, is preſſing an empty Nutſhel ſomewhat hard upon the part, and holding it there till it ſticks. If the Diſtemper does not yield to bleeding, give him good innocent Glyſters; moiſten his Oats, Bran and Hay with Water, in which Savin has been ſteep'd, continuing that method for ſome time; give him large quantities of the leaves and roots of Radiſhes, if they are in ſeaſon, or red Parſnips boil'd, or the herb Horſetail. If he has no unuſual heat in his body, which you may perceive by the beating and heaving of his Flanks, give him an Ounce of *Venice* Treacle, well diluted in White or Red Wine. Whatever be his caſe, the following Bag is of good uſe.

Take an Ounce of Aſſa fœtida, and as much powder of Savin; put 'em into a Bag to be tied to the Bit, keeping him bridled for two hours, ſeveral times a day. As ſoon as you take off the Bridle, he will eat. The ſame Bag will ſerve a long time.

Above all, the ſureſt Remedy is, an Ounce of Liver of Antimony, in fine powder, with moiſten'd Bran, to be repeated twice every day, for ſeveral days, unleſs he inclines to void the Strangles. Champing upon a Branch of Laurel, or of a Fig-tree, rub'd over (after it is a little champ'd) with Hony of Roſes or common Hony, is likewiſe proper; as alſo the following Remedy, which is generally known and prepar'd by all Perſons.

Take about two glaſſes of Verjuice or of Vinegar, ſeven or eight Heads of Garlick bruis'd; about two Ounces of white Salt, and half a pound of Hony. Mix them in a pot, in which dip the end of a ſtick, wrapt about with Linnen, and with that, rub the Gums, Lips and Tongue, having firſt waſh'd the bitter foam off his Mouth, with a Sponge dip'd in cold Water.

An Excellent Arman for the loſs of Appetite.

To prevent a total loſs of Appetite, the following Arman is of wonderful efficacy, if the Horſe is not feveriſh. *Take a diſh full of the heart of a white Loaf, crumbled ſmall; moiſten it with Verjuice, or for want of that, with Vinegar; add a ſufficient quantity of Salt, and Hony of Roſes, or of Violets, or,* if neither of theſe can be had, *of common Hony. Then put the thin Paſte into a Pot, and let it boil over a gentle Fire about a quarter of an hour, till the ſuperfluous moiſture be conſumed. Afterward add two Drams of Cinnamon in powder, a dozen and a half of Cloves, a Nutmeg grated, and half a pound of powder Sugar.* Then boil them again over a ſlow Fire, half a quarter of an hour, that the Ingredients may be throughly mixt, and the Spices may incorpo-

incorporate with the Bread; but the fire muſt be very ſlack, leſt the Virtue of the Aromatick ingredients ſhould exhale. Take an Ox's Pizzle, let the great end of it ſoak in Water four or five hours, that it be ſoften'd; after which make the Horſe chew it between his Grinders or Jaw-Teeth, which will ſoften it a little; or you may beat it with a Hammer: Then putting the quantity of a Nut of the Armin upon it, open the Horſe's Mouth, making him put out his Tongue on one ſide, that he may not be able to ſtir it, and gently thruſt in the Pizzle with the Medicine as far as you can: Then let his Tongue go, and after he has champ'd a while, put more of the Armin on the Pizzle, wiping it firſt with Hay, and thruſt it again into his Mouth, repeating it five or ſix times, every three hours. This Medicine nouriſhes, and infallibly retrieves the Appetite. It clears a Horſe's Throat, in caſe any thing ſticks in it; and brings up a great deal of bitter Cholerick Flegm, which makes him loath his Food: Only you muſt take care, that the Pizzle be well ſoften'd, and rather let him ſuck it in, than thruſt it violently forwards.

Chewing Balls to retrieve the Appetite.

Take a Pound of Aſſa fœtida, a Pound of Liver of Antimony, half a Pound of the wood of a Bay-Tree dried, half a Pound of dry Juniper wood, and two Ounces of Pellitory of Spain. Beat all the Ingredients apart, to a coarſe powder; then incorporate them in a Mortar, with a ſufficient quantity of good Grape-Verjuice, well clarified, pouring it in by degrees, and make Balls weighing an Ounce and a half, to be dry'd in the Sun; wrap one of theſe Balls up in a clout, tying a Thread to it; and let the Horſe chew upon it two hours in the Morning, repeating it at Night, and continuing the repetition (upon the Road if you will, by tying them to the Bridle) till he recovers his Appetite. Balls of *Ve-*

nice Treacle may be us'd in like manner with good effect.

Stomachick Pills. *Take a Pound of Liver of Antimony in fine Powder, and with the mucilage of Gum-Tragacanth, make Pills weighing ten Drams, to be dry'd in the Sun,* of which, let the Horſe ſwallow two, with a Pint of Wine, keeping him bridled two hours after, and repeating the ſame Doſe every day for a Month. This being a cooling Medicine, is only proper when the Horſe is not inclined to the Strangles, or does not require hot Medicines.

When the Horſe is ſick, and his Diſeaſe occaſions the loſs of Appetite, you muſt not force him to exceſſive eating. The common method of giving Milk with Yelks of Eggs, and Fleſh-broths or Jellies, is very pernicious in this caſe. Indeed a thin Broth, or the Crum of Bread with Water and a little Salt, is not amiſs. I muſt commend Broth made of a pound of Barley Flower, well purg'd of the Bran, and boil'd in two Pints of Water, to a ſufficient thickneſs; adding to it, a quarter of a Pound of Sugar, and giving it with a Horn, once in 24 hours.

CHAP. III.

Of the Strangles.

THE Strangles are the throwing forth of ſuperfluous humours in Foals, commonly thro' the Noſtrils; and ſometimes by ſwellings under the Throat, or in the Shoulder, Loins or Feet, or any part that happens to be weaker than the reſt. 'Tis a Northern Diſtemper, bearing ſome reſemblance of the Small Pox in Children. The Cure conſiſts in promoting a perfect evacuation of the Humours

For

For which end, if Nature throw it out by ſwellings under the Throat,

A Remedy for the Strangles, when thrown out by Swellings.

Take Oil of Bays, and freſh Butter, of each an equal quantity; of the Ointment of Marſh-mallows, a double quantity. Mingle them cold, and anoint the Kernels under the Throat, and the parts adjacent to the Jaws every day, in order to ripen them; the Throat being always kept warm, and cover'd with a Lamb or Sheep's Skin, laying the woolly ſide next the Throat.

If this does not procure a Suppuration, tho' matter be lodg'd in thoſe parts, you muſt apply to each ſwelling, a red hot Iron of a crooked figure, for fear of injuring the neighbouring Gullet; and when the Eſcar falls off, fill the hole with a Tent, cover'd with the Ointment call'd *Baſilicum*; adding to it *Verdigris, or white Vitriol*, or the Ointment call'd *Ægyptiacum*, in caſe the fleſh about the ſore is overgrown, or bloody, or foamy.

If he voids the Humour ſufficiently by the Noſe, keep him warm, and walk him Morning and Evening. If the evacuation is hinder'd by hard dry matter in his Noſtrils, inject into them *equal parts of Brandy, and Olive Oil, warm*, with a ſmall Syringe. If nature is too weak for throwing out the matter, give him frequently *Cordial Medicines*, ſuch as, *half an Ounce of Venice Treacle, with a Pint of Spaniſh Wine*; or above all, the following Electuary.

The Electuary of Kermes.

Take the red Powder that falls out of the Kermes Berries, when they are ripe; and when it turns to little red Worms, make Troches of it, with juice of Lemons rectified to the Conſumption of a fourth part. To four Ounces of thoſe Troches, add half a Pound of ripe and dry Juniper-berries; Cubebs and Bayberries, of each ſix ounces; roots of Spaniſh Vipers graſs, Maſter-

Maſterwort, Zedoary, Florentin Orris, and Shavings of Hartshorn and Ivory, of each four Ounces and an half; Elecampane Roots, Orange and Citron-Peel dry'd in the ſhade, of each four Ounces; Cinnamon, half an Ounce; Cloves and Nutmegs, of each two Drams. Make a fine powder, ſearce it, and pour it by degrees, to eleven pound of clarified Honey, after it has boil'd to half the thickneſs of a Syrup. Let all ferment two Months in a Pot. Then infuſe a quarter of a pound of this Electuary in a quart of White-Wine over Night, and give it next Morning to the Horſe, keeping him bridled two hours before and after. This is an excellent Medicine, entitled to a preference before the Cordial powders, by vertue of its fermentation; which has the ſame effect here, that it has in Wine, Beer and Bread. It is good for Defluctions, Colds, Palpitation of the Heart, loſs of Appetite, Dulneſs, Leanneſs; and in a word enables nature to expel whatever offends it, much better than Purgatives which weaken her. Its heat is not to be fear'd, for it never enflames the parts of the body. In preparing it, if you cannot have the Troches, you muſt ſupply their place with a pound of the freſheſt and faireſt dry Kermes Berries. But after all, theſe dry Berries are nothing but a Bark, whereas the powder of which the Troches are made, is the true Pith encloſed within 'em; being at firſt a liquid ſubſtance, and upon the ripening of the Fruit, reduc'd naturally to a red powder. You may likewiſe give the following Balls.

Cordial Balls. *Take of Butter, the bigneſs of an Egg; Cinnamon, a Dram; a large Nutmeg grated; and two Drams of Sugar. Mix 'em well, add half a Glaſs of Brandy, ſtirring 'em over a gentle Fire.* Tye the half, or whole of this, in a round Bag, to be faſten'd to the Bit, and chew'd three or four times a day.

To promote the Evacuation of the matter by the Noſe, when it is imperfect: *Take of freſh Butter, the bigneſs of an Egg; melt or fry it till it grows black; then add ſtrong Vinegar, and Oil Olive, of each half a glaſs; and twice as much Pepper as you can lift with the ends of your Fingers.* Mix all, and pour it warm, through a Horn, into the Horſe's Noſe, one half into each Noſtril, covering him immediately with a Cloth, and walking him in your hand half an hour. It will occaſion a beating and heaving in the Flanks for an hour or two; which is not to be dreaded; for after he is put into the Stable, he will certainly void the humour plentifully.

To promote the Evacuation by the Noſe.

CHAP. IV.

Of a Cold and Cough.

TO cure a Cold, accompany'd with a violent Cough. *Take Hony of Roſes, and Juice of Liquorice, of each four Ounces; Fenugreek-ſeed, Grains of Paradiſe, Cummin-ſeed, Cinnamon, Cloves, Ginger, Gentian, Birthwort-roots, Aniſſeed and Coriander-ſeed, of each two Drams.* Reduce all the hard ingredients to powder, and give the whole in a Pint of White Wine, with ſix Ounces of *Carduus Benedictus* Water. This and the like hot Compoſitions, are much better than the cooling Medicines, which ought to be given with a great deal of Caution.

A Cold with a violent Cough.

If the Cold and Cough is joined to a beating in the Flanks, and Palpitation of the Heart. *Take leaves of Mallows, Violets, Herb Mercury, and*

A Cold with a beating in the Flanks.

Pellitory

Pellitory of the Wall, of each three handfuls; Aniſſeeds an Ounce; or a handful of green Fennel, if it be in the Summer. Let them boil half an hour in a large Pot or Kettle in three or four quarts of Water, adding an Ounce and a half, or two Ounces of Liver of Antimony, in fine powder. After the Decoction is half cold, preſs it out, and add to the ſtrain'd Liquor four Ounces of Lenitive Electuary, and a quarter of a Pound of freſh Butter. Mix and make a Glyſter, to be injected every day with an Ounce of *Sal Polychreſt*, after you have walk'd the Horſe. After he has got two Glyſters, give him the following Draught.

Take of the Waters of Vipers-graſs, Carduus Benedictus, Scabious, Roſes and bitter Succory, of each half a Pint. Give the Horſe a Quart of theſe Waters, with an Ounce of *Zedoary, and two Drams of Saffron, both of them in fine powder, or, inſtead of them, an Ounce of the Confection of Hyacinth, without Muſk or Amber; then rinſe the Horn, with the half pint that remains, and make him drink that alſo.* After which let him ſtand four hours with a Water-Bit in his Mouth, and as ſoon as you unbridle him, lay moiſten'd Bran before him to eat, and at Night inject the *Glyſter*, with an Ounce and a half of *Sal Polychreſt.*

To eaſe his Head, by making him void a great quantity of Water and bitter Flegm; *Take Aſſa fœtida and powder of Savin, of each half an Ounce*, tye 'em in a Bag to the Bit; after he has ſtood bridled two Hours, unbridle him for two Hours and then put in the bag again.

An Univerſal Cordial powder.

The following Cordial powder is of general uſe for other infirmities, as well as a Cold and Cough, and ought to be kept ready made by thoſe who keep Horſes. 'Tis this, *Take Saſſafras, Zedoary, Elecampane, Gentian, Carlin, Thiſtle, Angelica, Cubebs*

Cubebs, Spaniſh Vipers-graſs, Maſterwort, and Marſh-mallows, of each half a pound; round and long Birth-wort, Bay-berries, the rinds of Oranges and Citrons, and Savin, of each four Ounces; Cardamoms, Liquorice, Myrrh, Shavings of Hartſhorn and Ivory, Coriander-ſeed, Seed of Caraways, Cummin, Anniſe and Fennel, of each two Ounces; Cinnamon, an Ounce; Cloves, Nutmegs, and Oriental Saffron, of each half an Ounce; all freſh and gather'd in the Spring, or about the time of Advent, before the Froſt. Reduce 'em ſeparately to a coarſe Powder; then ſtrain 'em thro' a Hair Sieve, and mix 'em, the Weight of each Ingredient being adjuſted after the pounding and ſearſing. The Doſe is two Ounces, in a Quart of Wine, keeping the Horſe bridled four Hours before, and two Hours after. The Virtue of this Powder decays by long keeping; to avoid which Inconveniency, I have lately found out a Way of keeping it in its full Strength thirty Years; by reducing it to Balls, which are ſo hard, that they are at once portable and impenetrable by the Air. The Method is as follows.

Take a Buſhel of ripe and black Juniper-berries, gathered in the end of Auguſt, *or in the beginning of* September; *beat 'em, and put 'em into a Kettle, with* 8 *or* 9 *Quarts of Water; let it boil on the Fire, ſtirring it ſometimes till it grows thick; then preſs out the Liquor, and paſs the remaining Subſtance through a Searce, throwing away the Husks and Berries, and mix the ſtrain'd Pulp with the ſtrain'd Liquor; boil it over a clear Fire, ſtirring it till it aſſumes the Thickneſs of Broth; then take it off, and when 'tis half cold mix it in a Mortar, with the Powders preſcrib'd above, adding a Pound of the Grains of Kermes,* (which were left out in the Preſcription of the Powder, becauſe they loſe their Virtue by being kept in Powder.) Make Balls weighing twelve Drams each to be dry'd

Cordial Balls.

dry'd on the Strainer, with its bottom upwards, in the Summer, and reſerv'd in a Sieve or Skellet, to prevent their growing mouldy. The ſame Powders may be made into Balls with Cordial Waters, which will dry more eaſily: But the Mucilage of Juniper-berries does mightily enlarge the Efficacy of the former. When you uſe theſe Balls, you muſt beat 'em to a courſe Powder, and exhibit it in Wine, for if you give 'em whole, perhaps they'll be voided as entire as they are took. The Doſe is two Balls. They are very ſucceſsful in inveterate Coughs; they promote the Expulſion of the Strangles; they excite Urine and inſenſible Tranſpiration; they rouſe the Appetite, and with regard to their general Virtue in curing moſt Diſeaſes, are juſtly ſtiled Treacle Balls.

When this Univerſal Powder or Balls are not to be had, the following Receipt may be us'd with very good Succeſs. *Take Baberries, Gentian, round Birthwort, Myrrh, Florentine Orris, Shavings of Hartshorn, Elacampane, of each four Ounces; Zedoary, Cummin, Anniſeeds and Savin, of each two Ounces; Cinnamon, half an Ounce; Cloves, two Drams; Flowers of Corn-poppies dry'd, two Ounces.* Beat all the Ingredients apart, ſearce 'em through a Hair-ſtrainer, mix 'em thoroughly, and keep 'em hard preſs'd in a Leathern Bag ty'd cloſe. The Doſe is two Ounces infus'd all Night in Wine.

The moſt uſual Cordial Powders are made of *Liquorice*, and the Seeds of Coriander, Anniſe and Fennel, becauſe theſe Ingredients are to be had at low Rates. But they are much inferior to my Univerſal Cordial Powder or Balls.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Of the Glanders.

THE Glanders is a running at the Noſtrils of Phlegmatick, tough, white, red, yelloviſh or greeniſh Humours, with one or more Kernels faſten'd to the Bone, between the two Jaw-bones. In the beginning you may endeavour to reſolve the Kernel, before it comes to an extream Hardneſs; by applying the following Pultis.

Take half a Pound of Linſeed, reduc'd to fine Flower; mix it with a Quart of ſtrong Vinegar, and boil it over a very clear but little Fire, ſtirring it conſtantly. When it begins to grow thick, add ſix Ounces of Oil of Lillies. Mingle them well, and apply it to the Kernel, covering it with a Lambs Skin, as in the Cure of the Strangles. Renew this Pultis every Day.

Some are for cutting out the Kernel, but that is not always a certain Cure, for I have ſeen the Kernel grow again after it has been thrice cut out, eſpecially when it is done in the Wane of the Moon; for at that time, the Evacuation by the Noſtrils naturally leſſens the Kernel, but the next Encreaſe of the Moon fills it again.

In a leſs malignant Sort of Glanders, the following Method may be tried. *Take an Ounce of Brazil Tabacco, cut ſmall, infuſe it ſix Hours in a Quart of good Brandy.* Strain the Liquor gently through a Clout, and inject half a Glaſs of it into his Noſtrils, having firſt taken up his two Neck Veins, two Fingers breadth beneath the uſual bleeding Place; keeping him blidled four Hours before, and two Hours after the Injection, and walking him a quarter of an Hour in your Hand, as ſoon as he has taken it. This Remedy may be repeated every Morning, or every

every ſecond, third, or fourth Morning, in greater or leſſer Doſes, in proportion to the abundance of the Evacuation, the Loſs of Appetite and beating in the Flanks, which require greater Intervals, and a ſmaller Quantity. If this cauſes too great a Commotion in the Horſe's Body, you may infuſe two Ounces of Tobacco in a quart of Oil Olive, letting it ſtand upon hot Aſhes all Night, and in the Morning inject half a glaſsful of the ſtrain'd Liquor, luke-warm, at each Noſtril. In purſuing this, or any other Method, you muſt ſtill remember to promote the Evacuation by the Noſtrils, during the Wane of the Moon, and to ſtrengthen Nature with Cordials, during its Encreaſe; and during the uſe of evacuating Remedies, to keep the Horſe to a moiſtening Diet, particularly to moiſten'd Bran, which is more eaſily digeſted than Oats. Perfumes received at the Noſtrils, are us'd by Farriers, but I never ſaw 'em do good; they make the Horſe too lean and dry, and ſink his Appetite; beſides, injecting with Syringes, makes Perfumes and Feathers uſeleſs. But after all, I have ſeen Horſes hold out for ſix Years with the Glanders, and do all their wonted Service, without the uſe of any Remedies, though indeed the Diſeaſe carried 'em off at laſt.

Another Remedy for the Glanders, is this. *Take the ſecond Bark of the Elder-Tree that grows in watery places cut ſmall, and with it fill a three quart Pot a third part full, adding two quarts of Water, and boiling it to the Conſumption of one half, ſtirring it from time to time. Then add another quart, and conſume that too. Then preſs out the remaining quart, and diſſolve in ſtrain'd Liquor half a Pound of Oil Olive.* Inject half a Pint of this Liquor into his Noſtrils, and give him the reſt to drink, walking him afterwards abroad in his Cloaths for half an hour. It may be repeated after eight days. Sometimes it compaſſes the Cure; however, it never produces dangerous effects.

If the Glanders are curable, the following Remedy will do the Buſineſs; if they're incurable and the Lungs quite corrupted, it will kill the Horſe. 'Tis this, *Take of Oriental Caſtor, groſly beaten, an Ounce; Gentian beaten, and Savin ſliced ſmall, of each an Ounce and a half; boil them in five Quarts of ſtrong Vinegar to Three.* After the Liquor is cold, ſtrain it thro' a Linnen Cloth. Give him a quart of this Liquor, after he has ſtood bridled three Hours, covering him up in the Stable, and not hindring him to lie down; and two Hours after, walking him half an Hour. When he recovers his Appetite, which will happen in two or three Days, give him another quart in the like manner; and after that, another, when his Appetite returns. This Remedy will occaſion a great Commotion in his Body; but if he does not cough up part of his Lungs, and runs only at the Noſtrils an unbloody, and not greeniſh Matter, you need not deſpair.

Emetick Wine is very proper in this, and all other Diſeaſes of Horſes. It promotes the Operation of Purgatives, and excites Urine, when Nature ſtands in need of ſuch Evacuations; it clears the Windpipe and Lungs, and is of ſingular Uſe in Glyſters. 'Tis prepar'd by infuſing all Night, *five or ſix Pieces of the fineſt Glaſs of Antimony beaten ſmall, in a quart or five half pints of White Wine or Claret*; or letting the Wine ſtand 24 Hours in a *Cup of the Regulus of Antimony*; or by putting *two Ounces of the Liver of Antimony* in Powder, in a three quart Bottleful of White Wine or Claret; of which you may take out five half pints for a Doſe, after it has ſtood 24 Hours, ſtill pouring in freſh Wine for what you take out; for the ſame quantity of the Antimonial Powder, will ſerve perpetually. The beſt Antimonial Preparation, is the Angelical Powder, infus'd to an ounce in 3 Q^ts of Wine. Thoſe who grudge the charge of Wine, may infuſe in Beer; which will *Emetick Wine.*

produce the ſame effects, and is of peculiar uſe in Glyſters. This Emetick Wine or Beer, is both given at the Mouth, and injected at the Noſtrils with good ſucceſs.

Theſe are the beſt Remedies yet known; but a true Glanders is for the moſt part incurable.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Eyes.

THE Diſeaſes of the Eyes proceed either from a defluxion of ſharp biting humours, enflaming the Eye; or from ſome external hurt. In the former caſe the Eyes are watry, hot, red and ſwollen and the defluxion advances gradually: In the latter the Malady comes quickly to a height, and on the outſide of the Eye the Skin is peel'd off.

If the Diſtemper proceeds from a Rheum, or Defluxion, you muſt conſider whether the Rheum is immediately deriv'd from the Eye, or from another diſaffected part. In the latter caſe the redreſſing of the part will ſet the Eye free: In the former 'tis proper to cool his Blood with an Ounce of Sal Prunel, mix'd every day with his Bran; and when it leſſens his Appetite, to ſhift it with Liver of Antimony, till he comes to his Stomach again. If the Eye be ſwollen, hot, clos'd up, and red or blood-ſhotten, let the following Medicine be immediately applied.

A Remedy for Rheums in the Eyes.

Take common Bole Armenick in powder, mix it with Vinegar, and the Whites of two Eggs, till it be reduced to a kind of Paſte; to be applied Morning and Evening, about the Eye, for half a Foot round, bathing the Eye five or ſix times a day, with a little fine Sponge ſoak'd in Brandy. Or,

Take a new laid Egg boil'd hard; and having taken off the ſhell, cut it through the middle, and t

out the Yolk, putting into its place, a piece of white Vitriol, about the bigneſs of a Nut; then joyn the two halfs of the Egg, and wrapping it in a piece of clean and fine Linnen, infuſe it in half a glaſs of Roſe Water, for the ſpace of ſix Hours. Then throwing away the ſoak'd Egg, pour eight or ten drops of the Water into the Horſe's Eye with a Feather, Morning and Evening.

For a preſent Remedy; *Take the White of a new laid Egg, an equal Quantity of Roſe Water, the bigneſs of a ſmall Nut of white Vitriol in fine powder.* Beat 'em all with a ſtick, and put ſome of it into the Eye. This allays the heat, and repulſes the Rheum. This and all ſuch Waters muſt be renew'd after ſeven or eight days, leſt they turn ſharp or ſowre. And withal remember, that changing and ſhifting of Remedies, retards the Cure very much.

An Eye Water.

If the Diſtemper does not yield to theſe Remedies, make uſe of the following Eye-Water. *Take four handfuls of true ground* Ivy (not the common creeping Ivy, which laſts all Winter) *beat it in a marble Mortar, with the Whites of ſix hard Eggs; then add half a pint of very clear White Wine, a quarter of a pint of Roſe Water, an ounce and a half of Sugar Candy, and as much white Vitriol; beat 'em well together with a Peſtle, ſtrewing in 'em an ounce of white Salt;* then cover the Mortar, and place it in a Cellar; after it has ſtood there five or ſix hours, pour the whole Compoſition into a Hippocras Bag of clean white Serge, and ſet a Veſſel under it to receive the Water that drops through, which muſt be preſerv'd in a glaſs Bottle; and every Morning and Evening pour ſome of it into the Horſe's Eye.

A cheap Eye-Water.

For a cheap eaſy Medicine, take what follows. *Take a piece of Blew Cyprus Copperas, infuſe it in Plantain Water, or that of Fennel, or of Eye-bright,*

or of Rue, or of Celendine, or of Roſes, or of Chervil, or for want of theſe in common Water; pour ſome of the bluiſh infuſion into the Eye, as being a Balſamick adſtringent, of ſingular virtue againſt redneſs and inflammations of the Eye; applying at the ſame time the following Ointment.

An Ointment for Rheums in the Eyes.

Take of the Ointment called Album Rhaſis, one pound; Salt of Lead extracted in preparing the Oil, or if that cannot be had, the common Salt of Lead, in fine powder half an Ounce. Incorporate 'em very well together, and anoint the parts about the Eyes, half a Foot round, Morning and Evening, for a conſiderable time.

For Pains and Inflammations of the Eyes, there's nothing better than a charge made of rotten Apples, or of freſh Apples roaſted under the Aſhes, the ſeeds being taken out, and beaten in a Marble Mortar, and ſprinkled with Roſe Water; applying it to the Eye with ſoft Flax. For the ſame end you may apply by way of Pultis, the cruſt of a white Loaf hot from the Oven, and ſoak'd in Cow's Milk or Brandy; as alſo Plantane and Celendine, wrap'd up in a Clout about the Horſe's Poll, leaving holes for the two Ears, and the ſound Eye. In all Preparations of Remedies for the Eyes, you muſt take care to avoid fat and oily Ingredients, becauſe they ſtick to the part, and by cauſing a continual motion of the Eyelid, enflame the heat.

Some Horſes have naturally tender weeping Eyes which void a ſharp Corroſive humour; which are eaſily cur'd by bathing the Eyes, and the adjacent Parts, Morning and Evening, with Brandy.

In the Diſeaſes of the Eyes, occaſioned by external hurts, the ſame cooling and aſtringent Medicines are proper. But that which may ſerve inſtead of all other, is the ſolution of Lapis Mirabilis, or the wonderful Stone; the virtue of which, is anſwer-

able to its Title. The Compoſition of the Stone is this.

Lapis Mirabilis.

Take of white Vitriol, two pounds; Roch Allum, three pounds; fine Bole Armenick, half a pound; Litharge of Gold and Silver, two Ounces. Reduce 'em all to powder, and put 'em in a new glaz'd Earthen Pot, with three quarts of Water. Boil them very gently over a ſmall Fire, without ſmoak, ſet equally round the Pot, till the Water is quite waſted, and the matter at the bottom perfectly dry. Then let the matter cool, which will grow harder by long keeping. Now to make an infuſion of this Stone, you muſt put half an ounce of it, to four ounces of Water in a glaſs Bottle; it will diſſolve in a quarter of an hour, and make the Water as white as Milk, when you ſhake the Bottle. With this liquor, which will keep good twenty Days, you muſt waſh the ſore Eye, Morning and Evening, ſhaking the Bottle every time. This may ſerve inſtead of all other Medicines for Rheums, Blows, Moon-Eyes, *&c.* and to my mind is much ſafer by way of ſolution or infuſion, than by way of powder blown into the Eye.

To remove a Film on the Eye.

If after the abatement of the heat, and ſtopping of the Rheum, there remains a white Film upon the Eye, you muſt remove it, by lifting up the Eyelids, after the Eye has been waſh'd with Wine, and ſtroaking it gently with your Thumb, cover'd with Wheat-Flower. This method of ſtroaking with the Thumb, is better than blowing powders into the Eyes, with a leaden Pipe, becauſe the Horſe cannot be ſo much aware of the former, as of the latter. Common Salt, or Salt of Lead, beaten fine, and put into the Eye, are likewiſe proper to conſume a Film. Or you may put a little Salt into your Mouth in the Morning faſting, and after 'tis

diſſolv'd, waſh the Horſe's Eye with your Spittle. But above all, there is nothing ſo effectual as *Sal-Armoniack*, beaten and put into the Eye, and repeated every day, till the Film is taken off.

CHAP. VII.

Of a Hæmorrhagy, or bleeding.

A Hæmorrhagy, is a Flux of Blood at the Noſe or Mouth, occaſion'd by unuſual Fatigues in hot Weather, which mingle the Blood with a Salt or ſpirituous juice, that makes the Blood ferment, and boil out of its Veſſels; or by over-feeding, which occaſions a Redundancy of Blood; or by violent exerciſe, which makes it boil up, and open the Mouths of the Veins. That a ſaline Spiritous Liquor will raiſe a ſtrong Fermentation in the Blood, is plain from the violent Ebullition that happens upon mixing the Spirit of Wine, Hartſhorn, or Soot, with Blood drawn from the Veins.

To ſtop a bleeding at Noſe or Mouth, leſt it kill or weaken the Horſe; you muſt immediately let him Blood in the Flanks or Plate Veins of the Thighs, or rather in the Neck, if you take Blood enough in the other parts. Then beat a large quantity of Knot-graſs (or, if you cannot find that, of Nettles) to a Maſh, and fill the Horſe's Noſtrils with it; binding alſo ſome of it to his Temples, and to his Reins, where the Saddle ends, and even to his Stones, if he is not gelt. In Summer let the Horſe ſtand two hours in Water, up to his Flanks; or if you want a conveniency for that, cover his Head and Back with a Cloth, ſeven or eight times doubled, and dip'd in Vinegar and Water. Keep him in the Stable with his Head upright, not ſuffering him

him to lie down; and from time to time, throw cold Water on his Sheath and Stones; next day bleed him again, and inject the following cooling Glyſter.

A Glyſter for bleeding.

Take Mallows and Marſhmallows, of each a handful; Plantane, two handfuls; Succory, Lettuce, and Purſlane, of each a handful. Boil 'em in five pints of Water, with an ounce and a half of Sal Polychreſt in powder. To the ſtrain'd liquor, add a quarter of a pound of the Ointment Populeum (not adulterated with Verdigreaſe) or of the true Unguentum Roſatum. Make a Glyſter to be injected, after you have rak'd the Horſe.

If the bleeding ſtill continues, notwithſtanding theſe Precautions, take Plantane Leaves, beaten and mix'd with Male Frankincenſe, Aloes or Myrrh, and put 'em into his Noſtrils, holding his Noſe up, as if you were going to give him a Drench; then cover him with the Cloth dip'd in Oxycrate, and throw cold Water frequently on his Sheath and Stones.

If the Blood runs with a violent ſtream, take *the powder of a Stone-Aſs's Dung*, dry'd in a ſhade; and blow it plentifully into the Horſe's Noſe, thro' a glaſs Pipe or Lead. This is an excellent Snuff, both for Men and Horſe, who are apt to bleed at Noſe; and ſmells only of dry Herbs. However for the ſake of nice Riders, that will not keep about them what ſmells of Aſs-turd, I ſhall ſubjoin the following Remedy.

Take a Hare kill'd in March, flay her, and without larding prepare her for the Spit, but do not put her upon it; then dry her in an Oven, ſo that the whole fleſh may be reduc'd to powder, which, if blown plentifully into the Horſe's Noſe, will effectually ſtanch the Blood.

In any time of the Year, you may uſe in the like Manner the Powder of the Rinds of Pomgranats, *Roman* Vitriol and Allum, in equal Quantities; and it will keep long without loſing its Virtue.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Vives.

THE Vives is a Swelling and Inflammation of the Glands and Kernels of the Neck, which ſtraitens the Windpipe, and occaſions ſuch a Difficulty of Breathing and Uneaſineſs, that the Horſe frequently lies down, and ſtarts up again, and tumbles about ſtrangely. The Cauſes are, drinking or being expoſed to Cold after a violent Heat, in which Caſe the Humors being melted down, fall too plentifully upon the Kernels; eating too large a quantity of Barley, Oats, Wheat or Rye; and ſeveral other Cauſes, owing to the Indiſcretion of the Rider or Groom.

A Remedy for the Vives.

Unleſs the Vives be ſo large, that the Horſe is in preſent Danger of being ſtifled, I would not adviſe you to open it. The better Way is to rot them, by taking hold of the Kernel with a pair of Pincers or Pliers, and beating the ſwelling gently, with the Handle of a ſhoeing Hammer, or bruiſing the Tumours with your Hand, till they are ſufficiently ſoften'd: After which they will certainly diſappear. But this Method you muſt not commence, till the ſwelling is ripe, which is known by the eaſy Separation of the Hair from the Skin, when one plucks it with his Hand. The Place where the inflam'd Kernel lies, is trac'd by bending the Horſe's Ear downwards towards his Throat, near the Cheek-bone; and in that Place where it touches the Skin, is the

Inflamma-

Inflammation ſeated, and there you will find the Kernel that muſt be taken up with the Pincers.

Having rotted, or in caſe of neceſſity, open'd the Vives, bleed the Horſe under the Tongue, and after that in the Flanks; waſh his Mouth with Salt and Vinegar; blow ſome of the Vinegar into his Ears, rubbing and ſqueezing them hard to make it penetrate, for it powerfully aſſuages the Pain that is communicated to the Jaws, by reaſon of their Nearneſs to the Seat of the Vives. Then make the Horſe drink a quart of Wine, with two Handfuls of Hempſeed beaten, two Nutmegs grated and the Yolks of ſix Eggs, walking him gently half an Hour after. About an Hour after the giving of that Draught, which is a good and ſure Remedy, inject the following Glyſter.

A Glyſter for the Vives.

Boil five pints of Beer (or of Wine and Water) with an Ounce and a half of Sal Polychreſt in fine Powder; remove it from the Fire; add two Ounces of Oil of Bay, and inject it Blood-warm. Or,

Take the five opening Roots, of each one handful; beat 'em groſly, and boil 'em in three quarts of Water for a quarter of an Hour; add the ſoftening Herbs, Mallows, Violets, Herb Mercury, and Pellitory of the Wall, of each one handful; boil them again as before; then ſtrain out the Liquor, and add a pint of Emetick Wine; Hony of the Herb Mercury, half a pound; freſh Butter four Ounces; Oil of Rue, two Ounces; make a Glyſter to be injected after you have raked the Horſe.

A ſure Remedy for the Vives.

You will rarely meet with any Inſtance of this Diſtemper, that will not yield to the following Medicine. *Take an Ounce of Venice Treacle, in a quart of red Wine*; or, if the Diſeaſe be violent, *in a pint of Brandy:* Let him drink it. At the ſame time prepare a Glyſter of the ſoftening Herbs, with an

an ounce and a half of Liver of Antimony in powder; adding to the ſtrained Liquor, *two ounces of Venice Treacle, with a quarter of a pound of freſh Butter.*

CHAP. IX.

Of the Cholick, Fret or Gripes.

A Cholick from over-feeding.

THE Cholick proceeds either from over-feeding, or from Wind; or from a glaſſy Flegm in the Inteſtines; or from Worms; or from a ſtoppage of Urine. It always attends the Vives.

That from over-feeding, is cur'd by Evacuating with Carminative Glyſters (not with Vomits, for they never take effect in Horſes) and ſtrengthening Nature with Cordials; of which Orvietan, and the Eſſence of Vipers are the moſt celebrated. The Orvietan is thus prepar'd.

The Orvietan. *Take of Sage, Rue, Roſemary and Goats Rue, of each a handful; Carduus Benedictus, Dittany of Crete, Roots of Maſterwort, white Bohemian Angelica, Biſtort, round and long Birthwort, white Dittany, Galangal, Gentian Coſtmary, Aromatick Reed, and Parſley-ſeed, of each an Ounce; Bayberries and Juniperberries, of each half an Ounce; Cinnamon, Cloves, and Nutmegs, of each three Drams; Seal'd Earth, prepar'd with Vinegar, and old Venice Treacle, of each an Ounce; Powder of Vipers, four Ounces; Wallnuts cleans'd and dry'd, Crum of white Bread dry'd, of each eight Ounces; clarified Hony, ſeven pounds. Chop the Wallnuts, beat 'em with the Bread, then paſs 'em thro' a ſearce, turn'd upſide down, adding the Powders and other Ingredients, and at laſt the Treacle and Hony.* This is the true preparation of the

the Orvietan; which is an excellent Medicine in moſt Diſeaſes for Horſes, eſpecially in the Cholick, being given in Wine, and the Horſe being afterwards walk'd and well cover'd. All the Virtues of this excellent Medicine, are fully enjoy'd by the Eſſence of Vipers, which is thus prepar'd.

The Eſſence of Vipers.

Take of purify'd Nitre, pure Salt of Earth (to be had of thoſe who make Salt Peter) of each a pound. Dry them, reduce them to powder, and mix 'em with four times as much Potter's Earth ſearced. Let the whole ſtand three or four days in an Earthen Pan, in a Cellar, till the Salts are diſſolv'd. Then reduce all to a ſort of Paſte, to be form'd into little Balls, of the bigneſs of ſmall Nuts, adding ſome drops of Water, if the Maſs be too dry. After the Balls are dry, put 'em into an Earthen Retort, diſtilling them as Aquafortis is uſually diſtill'd, and you will find in the Recipient a Menſtruum, fit to diſſolve Vipers. Put this Liquor in a Matraſs, with a moderate heat, and throw to it a Live Viper; which will quickly expire, and afterwards melt away like Anchovys in Butter. Then pour off the clear Liquor, after it has ſettled; and reſerve it for the Eſſence of Vipers, to be mix'd with three parts of diſtilled cordial Waters.

The Wind Cholick.

The moſt peculiar ſign of the Wind-Cholick is a ſwelling of the Horſe's Body, as if it were ready to burſt, accompanied by the tumbling and toſſing, common to the other kinds of Cholicks. 'Tis frequently caus'd by Tickling. 'Tis cur'd by bleeding in the Flanks, and under the Tongue; and walking him frequently, ſometimes at a Trot, and ſometimes at a Foot-pace. If it continues, inject the following Glyſter.

Take two ounces of the Droſs of Liver of Antimony, in fine powder; boil 'em a little, but very briſkly, in five pints

pints of Beer. With three or four Ounces of good Oil of Bay, make a Glyſter to be injected lukewarm, and repeated every two hours. But the moſt effectual expeller of Wind, is three or four ounces of the following Oil in the ordinary Glyſters.

A Carminative Oil for Glyſters.

Take Rue, Calamint, wild Marjoram, and Penny-Royal, all dry'd in the ſhade, of each one handful; ſeeds of Cumin, Carrots and Fennel, and Bayberries, of each an Ounce; Oil Olive, two pounds; White-Wine a pint. Pound the Herbs, bruiſe the Seeds; and put all together in an Earthen glaz'd Pot, covering it with another Pot ſomewhat leſs, and luted with Clay or Paſte. Boil them over a ſlow Fire about ſix hours. After it is half cool'd, ſtrain out the Oil, and add four Ounces of the Pulp of Coloquintida. Then put the Oil again into the ſame Pot, covering and luting it as before: And boil it with a gentle heat, ſix or eight hours; after which, let it boil briſkly half an hour, and after it is half cool'd uncover the Pot, and preſs out the Oil, which is a cheap durable Medicine, and more effectual than any other Ingredient in Carminative Glyſters.

The Common Fret or Cholick.

A Cholick taking riſe from a ſharp glaſſy Flegm, is at once more occult, and more fatal than any of the preceeding kinds. In this Diſeaſe, which is often uſher'd in by a Looſeneſs of a day's ſtanding, the Horſe ſweats in the Flanks and Ears; he endeavours in vain to Dung; what Excrements he voids are few, and moſtly Phlegm, that cannot be ſeparated from the Guts without great Pain; after ſuch an Evacuation he has a moment of eaſe, and ſeems to be perfectly cur'd; but his Torment returns in an inſtant, attended by a loſs of appetite, a frequent lying down, and ſtarting up, and looking upon his Flanks.

For Cure: *Take two quarts of Milk, or of Tripe-broth; Oil Olive, and freſh Butter, of each four or five Ounces; the yolks of ſix Eggs, and two or three Ounces of Sugar.* Make a Glyſter to be repeated every three hours. *Purgatives* given at the Mouth, increaſe the pain by moving the humours and twitching the Guts: So that Glyſters, frequently injected are infinitely preferable; to which after the pain is ſomewhat aſſwaged, we muſt add two ounces of Diaphoretick Antimony, in order to melt the Humours, and remove the Cauſes. The following mixture is an eaſy and familiar Remedy of good uſe, to allay the pain, attenuate the thick humours, and qualify their heat and ſharpneſs.

Take Oil of Roſes, and common Oil, of each a pound; fine Sugar, eight ounces; Roſe-Water a pint. Mix, and pour a glaſsful down his Throat with a Horn, every three hours.

When you perceive that the Horſe is freed of his pain, feed him with Bran ſeven or eight Days; after which, to extirpate the cauſe, purge him with the following Oil, which is preferable to all other Purgatives, by reaſon that it moves a Horſe's Belly, without thoſe fatal diſorders that commonly enſue upon the taking of other Purgatives; tho' indeed I could wiſh, ſome powerful Diaphoretick were ſubſtituted in the place of all Purgatives, ſince they prove ſo pernicious to Horſes. The Oil I ſpeak of, is this.

An Excellent purging Oil.

Take of Oil Olive, three pounds; Claret Wine, a pint; pulp of Coloquintida, five Ounces; Flower of Linſeed, an Ounce and a half; three Lilly Roots, cut into round ſlices; Miſſletoe of the Apple-tree beaten, an Ounce; Chamomil Flowers, a handful. Put all the Ingredients into a Pot, cover'd exactly with another ſomewhat leſs, and lute the Junctures of the Veſſels with Clay, temper'd with a little Hair or Wool. After the Clay is dried, boil the whole Compoſition gently

gently eight or ten hours. When 'tis half cold, ſtrain it through a Linnen Cloth, and give to the Horſe one half of it lukewarm, in a pint of Tripe or Sheeps-Head Broth, not fat; adding a little more afterwards, if you find him hard to be wrought upon. This Oil will keep ten Years, without the leaſt Alteration. 'Tis a good Purge for ſuch Horſes as continue lean after hard labour. Tho' the Coloquintida in it, may ſeem improper in a Cholick, yet its ſharpneſs being temper'd by the Oil, renders it a proper Medicine.

The Worm Cholick.

Sometimes violent and unſufferable Cholick pains, are occaſion'd by broad, thick and ſhort Worms, or Truncheons, like little Beans, of a red colour; which gnaw and pierce the Guts, and ſometimes eat holes thro' the Maw, and ſo kill the Horſe. The ſigns of ſuch a Cholick, are red Worms voided along with the excrements (for the long white Worms, ſeldom gripe a Horſe) the Horſes biting his Flanks or Belly in the extremity of pain, or tearing off his Skin; and then turning his Head and looking upon his Belly; his ſweating all over the body, his frequent throwing himſelf down and ſtarting up again, with ſeveral unuſual Poſtures.

For the Cure; *Take half an Ounce of Mercurius dulcis* ('tis worth 15 *d.* an Ounce, and does not prick the Tongue as the Sublimate does) *an Ounce and an half of old Venice Treacle.* Make up the whole into three Pills, to be given in a Pint of Claret. An hour after, in order to entice the Worms to the ſtreight Gut, inject a ſweet Glyſter of Milk or Tripe Broth, with the Yolks of Eggs, and half a pound of Sugar.

The following Powder has a ſingular virtue of killing Worms, and at the ſame time correcting Indigeſtion, diſpelling Wind, and qualifying a glaſſy Phlegm. So that 'tis juſtly reckon'd a Specifick for all

all the kinds of Cholicks above mention'd; and ought to be kept ready made by Travellers, ſince Cholicks are ſo frequent upon a Journey, and 'tis hard to adjuſt the particular ſpecies of 'em. The Specifick is this.

A Specifick for all kinds of Cholicks.

Take Roots of Maſter-wort, Leaves and Roots of Radiſhes, greater Centory, and Tanſy, all dry'd in the Summer-Sun, or in the moderate heat of an Oven in Winter, of each a pound; Germander, Ground-pine, Roots of Angelica and Elecampane, all dry'd in the ſhade, of each half a pound; Sea-moſs, and Liver Aloes, of each four Ounces; Galangal, Nutmeg, and Sal Prunella, of each two Ounces. Pound 'em all apart, then mix and keep 'em in a Leathern Bag, or glaſs Bottle cloſe ſtopp'd. The Doſe is from an Ounce to two Ounces and a half, according to the ſize of the Horſe, to be mix'd with three or four Drams of Old Treacle, or an Ounce of Treacle Diateſſaron, or Mithridate, and given in a pint of White-Wine, walking the Horſe afterwards in his Cloaths. If you ſuſpect Worms, an Ounce and an half of the Specifick powder, mix'd with half an Ounce of Mercurius dulcis, will infallibly kill them. Thoſe who are prejudiced againſt Mercury, may mix an ounce of the Specifick powder with an ounce of Aloes, three drams of Coloquintida, as much of Agarick, and half an Ounce of Turbith; and give the whole in a quart of White-Wine, with a quarter of a pint of the Gall of an Ox, covering him well after it, and walking him for a quarter of an hour. This will at once purge and kill the Worms: But it is only proper for great Eaters, and that about two or three days after the fit of the Cholick is over. Thoſe who have not the Specifick powder ready made, may put in its place an Ounce or two of the following powder, which is cheap and eaſily prepar'd, *viz.*

A cheap ſpecifick for the Cholick.

Take of common Parſley Roots dry'd in the ſhade, two pounds; grains of Paradiſe and Rinds of Oranges, dry'd and reduc'd to powder, of each a pound; Pigeons Dung, half a pound. Make a coarſe powder, to be kept in a Leathern Bag.

A choice Remedy for the Cholick.

Thoſe who are curious, may prepare the following dulcify'd Spirit; which indeed, is an excellent, and withal a cheap and durable Remedy. *Take of Spirit of Nitre about half a pound,* pour it by drops upon an equal quantity of the beſt Spirit of Wine, to prevent too violent an Ebullition. After the Agitation ceaſes, put the whole liquor in a Cucurbit, with its Head and Receiver, and Diſtill with a gentle Sand heat; Cohobating or repeating the Diſtillation of the Liquor that comes over four ſeveral times; by which means the Spirit will unite, and become ſweet. Give a dram and a half, or two drams of this Spirit in White-Wine; and an ounce and a half, or two ounces in an ordinary Glyſter.

If theſe Medicines prove ſucceſleſs, give the Horſe two ſtinking Pills in a pint of Wine, and an hour after a Glyſter, repeating the ſame Doſe a ſecond or third time, if the pain ſtill continues. This is only proper, after the Trial of other Medicines.

The Cholick from a ſuppreſſion of Urine.

Sometimes a Horſe is ſeiz'd with a Cholick, in which he cannot ſtale. The cauſes are either obſtructions in the Neck of the Bladder, or an Inflammation of the Bladder, or (though very rarely) Sand and Gravel. Without timely aſſiſtance, this Cholick proves mortal. You may know it by theſe Signs; he tumbles and riſes often, he offers in vain to ſtale; oftentimes his body ſwells, and ſometimes he ſweats about the Flanks. The Cure muſt commence

commence with a ſoftening Glyſter, mix'd with Turpentine, diſſolv'd with the Yolks of Eggs, and the Carminative Oil preſcribed for Wind-Cholicks. Then give what follows:

A Remedy to provoke Urine.

Take about four Ounces of dry'd Pigeons dung in powder; boil it in a quart of White-Wine; and after two or three waums, ſtrain out the liquor, and give it blood-warm to the Horſe: Then walk him for half an hour, and he will ſtale if it be poſſible.

If a thick Flegm ſtops the Urinary Paſſages, the following Remedy will certainly give relief, either by Sweat or Urine. *Take an Ounce of Saſſafras Wood with the Bark, cut it ſmall, and infuſe it in a quart of White-Wine in a large glaſs Bottle well ſtop'd, ſo that two thirds of the Bottle may remain empty.* Let it ſtand on hot Aſhes, about ſix hours; then ſtrain out the Wine, and give it to the Horſe in a Horn.

CHAP. X.

Of an Immoderate Flux of Urine; and of a Staling, or Piſſing of Blood.

A Flux of Urine.

SOmetimes a Horſe is ſeiz'd with an exceſſive Flux of crude and undigeſted Urine, reſembling Water, which gradually drains his ſtrength. The Cauſe is a heat and ſharpneſs in the Blood, or an Inflammation in the Kidneys, which, like cupping-glaſſes, ſuck in the unconcocted Serum from the Veins. The remote Cauſes, are the immoderate and irregular working of young Horſes, cold Rains in the beginning of Winter, eating of Oats imported by Sea, which being ſpungy, imbibe the ſaline Spirits of the Sea.

As for the Cure; the Horſe muſt be fed with Bran inſtead of Oats. Give him a cooling Glyſter, next day let him Blood, the day after inject another Glyſter, and next day after that bleed him again, not exceeding the quantity of two pounds of Blood at a time. This done, boil two quarts of Water, and put it into a pail-full of common Water, with a large handful of Oriental Bole, beaten to powder. Mix all well, and let the Horſe drink it lukewarm for his ordinary drink, Morning and Evening, giving him full liberty to drink, and quench his Thirſt, which in this Diſeaſe is exceſſive; for the more he drinks, he will be the ſooner cur'd.

A Staling of Blood.

Sometimes a Horſe, through immoderate exerciſe in the Heat of Summer, piſſes pure Blood. If a Vein or Veſſel be broken, it is mortal. If it proceeds only from the Heat of the Kidneys, 'tis eaſily cur'd; for in that caſe all the Urine is not Blood, for a ſmall quantity of Blood will give a red Tincture to a large quantity of Urine. For the Cure; bleed the Horſe, and give him every Morning, for ſix or ſeven days, three pints of the infuſion of Crocus Metallorum in White Wine; (which will both cleanſe the Bladder and heal the part affected) keeping him bridled four hours, before and after taking it. If the Diſeaſe is accompanied with a heat and beating of the Flanks, give him a cooling Glyſter in the Evening; bleed him a ſecond time; and diſſolve two Ounces of Sal Polychreſt in the three pints of Emetic Wine preſcribed to be given every Morning. If the Sal Polychreſt ſpoils his eating, or if the Emetic Wine does not compaſs the Cure; give the following Medicine, the Virtues of which I have experienced.

Take two Ounces of the beſt Venice Treacle, or for want of that, of Diateſſaron; common Honey, and fine Sugar, of each four Ounces. Incorporate 'em in a Mortar; then add Anniſeed, Coriander ſeed and Liquorice, of each two Ounces in fine powder. Mix 'em well, and give it diſſolv'd in a quart of Claret; keeping him bridled three hours, before and after; and let him Blood next day. The next day after that, inject the following Glyſter. *Boil five pints of Whey made of Cow's Milk, with two Ounces of the Scoriæ of Liver of Antimony, in fine powder:* As ſoon as it begins to riſe in great bubbles, remove it from the Fire; and adding four ounces of Oil Olive, inject it lukewarm. If the Diſeaſe continues, as I believe it will not, you muſt repeat the whole courſe.

A Remedy againſt piſſing of Blood.

CHAP. XI.

Of the Stavers and Giddineſs.

IN the Stavers or Staggers, a Horſe loſes the uſe of his Senſes; he reels and ſtaggers, as if he were Drunk; beats his Head againſt the Walls and Manger with extream Violence, and lies down and riſes with greater fury than in the Cholick. The Cauſes of this Diſtemper, are hard riding or labour in hot Weather, noiſome ſmells in the Stable, long Races, with frequent wheeling about, and quick turns, exceſſive eating, and above all a redundancy of hot and ſharp Humors in the Stomach.

The Stavers.

For the Cure: Bleed him in the Flanks and Plate-veins of the Thighs; then give him a Glyſter of two quarts of Emetick Wine, lukewarm, with a

quarter of a pound of the Ointment Populeum; after which, ſuffer him to repoſe a while. About an hour or two after that Glyſter is voided, inject the following. *Boil two ounces of the Scoriæ of Liver of Antimony, in fine powder, in five pints of Beer.* After five or ſix waums, remove it from the Fire, and adding a quarter of a pound of Unguentum Roſatum, inject it lukewarm. Repeat this Glyſter frequently; and rub his Legs ſtrongly with a wiſp of Straw moiſten'd in warm Water, to make a Revulſion; feed him with Bran or white Bread; and walk him from time to time, in a temperate place.

If the Diſeaſe ſtill continues, notwithſtanding the uſe of theſe Medicines: Give him an Ounce of Venice Treacle, or Orvietan, diſſolv'd in a quart of ſome Cordial Waters: And immediately after inject this Glyſter lukewarm. *Take of Sal Polychreſt and Venice Treacle, of each two ounces:* Diſſolve 'em in two quarts of a Decoction of the ſoftening Herbs, with a quarter of a pound of Oil of Rue. Make a Glyſter.

A Giddineſs. Sometimes a Horſe is ſeiz'd with ſuch a Giddineſs, that he falls down when he is taken out of the Stable, but is briſk, and eats heartily, when he remains in the Stable; by which ſign 'tis diſtinguiſh'd from the Staver. It owes its riſe to a redundancy of Blood, occaſion'd by the Horſe's being kept long in the Stable without Airing. 'Tis eaſily cur'd by a Glyſter and Blooding; repeated after two days. Moderate Exerciſe, and leſs Food, will prevent it.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Of Strains or Wrenches in the Shoulders or Hips.

HOrſes are ſo frequently liable to Strains in the Shoulders or Hips, by overſtraining the Ligaments that faſten the Bones; that every Farrier is ſufficiently acquainted with them, and the ways of diſcovering where the lameneſs is. I ſhall therefore only preſent you with two or three Receipts, that are noted for their Virtue, in all Shoulder-Splaits, Sprains, Pricks, Wrenches, *&c.*

An Ointment for Strains in the Shoulders.

Take new Wax, Roſin, Pitch, and common Turpentine, of each a pound; Oil Olive two pounds; Greaſe of Capons, Badgers, Horſes, and Mules, and the marrow of a Stag, of each five Ounces; Oils of Turpentine, Caſtor, Worms, Chamomil, St. John's-wort, Linſeed, and of Foxes, of each four Ounces; Oil of Gabian, or, if that cannot be had, *Oil of Bever, two Ounces.* Put the Oil Olive in a Baſon over a clear Fire, with Wax, Roſin, and Pitch, beaten together; ſtir 'em over the Flame till they are diſſolv'd; then add the Fatts and Stag's marrow, and afterwards the Turpentine, incorporating all over a very gentle Fire. In the laſt place pour in the Oils, ſtirring the whole mixture half a quarter of an hour; after which remove it from the Fire, and continue to ſtir, till it be cold. Heat the part affected by rubbing it with a wiſp of Straw, or with your Hand; then chafe it with the *Ointment*, as hot as the Horſe can bear it; holding a Fireſhovel red hot near the part, to make the *Ointment* penetrate. Repeat the ſame application once every two days.

The following Red Honey Charge, is ſo generally uſeful, not only for Strains or Wrenches, but for ripening Swellings, relieving decay'd and ſwell'd Legs, benefiting tir'd and jaded Horſes, *&c.* that I do not know any Remedy ſo Univerſal. The Compoſition is as follows.

The Red Honey Charge. *Take of Sheep's Sewet melted, a pound and a half; the Greaſe of a Capon, Hog, or Horſe, a pound; the Oil drawn from the Bones of an Ox or Sheep, or, if neither of theſe can be had, Linſeed Oil, or Oil Olive, half a pound; Claret of a thick Body, and deep Colour, two quarts; Black Pitch and Burgundy Pitch, of each a pound; Oil of Bay, four ounces; common Turpentine, a pound; Cinnabar in powder, four ounces; common Honey, a pound and a half; powder of Cumminſeed, four ounces; good Brandy, half a pint; fine Oriental Bole in powder, three pounds; a ſufficient quantity of Wheat-Flower, to thicken the whole Mixture.* Put into a Kettle the Sewet, Greaſe, the Oil of Sheep's Bones, and the Claret. Boil 'em over a gentle Fire at firſt, increaſing the Heat by Degrees, and ſtirring them from time to time, till part of the Wine be conſum'd, that is about two Hours; then put in both the Sorts of Pitch, and after they are diſſolv'd, the Oil of Bay. Remove the Veſſel from the Fire, and put in the Turpentine and Cinnabar, mixing them with the reſt about a quarter of an Hour. After the Compoſition is half cold, add the Honey, and afterwards the Cummin-ſeed, continuing to ſtir as before: Then add the Bole in powder. When the whole is almoſt cold, add the Brandy, ſtirring till it be perfectly mix'd. Then thicken it with Wheat-Flower, almoſt to the Conſiſtence of an Ointment, and continue ſtirring till it be cold. If this Charge be well prepar'd, it will keep a Year or two. During the Heat of Summer you may apply it cold; but in cold Weather you muſt

muſt melt it. When you deſign to ripen a Swelling, add to it Turpentine and Pitch, and apply it as hot as the Horſe can endure it; but upon a diſcuſſive Indication, that is not proper to be done. When you have occaſion to put it into a Horſe's Foot, you muſt apply it boiling hot.

The following Ointment is an eaſy and approv'd Remedy, for wither'd Shoulders, or for Strains or Wrenches in the Shoulders or Hips. *Take a pint of Spirit of Wine: Put it into a Cucurbit, or ſtrong Glaſs-Viol, ſo that two thirds of it remain empty; add half a pound of Caſtile Soap ſliced ſmall, and ſtopping the Glaſs very cloſe, ſet it on hot Aſhes, till the Soap be wholly melted. Let it be quite cold before you unſtop the Cucurbit or Bottle.* Thus you have an Ointment that will keep very long; for tho' it gathers a Cruſt on the Top, it remains very good underneath. 'Tis to be applied to the part affected every Day, for ſeven or eight Days; the part being firſt heated by rubbing with a Wiſp of Straw.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Broken, Stiff, Tir'd, Decay'd, Bruis'd, or Swell'd Legs.

Broken Legs.

THough the Cure of a broken Leg or Thigh-bone in a Horſe, is very difficult, by reaſon of the inconvenient Situation of the Parts; yet it is not impoſſible: For I have ſeen ſuch Fractures cur'd, both in a Mule and in a Horſe, without any other Inconveniency, but that of having the Shape of the Leg ſpoil'd by the Callus that reunites the Bones, and halting a little. Theſe Cures were perform'd after the common Method of Splents and Bandages, as in Men; the

Wound being dreſs'd every Day, and the Mule and Horſe turn'd looſe into a Meadow to ſhift for themſelves: For a Horſe can reſt on three Legs, without uſing the broken One: Tho' I think it very probable, that the Cure will ſucceed better, if the Horſe were hung in a Stable. Tho' the Poſſibility of curing Fractures is queſtioned by ignorant Farriers; yet the abovementioned Inſtances, and the Authority of *Philippo Sacco Datagliacozzo*, and *Signior Carlo Ruini*, who aſſert it, are ſufficient Vouchers for it.

Stiff, Decay'd Legs.

The Signs of Stiff, Decay'd, or Bruiſed Legs, are deſcrib'd in the ſecond Part. For Cure; the Red Hony Charge is very proper to ſtrengthen the Legs; as alſo what follows.

A Remedy to ſtrengthen the Legs.

Take of Spirit of Wine, a quart; Oil of Nuts, half a pint; Butter, half a pound. Mix them in a glaz'd Earthen Pot, cover'd with a leſſer Pot, exactly fitted to it. Lute the Junctures carefully with Clay, mix'd with Horſe's Dung or Hair; and after the Cement is dried, ſet the Pot on a very gentle Fire, and keep the Ingredients boiling very ſoftly, for eight or ten Hours. Then take off the Pot, and ſet it to cool. With this Compoſition you are to chafe the Maſter Sinew, having firſt rubb'd it with your Hand, till it grows hot. Repeat the Compoſition every Day. Or,

Oil of Earth-Worms, and its compound Ointment.

Take a ſufficient quantity of Worms, waſh 'em, and leave 'em in clean Water ſix Hours, that they may caſt forth their Filth; then put 'em in an Earthen Pot, with ſo much Oil Olive, as may riſe the breadth of two Fingers above them, the Pot remaining half empty. Cover the Pot, and lute the Junctures with Clay, mixt with Hair or Saddle Stuffings; then bury it in warm Horſe Dung;

and

and after it has ſtood there three Days and three Nights, take it out; and as ſoon as 'tis cold, uncover it, taking care to avoid the noiſome Smell, and ſtrain out the Oil; with which you are to anoint the Horſe's Legs every Day, for the Space of twelve Days, eſpecially the Sinews, having firſt rubb'd them into a Heat, with your Hand; and after the Inunction, foment each Leg with a quarter of a pint of Brandy, to make the Oil ſink in. If the Oil does not operate ſufficiently, add to *a pound of it, the Oils of Caſtor, Foxes, Chamomil and Lillies, of each an Ounce and an half; Ointment of Marſhmallows and Populeum, of each two Ounces.* Mix the whole Compoſition over the Fire, and with Bees-Wax, make an Ointment; of which, the Bigneſs of a Walnut for each Leg, is to be us'd every Day in the ſame Manner as the Oil. The Oil does not make the Hair fall; but the Ointment does, though it will grow again without leaving any Mark.

A Remedy to ſtrengthen the Sinews of the Legs.

To comfort and ſtrengthen the Sinews; Take a Gooſe moderately fat; make her ready for the Spit; ſtuff her Belly with the *Leaves of Mallows, Sage, Roſemary, Thyme, Hyſſop, Lavender, Mugwort*, and other convenient Herbs, with a large quantity of green Juniper-berries beaten. Then ſew up the Skin, and ſet her into an Oven to bake in a glaz'd earthen Pan, that you may not loſe the Fat or Greaſe: With which you muſt anoint the Legs of a Tir'd Horſe, every Evening (for ſeven or eight Days,) and next Morning chafe them with Brandy above the Greaſe.

Above all, in Summer, let the Tir'd Horſe ſtand two whole Hours every Day up to the Hams in a Stream of Water; and in the Month of *May*, make him lie abroad in the Dew, or elſe lead him out to a Mea-

a Meadow every Morning, and bathe and rub his Legs with the Dew gather'd with a Sponge.

To ſtrengthen the Sinews, and reſolve hard Knots; you may apply Spirit of Wine with a little Oil of Wax.

To Cure ſwell'd Gourdy Legs.

If a Swelling upon the Legs be occaſion'd by a ſlight Accident; you may take it away, by applying once every Day, cold Lees of Wine, mixt with a fourth Part of Vinegar. If that does not anſwer, *Take a Gallon of Lees of red Wine; boil them ſoftly over a clear Fire, ſtirring them perpetually till they begin to thicken; then add fine Wheat Flower and Honey, of each two Pounds; Black Soap, a Pound.* Boil and ſtir, till the whole is reduc'd to the Conſiſtence of a Charge; to be applied every Day.

A Remedy for a hard Swelling.

For a hard Tumour upon the Legs, of long ſtanding: *Take of the Horſe's own Urine (or, if that cannot be had, of Cow's Urine, which you may eaſily have, by rouſing them up in a Morning) a pint; flower of Brimſtone, half an ounce; Allum, a Dram.* Boil it away to half a pint; with which you muſt chafe the Swelling hard every Morning and Evening, and wrap about the part an old Rag, dipp'd in the ſame.

A Bath to reſolve hard Tumors.

To reſolve a Swelling in the Thigh or Leg: *Take, in the Spring, or in the time of* Advent, *before* Chriſtmas, *ten pounds of green Mallow Roots* (at other times, *take ſix pounds of the dry Roots.*) Beat them to a Maſh, and boil them gently with ten quarts of Water in a Kettle for two Hours; then pour in as much hot Water, as was boil'd away, adding three handfuls of Sage-leaves, and continue to boil an hour and an half, or two hours longer. Then take off the Kettle, and add two pounds of Hony, and one pound of black Soap, incorporating all together.

Let it cool till you can e'en endure to thruſt the end of your Finger into it; then add a quart of ſtrong Brandy. Foment the ſwelling with this Bath, every day, and afterwards chafe it with a handful of the Dregs of it; then walk the Horſe half an hour. If by the heat and hardneſs of the part you perceive that it tends to Suppuration; omit the Bath, and apply Baſilicum.

In like manner you may reſolve ſwellings with half a pint of Brandy, a pound of black Soap, and as much Honey, mix'd cold, and rub'd upon the part every day.

To cure a hard ſwelling occaſion'd by a Blow.

For a hard ſwelling occaſion'd by a blow: Beat the whites of ſix Eggs, with a large piece of Allum, for half a quarter of an hour, till they be reduc'd to a thick froth. Then add a glaſs of true Spirit of Wine (Brandy being improper in this caſe.) Shake the Froth and Spirit till they incorporate; then mix the whole with half a pound of Honey, and Charge the Horſe's Legs three or four times, ſcouring off the Charge with Water, in which Diſhes have been waſh'd. If there be occaſion, repeat the Charge; for 'tis an experienced Remedy, both for the fore and hinder Legs.

To prevent the ſwelling of the Legs after a Journey.

To prevent the ſwelling of the Legs that often enſues upon a long galloping, or a great Journey; as ſoon as the Horſe is put into the Stable, Charge the parts with Cow's Dung, mix'd with Vinegar; which will alſo cure, as well as prevent.

A Remolade for a Blow.

The following ſimple Charge is of very good uſe, not only for Blows and Stroaks with another Horſe's Foot, and Swellings of the fore and hinder Legs; but for all ſorts of ſwellings, bruiſes, and hurts in any part of the Body. 'Tis this. *Mix a pound of Wheat-flower with White-Wine, to the Conſiſtence*

Conſiſtence of Gruel, and boil it over a gentle fire, ſtirring without intermiſſion, till the whole be united. Then melt a pound of Burgundy Pitch in a Skillet; adding a pound and a half of Honey, and a pound of common Turpentine, to be mix'd with the Gruel moderately hot. After you have remov'd the Veſſel from the Fire, add two pounds of Oriental Bole in powder; and make a Charge to be apply'd hot, and repeated till the ſwelling be aſſuag'd.

An eaſy Remedy for Blows.

To avoid the inconveniency of being deſtitute of a Remedy, for want of ſome of the preſcrib'd Ingredients; 'twill not be improper to ſubjoin another eaſy Receipt for ſwellings in the Legs, occaſion'd by Blows, *viz. Take ſtrong Brandy, chafe the part with it hard, and then charge the whole Leg with common Honey.* Renew the application once every day, for ſix or ſeven days. Then waſh your Horſe in a River or Pond, twice every day.

Another eaſy and effectual Remedy, is, *Half a pint of good Vinegar, mix'd with half a pound of Tallow, and an ounce of the flowers of Brimſtone:* Or, a mixture of common Bole, Honey, and Water; for ſmall Tumours.

For old ſwellings, following an ill-cur'd Sinew-Sprain.

Sometimes upon an ill-cur'd Sinew-ſprain, tho' the Lameneſs ceaſes, yet the undiſſolv'd humours, gather into very hard ſwellings: In which caſe; *Take of Linſeed-flower, and Bean-flower, of each a large pint; of the ſtrongeſt Brandy, a pint and a half.* Boil them over a ſmall Fire to the conſiſtence of Gruel, ſtirring without intermiſſion. Then add a pound of Honey. Boil and ſtir, till the whole be incorporated. After which remove it from the Fire, and mix it with half a pound of Mule's, or Horſe's Greaſe. Charge the part with this Compoſition, having firſt ſhav'd it, and chafed it very hard with cold Spirit of Wine. After the

Charging, cover it with Flax, wrapping about it a piece of Linnen Cloth to be ſew'd on, not ty'd; for ſewing is a more equal and painleſs Bandage. After two days, Take off the dreſſing, and bath the part with Spirit of Wine. After which, repeat the Application every day; and in five or ſix times dreſſing, the ſwelling may be aſſuag'd with little Charge or Trouble.

For hard ſwellings incurable by the common Remedies.

If the ſwelling is ſo inveterate and hard, that 'twill not yield to any application (as it often happens;) you muſt give the Fire along the ſwelling, beginning at the Top, and drawing the lines or ſtrokes downwards, at the diſtance of half a Finger's breadth from one another; or croſs ways, if you pleaſe; taking care not to pierce the Skin, and above all, to draw a line on each ſide of the Leg, between the Sinew and the Bone, deſcending as far as the Paſtern. If the ſtroaks be only made of a Cherry-colour, there will be no occaſion for Plaiſters; but only to waſh the ſear'd parts with Brandy and Honey, till the Scab falls off, and to bath the Sores with Spirit of Wine. If there be any overgrowing Fleſh, conſume it with Allum; or, if that fail, with powder of Copperas. If you give the Fire croſs-ways, round the hinder Leg, let the lines meet on the midſt of the back Sinew; but 'tis needleſs to draw the ſtrokes over the Bone in the fore part of the Leg. The Fire muſt be given in the wane of the Moon; and the Horſe muſt reſt 27 days, *i. e.* nine for the Augmentation, nine for the ſettled ſtate, and nine for the abatement enſuing upon the operation.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIV.

Of Malenders, Selenders, Splents, Wind-Galls, Farcy-Knots, and other Swellings.

Malenders. THE Malenders are certain chops on the bending of the Knee, which void a red ſharp biting Water. They are painful, and make the Horſe halt, or at leaſt go ſtiff at his firſt going out of the Stable. They are eaſily known by the ſtaring briſtled Hairs about them, and are accompanied with a ſort of Scab.

Selenders. The Selenders are chops of the ſame nature, on the bending of the Hoof. They are more unfrequent than Malenders; and conſequently more dangerous, as denoting a greater quantity of humours in the Hoof.

For Cure of both: 'Tis improper to dry up the Sore. We muſt content our ſelves with qualifying the ſharpneſs of the acid humour; by ſcouring off the Corruption ſticking on the Hair or Skin, with Black-Soap (which is an Alkali) and rubbing the Malenders with it; and then waſhing the part with Urine, or good Lye, or Oil of Nuts ſhaken with Water. But the ſureſt method of Cure, is to anoint the Sores once a day, with a mixture of equal parts of Linſeed Oil and Brandy, ſhak'd till it grows white. Which is an excellent Medicine, and does at once both dry and allay the ſharpneſs. If the Selenders cauſe a hard ſwelling, that hinders the motion of the Hoof, you may give the Fire with good ſucceſs; for the ſituation of the part is inconvenient for the application of Remedies.

A Splent

A Splent is a callous, hard, and insenſible ſwelling on the Shank-bone; which ſpoils the ſhape of the Leg, when it grows big. The ordinary cauſe of it, is a hurt on the Shank-bone, that injures its ſurrounding Skin or Perioſteum; ſo that the humours repairing thither, gather into a ſwelling. Sometimes 'tis occaſion'd by over-riding, or over-working, when the Horſe is young, and his Bones tender; for the ſtraining of the Bone makes it ſubject to Defluxions of humours, which ſlipping in between the Bone and its Membrane, riſe gradually into a hard lump, that draws its nouriſhment from the Bone, which I have ſeen full of holes like a Sieve in that part. Now, to protect the weak Bone, nature makes a Callus; which we call a Splent. If the Splent be increaſed by Travelling, and aſcend to the Knee; it makes the Horſe halt, and is more difficult to cure. In young Horſes a Splent may be eaſily cur'd; but in old ones, it can hardly be remov'd. If it be only the natural miſhaping of the Bone; 'tis not to be cur'd, as being a blemiſh rather than a Diſeaſe. *Splents.*

For the cure of Splents, violent Cauſticks, which often ſcale the Bone, and dry up the Sinew, are very pernicious; for tho' they take away the Splent, they weaken the Leg extreamly. The better way is to ſhave off the Hair, and beat or rub the ſwelling with the handle of a Shoeing Hammer, till it be ſoften'd; then chafe the Splent with the juice that ſweats out of both ends of three or four Hazel-ſticks, burnt while the full Sap is in them, applying it as hot as you can without burning: After which, rub or bruiſe the ſwelling with one of the ſticks; and continue to apply the hot juice, and rub till it grows ſoft; then apply a Linnen Cloth, five or ſix times doubled, and dipt in the hot Hazel-juice, ſuffering *A Remedy for the Splent.*

it

it to remain four and twenty hours. And at the end of nine days, the Splent will be diſſolv'd, provided you keep your Horſe conſtantly in the Stable; and the Hair will grow again. If the Splent is only leſſen'd, and not quite remov'd; repeat the operation a Month after.

The following Ointment is an effectual Remedy for ſoften'd Splents, Wind-galls, and (even the greateſt) Farcy-Knots.

Ointment of Beetles for Wind Galls and Cords.

In *May*, and ſometimes in *April*, between ten a Clock in the Morning and two in the Afternoon, you may find in Till'd or Corn-fields, in low and ſhady places, an Oily Beetle, or Black May-Worm, call'd in Latin, *Maii Avicula*, or *Scarabæus Unctuoſus*; which has the reſemblance of a Head, at the end of its true Head, and a ſort of Wings faſten'd to its Body, like two Targets, and covering all the fore-part of the Shoulders, tho' it does not fly. Its Back is Scaly, and its Tail very fat, and as it were weltred. It has ſix feet, and creeps very ſlowly. There are ſome of them very long, thick, and fat; and the ſmalleſt are about an Inch long. 'Tis cold to the Touch, and if placed upon one's hand, commonly voids a very ſtinking Oil. Take 300 of theſe Beetles; ſtamp 'em with a pound of Oil of Bay. After it has ſtood three Months, melt it, and ſtrain it thro' a linnen Cloth; throwing away the groſs ſubſtance, and preſerving the reſt, as a Sovereign Ointment for the uſes above-mention'd. It produces the Effect of a Retoire, by drawing out the Corruption, and raiſing Bliſters full of Red Water, which are ſucceeded by Scabs that dry of themſelves. After which, the Hair grows again. 'Tis applied cold, the Hair being firſt ſhav'd off very cloſe; and a hot bar of Iron being held near the part, while it is applied. It totally diſſipates a Wind-gall, in the ſpace of nine days; only the ſwelling

ſwelling it occaſions, muſt be aſſuag'd by applying Brandy. Swellings ſucceeding to old Sinew-Sprains, if they are not very hard, will be reſolv'd by one or two applications of this Ointment; but the Operation of the firſt muſt be over, before you attempt a ſecond. This Ointment performs its cure, in the ſpace of nine days.

A leſs Cauſtick Ointment for Splents, &c.

For Splents ſoften'd after the uſual manner, and prick'd; the following Ointment, apply'd to the thickneſs of a *French* Penny, with a red hot Fire-Shovel held over it to make it ſink in, will in twelve or fifteen days perform the Cure, without making the Hair fall off, or hurting the Sinew. About the end of April, and in May, you'll find exactly about the foot of the Stalk of the bulbous Crowfoot, having a root not unlike a Piſtol-bullet, with which ſome Meadows are almoſt wholly cover'd; you'll find there a little black longiſh Inſect, not bigger than a ſmall Bean, without Wings, but furniſh'd with Legs, and ſo hard that you can hardly bruiſe it between your Fingers: Mix three or four hundred of theſe with old Hog's greaſe in a Pot; then cover the Pot very cloſe, till they are quite dead, and ſtamp 'em with the greaſe to an Ointment, which will be more effectual the longer 'tis kept. This Ointment draws forth a red Water, which after nine days, turns to a Scurf or Scab, which will afterwards fall off.

A Pultis to be applied, before a Retoire.

Before you apply either of theſe two Ointments, or any Retoires to a hard ſwelling, you muſt take care to ſoften it, by applying the following Pultis. *Take Roots of Lillies, and Marſhmallows, of each two Ounces; leaves of Mallows and Violets, of each two handfuls; Dill, Wild-Marjoram, and Wild-Penny-Royal,* or *Corn-mint, of each a handful.* Boil the Roots about an hour in a ſufficient quantity

of Water, mixt with about three parts of Oil. Then add the Herbs, and, after they are well boil'd, ſtamp all together to a Maſh, and apply it warm to the part you intend to ſoften, the Hair being ſhav'd off.

Of Wind-galls. Wind-Galls are ſoft, yielding and painleſs Tumours, much about the bigneſs of a ſmall Nut, caus'd by thin and ſerous humours; and ſeated on either ſide of the Fetlock joint, on the Skin, between the Sinew and the Bone. For the Cure: The abovementioned Ointment of Beetles is preferable to all other Remedies for whereas other Remedies only put away the ſwelling for a time, this will wholly remove it, by extirpating the Cauſe. 'Tis true this Ointment occaſions a large ſwelling, eſpecially if applied in too large a quantity; but that Symptom, together with the heat and pain that attends it, is eaſily remov'd by waſhing the part with warm Wine, mix'd with a little Butter.

A general Plaiſter for all Swellings. For all cold Swellings (whether in Horſes or Men) the following Plaiſter is of general uſe; eſpecially for Water Farcies, and ſwellings on the Paſtern-joint, which lies at a great diſtance from the Center of natural heat. *Take green Wall-nuts ſo ſmall, that when they are cut, they are equally ſo.* Beat 'em to a Maſh in a marble Mortar, and put 'em thro' a Sieve with the bottom turn'd up, beating that which remains, till the whole paſſes through the Sieve. *Put two pound of this Pulp into a glaz'd Earthen Pot, with a pound of Salt well dry'd, and a pound and a half of common Turpentine.* Set the mixture in a Cellar, to ferment fifteen days; then evaporate the moiſture over a gentle Fire, ſtirring all the while, till it be reduced to the conſiſtence of a Plaiſter, which cannot be done without ſome difficulty; and preſerve it for uſe, in a Pot cl cover'd.

A Remedy for Swell'd and Gourded Paſtern joints.

When the Paſtern-joint ſwells after Travelling, chafe it every Morning and Evening, with a mixture of two parts of Brandy, and one of Oil of Nuts, well ſhaken together. If the ſwelling be large, apply the red Honey Charge, with a convenient Bath. If it ſtill continues, apply the Remedy compos'd of Whites of Eggs, Spirit of Wine, and Hony; preſcrib'd for Blows, Chap. XIII. If the ſwelling be hard, apply a Pultis of Rue, boil'd in thick Wine. If the joints are gourded for want of Exerciſe; bathe 'em very hard with a Lye made of two parts of Aſhes of Vine-twigs, and one third of Aſhes of Tartar. Sometimes there ariſes a ſwelling on the Bone of the Paſtern-joint, a little towards one ſide, about half the bigneſs of a Pigeon's Egg; which grows bigger, if neglected, but is not very hard, nor does it make the Horſe halt. In this caſe 'tis proper to apply a Reſolving Plaiſter of Gum Ammoniack, diſſolv'd in Vinegar, and boil'd to a due conſiſtency.

CHAP. XV.

Of an Attaint or Over-reach.

AN Attaint proceeds, either from a Blow with another Horſe's Foot, that takes off the piece above the Coronet, or from an Over-reach, in froſty weather, when a Horſe being rough-ſhod, or having ſhoes with long Caulks, ſtrikes his hinder Feet againſt his Fore-Leg. 'Tis known by the Wound, the efflux of Blood, and the halting of the Horſe.

For the Cure: Waſh away the Filth with Vinegar and Salt, and cut off what pieces of looſe Fleſh there are. Then apply, and tye faſt to the part, a

hot Egg, boiled hard, cut through the middle, and ſprinkled with Pepper. If the Horſe be not cur'd, repeat the Application the next day. In an Over-reach, in froſty weather, you muſt immediately waſh the Wound with warm Vinegar, then fill it with Pepper, and lay over it a Reſtringent Charge, of Chimney-ſoot, Vinegar, and Whites of Eggs; or (which is better) of Lime temper'd with Water; repeating the ſame the next day. For an Over-reach by the Caulk of Shoes, fill the Hole with Gun-powder, beaten and temper'd with Spittle, then ſet Fire to it; and repeat the ſame the next day, taking care to keep the Foot and Wound from moiſture and waſhing the Sore from time to time with Brandy. If theſe do not ſucceed, fill the Hole with Cotton, dip'd in Emplaſtrum Divinum, melted with Oil of Roſes in a Spoon; laying a Plaſter of the ſame over it, and dreſſing it after the manner every day.

If notwithſtanding the uſe of theſe Remedies, the Horſe continues to halt, and the Hole is deep, with the part above the Attaint ſwollen, the Hoof ſhrunk and the Foot contracted beneath; you muſt try with your Probe, if the Hole reaches to the Tendon; and if it does you muſt give the Fire. If a neglected Attaint comes to reach the Hoof, after one or two Applications of the Honey Charge, you muſt proceed to give the Fire, and dreſs it as a Quitter-bone. 'Tis to be obſerv'd that the Sore muſt be always cover'd with Remedies, for 'twill never heal, ſo long as the Horſe licks it. If the bottom of the Hoof be foul, though it does not reach the Griſtle, you muſt waſh it often with warm Wine, and fill the Hole with *Schmit*'s Ointment.

CHA

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Scratches.

TO cure the Scratches in Horſes, which reſemble the Corns in Mens Feet, you muſt rub the ſwollen Leg daily with the Duke's Ointment; and afterwards bring forth the Corruption, or rotten Bit of Fleſh, with the following Remedy.

Take freſh Butter, and Oil Olive, of each four Ounces; beat 'em with half a pint of common Water, and thicken 'em with two Ounces of Linſeed Flower. Then boil, as if you were going to make Gruel, adding (a little before you take the Skellet from the Fire) *two Ounces of Pigeon's Dung in powder*; and charge the Sore warm, having firſt clip'd off the Hair with Sciſſars. If that does not anſwer Expectation,

Take Leaves of Coltsfoot, long Sorrel and Mallows, of each a handful; bake 'em under the Embers; then beat and incorporate 'em with ſalt Butter. And apply it hot. If this likewiſe fail,

Take four Lilly Roots, bak'd under the Aſhes; beat 'em up with three Ounces of Hen's Greaſe; two Ounces of Linſeed Oil; the Yolks of two hard Eggs. Incorporate all together in a Mortar, applying ſome of it to the Scratches with Flax, and laying a cover over it.

If the Sinew of the Leg be ſwollen, keep it always charg'd; and as ſoon as the corrupt Fleſh is come forth, waſh the ſwollen Leg with warm Wine and Butter, and fill the Hole with a Tent of fine Flax, moiſten'd with Baſilicum, to ripen the reſt of the rotten Fleſh; or with *Ægyptiacum*, if the Fleſh be foul and frothy.

When the Fleſh appears fair and clean, apply the Juice of greater Celandine, binding on Charcoal-duſt, or ſears'd Aſhes, or burnt Copperas, which dries moſt powerfully. Some uſe only to waſh the Sore with Brandy or Urine, and ſtrew it with burnt Oyſter-ſhells, or old Boat-Ropes, dried and beaten to powder.

If the Wound, occaſion'd by the coming forth of the rotten Fleſh, be very large, cleanſe it with the Mundificative of Smallage; and then dry it with the Ointment made of Honey, Verdigreaſe, Spirit of Wine, and Flower.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the Ring-bone.

THE Ring-bone is a hard callous Swelling, growing on one of the Tendons, between the Coronet and Paſtern-joint; and ſticking very faſt to the Paſtern. When you handle it, the Horſe does not complain much. When 'tis near the Coronet, it preſſing Bulk intercepting the Nouriſhment, makes the Foot ſhrink, and the Hoof wither; and at laſt makes the Horſe lame; ſo that its deſcending low upon the Coronet, is a Sign of Danger. Though 'tis ſometimes Hereditary; the uſual Cauſe is a Strain occaſion'd by Curvetting, bounding Turns, and Races. Sometimes indeed backing a young Horſe, before his Joints are well knit, will give Riſe to it. If it be not taken care of betimes, it cauſes incurable Lameneſs. Sometimes it appears at firſt no bigger than a Bean; but afterwards riſes to half the Bigneſs of a ſmall Apple, appearing on both Sides the Paſtern, with a little riſing between them.

The

The Method of Cure is as follows: Take out the Sole; clip off the Hair very close; and apply to the Ring-bone, Oil of Bay with Flax, a Cover and Bandage. Two Days after, separate the Scurfs rais'd by the Oil, and renew the Application with the same Flax. When you take out the Sole, you must cleave the Frush; and when the dressing is fitted to the Sole with Splents, you must thrust Rowlers into the Cleft to keep it open, and one Bandage will serve both for the Ring-bone and Frush.

When Ring-bones are increas'd to any considerable Bigness, the most usual and certain Remedy is Fire; for which end you must first take out the Sole; and six Days after, when you remove the second Dressing, make Incisions with your Fleam, beginning above, and reaching downwards, about a Finger's breadth distance from each other; cutting the Skin to the Callus, that causes the Ring-bone, thro' the whole extent of the Swelling, but without hurting the Coronet. Since these Incisions are usually attended with a great Flux of Blood, apply hot Turpentine with Flax and a Bandage, letting it remain untouch'd 48 Hours; after which remove the Dressing, and with a red hot, but not blazing Knife, burn the whole Callus, very dexterously, without pressing too hard upon the part; taking care to penetrate the whole Tumour thro' the Incision, for if any part of its Substance be left, your Labour is lost. After that, apply a Mixture of Turpentine, Tar and Honey, or an Ointment made of Hog's Lard and Verdigrease, laying Flax over it, and wrapping it about with a Cloth, till the Scabs fall off. Then dress the Sores with *Schmit*'s Ointment, or *Ægyptiacum*, or the Ointment *Apostolorum*, till the matter gives over running; after which, the Farriers usually wash the Sores with the second Water, and then apply drying Powders. In the mean time the Sores ought always to be kept cover'd, both to prevent the Growth of

proud Fleſh, and to hinder the Horſe from reaching it with his Teeth. Beſides, the Bandage muſt not be tied too hard, for fear of cauſing an exceſſive Tumour. The beſt Way is to renew the dreſſing every Day, or at leaſt every two Days.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Vices of the Feet and Hoofs; particularly of Surbated Feet: And of Pricks made with Stubs or Nails in Shoeing, or in the Streets.

THE Hoofs of ſome Horſes are ſo hard and brittle, that they are apt to break near the Holes made by the Nails of their Shoes; in which caſe the beſt way, is, to ſhoe ſuch Horſes after the full Moon, and never during the Increaſe; and then to anoint their Feet every Day with the following Ointment; taking care that the Foot be dry, and clean'd from Duſt and Dirt.

An Ointment for the Hoof.

Take freſh Butter, and Sheep's Suet, melted, and freed from its Membranes, of each a pound; white Wax cut into ſmall Pieces, and common Turpentine, of each four Ounces; Oil Olive, ſix Ounces. Put 'em all together into a Baſon, and melt 'em. Then add a pint of the Juice of Plantane; and as ſoon as they begin to boil, remove the Veſſel from the Fire. Then ſet it on again; and continue to remove and ſet it on again, after the ſame manner, for the Space of eight or ten Hours, till the Juice be wholly conſum'd without boiling. Then remove the Veſſel from the Fire, and as ſoon as the Matter begins to thicken add an Ounce of powder of *Olibanum*, ſtirring without Intermiſſion, till it be quite cold. This Ointment will make the Hoof grow without heating it

it; for the Juice of Plantane tempers the other Ingredients and ſince it does not boil, has time to communicate its cooling virtue before it is conſum'd. 'Tis chiefly proper when the Hoof is as hard as Glaſs, ſo that an Ointment glides along without piercing it.

In Winter you may make an effectual and cheap Remedy of Honey, Tar and Tallow, mix'd cold, in equal quantities.

Conneſtable's Ointment.

To make the Hoof grow, and render it ſoft and tough, the following Ointment is an experienc'd Remedy. *Take new Wax, Goat's Greaſe,* (or for want of that, *freſh Sheep's Suet*) *and the Fat of Bacon, cut into ſmall pieces, and ſteep'd in Water* 24 *Hours, till it grow freſh, the Water being chang'd every three or four Hours; of each a pound; melt them together, and then add a large handful of the ſecond Bark of Elder; and,* if it be in the Spring, *two handfuls of Elderbuds, when they are about the bigneſs of your Thumb.* Boil 'em over a gentle Fire for the ſpace of a quarter of an hour, ſtirring them from time to time. Then ſqueeze the matter through a coarſe Cloth, and put the ſtraining in the ſame Baſon or Pot, with *two Ounces of Oil Olive, four Ounces of Turpentine, and the like quantity of Honey:* After which remove the Veſſel from the Fire, and ſtir the Ointment till it be quite cold; then anoint the Hoof once a Day, for the breadth of an Inch round the Hair; or if the Hoof be much worn, ſpread the Ointment on Flax, and wrap it carefully about the Hoof, renewing the Application twice a Week, but ſtill continuing the ſame Flax.

Of Surbated Feet.

A Horſe's Foot is ſaid to be Surbated, when the Sole is worn, bruis'd or ſpoil'd, by travelling without Shoes, or in hot ſandy Ground, or with a Shoe that hurts the Sole. When want of Shoes occaſions it, you muſt cleanſe the Sole with your Buttreſs; and having tack'd on the Shoe with your Nails, pour boil-

boiling Pitch or Tar into the Foot, charging it after it is cold, with a pound of old Hog's Lard, melted in a Skellet, to which is added, a pint of Vinegar, and a ſufficient quantity of Bran to thicken the Compoſition.

If the Shoe bear harder upon one part of the Foot, than the reſt, pare the whole Foot a little, eſpecially the bruis'd part; and where it appears red and bruis'd, thruſt your Buttreſs deeper in, paring the Sole almoſt to the Quick. Then apply the Ointment for Pricks, and tack on the Shoe with four Nails; renewing the Application till the Horſe ceaſes to halt. Then ſtop his Foot with a Remolade, binding it on carefully.

If the Foot be heated, by riding in hot and ſandy Ground, take off the Shoe, pick the Foot well; then ſtop it with melted Tar, and anoint it with the Ointment for the Hoof.

In general, nothing is more conducive to ſurbated Feet, than Tar melted into the Foot; or, Vinegar boil'd with Soot, to the Thickneſs of Broth, and put into the Foot boiling hot, with Hurds over it, and Splents to keep it in. If all theſe Remedies prove ineffectual, you muſt at laſt take out the Sole, for which end, the uſe of the ſame Remedies is very ſerviceable, becauſe they moiſten and ſoften the Foot, and ſo prepare the Sole for being taken out with leſs Difficulty and Pain.

Of Pricks in the Foot.

A Prick with a Nail in Shoeing, or in the Street, does ſometimes feſter, and put the Horſe in danger of loſing his Foot. To prevent ſuch Conſequences; when a Farrier perceives in ſhoeing a Horſe, that he complains, or ſhrinks at every Blow upon the Nail, it muſt be immediately pull'd out; for tho' Blood follows, he may be ridden immediately without halting. If he halts preſently after he is ſhod, 'tis a Sign that ſome Nail either preſſes the Vein, or touches

touches him in the quick; which is found out, by lifting up the ſound Foot, and knocking gently upon the top of the Clenches of the lame Foot, with a ſhoeing Hammer; for he will ſhrink when you touch that Nail that pricks him. The uſual place of pricking is at the heel in the fore-foot, and at the toe in the hinder Foot. You muſt pull off the ſhoe, preſſing round the Foot with the Pincers, and when you come to the place that is prick'd, he will ſhrink extreamly. When you draw out the Nails, obſerve if they are bow'd, for then they have preſs'd the Vein; or if there are any Flakes, for theſe may either preſs the Vein or the Fleſh; and if they remain in the Foot, the cure will never be perform'd; or if the hole iſſues Blood or Matter, for then you muſt ſearch it with your Renette, reaching to the end of it, where the Nail was rivetted on the Hoof; and if you find it does not reach to the quick, try with a Nail pointed to that ſide of the hole where the Vein lies, whether the Horſe complains. If he does, proceed to the Cure. If upon ſearching the hole, he does not at all complain, he is not prick'd in that place. Some narrow heel'd Horſes, eſpecially *Engliſh* Horſes, are always lame when they are new ſhod, the Nails being rivetted too high; but reſt will cure that lameneſs. Oftentimes in fleſhy Feet, a bow'd Nail will make a Horſe halt, tho' he be not prick'd; and in time will cauſe a Sore that muſt be cur'd as a prick.

For a Cure: If the place be impoſtumated, after the evacuation of the Matter, inject boiling Oil with a little Sugar, and ſtop the whole with Cotton; then tack on the ſhoe with three or four Nails, and ſtop the Foot every day with a Remolade; applying at the ſame time a Reſtringent Charge, about the foot, and keeping it from moiſture.

If the place is not impoſtumated, pour into the hole Spirit of Vitriol, and ſtop it with Cotton; and

ſet on the ſhoe: If he grows lame again, take off the ſhoe, and dreſs his Foot with Spirit of Vitriol as before.

A Remedy for a prick with a nail.

In general; for a prick with a Nail, after you have open'd the Sore, inject every day the Vulnerary Water cold; or for want of that, dreſs with the Ointment *Pompholygos*; ſtopping the hole with Cotton. If neither of theſe Medicines can be had, pour into the hole very hot Vinegar, in which beaten Milfoil (or Savin, Vervain, Birthwort, Speedwell, Agrimony, Zedoary, Adders-Tongue, *&c.*) has been boil'd, and lay the boil'd Herbs upon it; repeating the Application till it be heal'd.

Sometimes a lameneſs is occaſion'd by a bruiſe in the fruſh, the heels being ſo low that the Horſe knocks them againſt the ground as he goes. 'Tis known by the trembling of the Fruſh when you touch it, and the perceiving of matter form'd underneath. In this caſe, the Sore muſt be dreſs'd like a Wound made by a Nail, the Remedies being made to penetrate thro' the Heel, between the Fruſh and the bone of the Foot; and proper Aſtringents of Lime, and the ſecond Water, or of Soot, Vinegar, and Whites of Eggs, being applied about the Fruſh.

The moſt effectual Remedy for a prick in a Horſe's Foot, are the Vulnerary Water, the Ointment *Pompholygos* (which is known to cure hurts in the Feet of Oxen, receiv'd at the Plough) and above all the Oil de Merville, *viz.*

Oil de Merville. *Take the Oils of Turpentine, and of St. Johnſwort, of each four Ounces; true Oil of Peter, two Ounces. Mix 'em in a glaſs Bottle over hot Embers, adding the weight of a Golden Crown of Alkanet, hung in the Bottle by a thread. After it has ſtood a quarter of an hour on the Aſhes, take out the Alkanet, and preſerve the Oil for uſe.* If you thicken it with Wax, its penetrating virtue will be

be impair'd. 'Tis to be injected warm every day, into the open'd Sore, the hole being afterwards ſtop'd with Cotton to keep it open; and cover'd with Flax and Splents.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Scab'd Heels or Fruſh; and of the Crown-ſcab and Mange.

SOmetimes an Itching and eating Scab waſtes the Fruſh, and makes a Horſe halt; and though 'tis not dangerous, it is troubleſome and painful. 'Tis diſcover'd by its ſtinking of old rotten Cheeſe, when one comes into the Stable; and by the Horſe's beating the ground with his Feet, by reaſon of the Itching.

The Cure of Scab'd Heels.

For the Cure: Pare the Fruſh very cloſe with a Buttreſs; then quench unſlack'd Lime in Vinegar; and throw the ſtrain'd liquor boiling hot upon the Fruſh; after which, apply a Reſtringent Charge of unſlack'd Lime, and the ſecond Water; or the black Reſtringent of Soot, Vinegar, and Whites of Eggs. The Counteſs's Ointment, with a dreſſing kept on with Splents, will likewiſe perform the Cure in three or four Applications. If it returns after, cleanſing the Sores, bleeding frequently in the Toe, and applying *Neatherd*'s Ointment, will ſerve for a Palliative Remedy; tho' the internal cauſe can hardly be remov'd.

A Preſervative from Scab'd Heels.

For Preſervation, pare the Fruſh often, and rub the place once or twice with the Second Water; and after the Scabs are by this means dry'd up, *Take of Allum and white Vitriol of each a pound and a half:* Boil them in a Gallon of Water, till it be reduced to two quarts; and bath the part every day with it cold; and above all, when the Itching is gone

gone, melt Tar or black Pitch upon the Scabs, and keep the Feet well pick'd, and free from duſt and dirt.

The Crown-Scab. The Crown-Scab is a white mealy Scurf, caus'd by a burnt yellowiſh and malignant matter, that breaking forth at the Roots of the Hair, makes it briſtle and ſtare, on the Coronet, and oftentimes all over the Paſtern to the Joint; the part being much ſwell'd. This Scurf is the ſubtile exhalations of the Humours, harden'd into a Salt ſticking to the Skin. There are two ſorts of Crown-Scabs. Some are quite dry; others void a ſtinking matter, that imparts its ſtrength and moiſture to the adjacent parts; and by its acrimony, while it is in the Coronet, cracks and ſplits the Hoof which receives its nouriſhment from the Coronet. Commonly this ſcurfy Humour is neither painful, nor an obſtacle to Travelling; eſpecially in dry Climates, where it dries up in Summer of it ſelf: But ſometimes, 'tis extreamly hot, ſharp and troubleſome, and over-runs the whole Leg, almoſt to the Knee and Hoof.

For the Cure: *Take two Ounces of good Braſil Tobacco, cut ſmall, or purg'd of the Stalks. Infuſe it twelve hours, in half a pint of ſtrong ſpirit of Wine; ſtirring them every hour, to promote the better extraction of the Tincture.* Rub the Scab very hard, once every day, with an handful of this Tobacco; the part being firſt chafed without taking off the Skin. This, and all other dying Remedies, are only Palliative; for oftentimes the Scab breaks forth, after a ſeeming Cure: In which caſe, you muſt rub the part with a wiſp of Hay, till it grows hot; without taking off the Skin, or drawing Blood; and then touch it gently, once or at moſt twice, with Cotton dip'd in the Spirit of Vitriol; or elſe dreſs the Sores with *Neatheard*'s Ointment. However you muſt be very cautious of applying too much

much or too ſtrong, Spirit of Vitriol, at firſt; for I was once deceiv'd with Spirit of Vitriol highly rectified; which being apply'd in too large a quantity, in a moiſt Crown-ſcab, made the whole Leg and Sinew ſwell, with ſuch a violent pain that the Horſe could not ſtand upright: Upon which occaſion I was forc'd to aſſuage the pain of the Leg and Sinew with the red Honey Charge; and mitigate the violent pain in the ſcabby place, occaſion'd by the Spirit, by applying to it the white Honey Charge: And though, after two Months keeping in the Stable, the Horſe was cur'd of the Green-ſcab, yet a great Scar remain'd, which was never afterwards cover'd with Hair. I am of the opinion, that Spirit of Salt being a more potent cleanſer, is preferable to the Spirit of Vitriol, in a Crown-ſcab, tho' neither the one nor the other are infallible, in inveterate caſes. Sometimes indeed it may be cur'd, by bathing with Spirit of Wine, impregnated with as much Sal Armoniack, as it will diſſolve.

Of the Mange.

Oftentimes old Horſes, and even young ones, upon reſt, after hard labour, are troubled with ſuch a perpetual Itching or Mange in their Legs, and other parts, that they rub off the Hair.

For Cure: *Infuſe two Ounces of Euphorbium, reduced to fine powder, in a quart of ſtrong Vinegar: After it has ſtood in hot Embers ſix hours, rub the Horſe's Legs with a wiſp, and chafe them with the Vinegar once or twice.* After that, bleed him in the Eye-Veins, if the Fore-Legs are affected, and in the Plait Thigh Vein, for a Mange upon the hinder Legs.

If you waſh the mangie parts with the *Infuſion of two handfuls of Staveſacre ſeed, in a quart of ſtrong Vinegar, and hot Aſhes*; they will be cur'd at twice bathing. Or you may rub the parts once or twice at moſt (for fear of Ulcerating) with a large handful

handful of Louſewort, or Baſtard Hellebore; which is a Plant with long notched leaves, made uſe of in the Countrey, to deſtroy Lice in Cattle.

For a certain cure of the Mange: *Take green Copperas, and burnt Allum, of each four Ounces; Arſmart, two handfuls.* Boil them in two quarts of Vinegar, to the Conſumption of one half; and waſh the Horſe's Legs with the liquor, having firſt rub'd them with a wiſp; remembring ſtill, that the cure of this Diſtemper muſt always begin with Bleeding; and in the mean time the Horſe may be either Ridden or Wrought.

For the Cure of an Univerſal Mange, or a Mange upon the Legs only; and likewiſe for a peeling off of the Skin and Hair, upon the bending of the Thigh, occaſion'd by an exceſs of heat: *Boil four Ounces of the Scoriæ of Liver of Antimony in powder, in two quarts of ſtrong Vinegar.* With which rub the parts every day, till the hair returns. At the ſame time the Horſe's body muſt be cool'd, with repeated Doſes of the Liver of Antimony, or of Sal Prunellæ.

CHAP. XX.

Of the Hoof-bound; or of waſted and ſhrunk Feet.

OFtentimes the conveyance of nouriſhment to the Feet, is interrupted by diſorders in the Legs and adjacent parts; inſomuch that the Feet dwindle, the Horſe halts, and the Hoof ſounds hollow if you knock on it.

For Cure: Raſe the whole Foot with a red hot Knife, making large raſes of the depth of a Silver Crown, from the hair to the ſhoe, avoiding the Coronet

Cronet. Then apply the following Pultis, and charge the whole Foot with the following Remolade.

A Pultis for the Hoof-bound.

Take two parts of Sheep's Dung; and one part of Hen's Dung; boil them with a ſufficient quantity of Water and Salt, to the thickneſs of Paſte. In another Pot, boil a convenient quantity of Mallows to a Maſh; then add a convenient quantity of Linſeed in Powder, and boil a little longer; after which, beat 'em in a Mortar, with an eighth part of a raw Garlick, to a ſoft Paſte. Incorporate this with the former Paſte; adding a little Oil of Lillies. Make a Pultis, to be applied to the Foot very hot, it being cover'd with Splents. Renew the application five or ſix times, once in two days, obſerving always to heat the old Pultis; and only mix a little freſh with it.

A Remolade for a Hoof-bound.

Take half a pound of Burgundy Pitch; four Ounces of common Turpentine; two Ounces of Oil Olive; and thicken the whole with a ſufficient quantity of fine Flower. Charge the whole Foot with this Remolade, lukewarm, after the application of the Pultis.

Oftentimes one of the quarters of the Hoof is ſhrunk, and dry'd up, while all the nouriſhment falls upon the other; eſpecially near the Heels of the Fore-feet, and the inſide of the Hoof; which is the weakeſt part; and the Horſe halts down-right, the bone of the Foot being cramp'd and preſs'd by the ſhrunk quarter. In this caſe, draw ſeven or eight lines with a hot Iron upon the ſhrunk quarter, from the Cronet to the Shoe, (in order to penetrate and unbend the Hoof, that ſo the Bone may return to its due place,) without touching the Hair; and then apply the Pultis and Remolade as above. If this method proves ineffectual, you muſt take out the Sole, and cleave the Fruſh in the middle with a

Fleam, piercing to the Paſtern; and fill the cleft, (not the Foot) with a great number of Bolſters, beſmear'd with a mixture of equal parts of Tar, Hony and Turpentine, boil'd together; the Foot being firſt dreſs'd, and Splents laid on.

CHAP. XXI.

Of all ſorts of Wounds and Hurts.

SOme Wounds are ſo ſlight, that the cure conſiſts only in keeping them clean; and others are ſo painful, that unleſs they be taken care of, they prove fatal. Wounds in the Fleſh are more eaſily cur'd, than thoſe in the Sinews, Tendons or Bones: Thoſe upon a Joint, are ſeldom or never cur'd. In hot weather, Wounds are apt to gangrene and mortify, through the corruption bred by Flies and other Inſects; in cold weather they are long a cloſing. If a Horſe be ſhot through the Body with a Muſket Bullet, the charge of the Cure is extreamly great, and the Event always uncertain. In order to obtain a regular method of curing Wounds; let the following Rules be obſerv'd.

Rules for the cure of Wounds.

1. Since Horſe's fleſh is very apt to corrupt upon the leaſt contuſion; and ſince the leaſt corruption retards the Cure; let the Wound be prob'd very gently, and as ſeldom as poſſible, with Probes of Juniper, or ſome Aromatick-wood, well dry'd. Indeed Silver Probes are beſt for deep Wounds; and thoſe of Lead may be us'd inſtead of Strings in Setons, for Lead never heats the part.

2. Let the Proud-fleſh, to which the Wounds of Horſes are very ſubject, be kept down with Bandages;

Bandages; or, if that be impracticable, let it be conſumed; or which is beſt of all, let it be cut off, or burnt throughly; taking care not to cut a Sinew or Tendon, and being cautious in Wounds near a Bone.

3. In all great Wounds, let the humors be cool'd, and diverted from the wounded Part, by bleeding; which ſeaſonably adminiſtred, exceeds all other Remedies. It ought to be repeated two or three times in the beginning, but not oftner. If the Horſe is fat, you muſt abridge the quantity of his Provender; eſpecially if the Wound be large, for then a little moiſten'd Bran, without either Oats or Hay, is ſufficient.

4. Never waſh the Wound with pure Water, for that promotes the moiſture of the fleſh, which retards the Cure. Upon occaſion, you may waſh it with warm Wine or Urine, or the Water of a Smith's Forge, lukewarm; and after the Wound is cleans'd, with the ſecond Water, in order to allay the itching and heat, and to dry the fleſh.

5. Let not the Horſe lick the Wound, or rub it againſt any hard thing. The former poiſons the Wound; and the latter bruiſes the fleſh, which muſt be ſeparated before the Wound can be heal'd.

6. Indeavour by all means to repel, or diſſolve the Humors, eſpecially in parts full of Sinews and Ligaments, or near the Bones; becauſe the matter generated, weakens the part, leaves a deformity, and if near the Bone, corrupts it. The Repelling Remedies are otherwiſe call'd Reſtringents, becauſe they bind up the humors from flowing into the part. 'Tis true, Reſtringents are not proper in Critical Tumors, proceeding from an effort of nature to diſe a nobler part, or in the Bitings of Venemous Creatures, or when the matter is thick, tough and hard. But even in ſuch caſes, 'twill be proper to

apply ſuch Remedies as attenuate and diſſolve the humors, before we proceed to Suppuration.

7. In Wounds accompany'd with a great Contuſion, the bruis'd fleſh muſt putrify, and its ſeparation muſt be haſten'd with Inſtruments, which I prefer to Cauſticks.

8. Round or circular Wounds ought to be cut into a long figure, to facilitate the Cure.

9. Cover the Wound carefully from the Air, with Lamb's Skin; and where that cannot be conveniently applied, with Tow, which muſt be cut and beaten, that it may ſtick the faſter.

10. As ſoon as you attempt the Cure of a Wound, ſhave the Hair very cloſe, about two fingers breadth round the place, and keep it always neat, clean, and ſupple, that the Skin may be eaſily ſtretch'd to join the Lips of the Wound. If the Lips are callous, you muſt conſume the callous, with the golden Ointment mix'd with unwaſh'd Butter of Antimony. Or, if that proves ineffectual, lance and gaſh them with a Fleam or red hot Knife; which will haſten the forming of a Cicatrice.

A Saddle-Gall. A Saddle-Gall of no conſiderable depth, is cur'd by waſhing with Urine or warm Wine; and ſometimes, when the Wound is large, with the ſecond Water; and ſtrewing the Wound with the powder of an old Rope or Flax; and conſuming the proud fleſh with Colcothar of Vitriol.

A Sitfaſt. Sometimes a Saddle-Gall degenerates into a hard knot, call'd a Sitfaſt. For an eaſy and ſpeedy cure of this, let the melted Tallow of a lighted Candle drop upon the Knob, and after 'tis ſeparated, waſh the Sore with warm Wine, and the ſecond Water, or Urine. Then anoint it ſlightly with old Salt Butter, ſtrewing upon it the powder of old Ropes. Often-times a neglected Sitfaſt, turns to an incurable

Gan-

Gangrene. Upon which account we ought to haſten the Cure. For which end, the ſureſt way is to rub it with the Ointment of Beetles, or ſome good Retoir, holding a hot Bar of Iron near the part, as ſoon as the Ointment is laid on; and renewing the Application thrice in three ſucceſſive Days; or to rub it with a Cauſtick Ointment once.

A Stonge to keep Wounds open.

If the Wound be large, open and deep, as it often happens in the Thighs, Withers, *&c.* it muſt be tented with a Tent of ſalted Hog's lard. But if it be neceſſary to keep the Wound open, inſtead of Inciſions, which are always pernicious, eſpecially in Places full of Sinews and Tendons, or over-run with Blood; apply the following Sponge, which will keep it open, and diſcover the bottom.

Take a fine Sponge, waſh'd clean, ty'd about very hard with Pack-thread, and wrapt in wet Paper: Let it dry a quarter of an hour, or longer, in a hollow Place in the midſt of the Hearth, covering it with hot Aſhes, and live Coals over the Aſhes. Then take it out, and when 'tis cold, untie it, and cut it into what Form you pleaſe, to be beſmear'd with a Digeſtive Ointment, and thruſt in to the bottom of the Wound. The next Day draw it out with your Pincers, and you will find it ſwollen, and the hole enlarg'd, without hurting the Sinews or Tendons. If the Wound be ſo foul, or full of dead Fleſh, that the Sponge is not ſufficient to open it, (provided it be not under the Foot) ſoak a very fine Sponge in a mixture of two Ounces of pounded Sublimate, and half an Ounce of melted Wax; then lay it in a Preſs 48 hours, and after that make Tents of it, which will open the Wound, and at the ſame time operate as Cauſticks. If you deſire it ſtronger, as in the caſe of Quitterbones; add an Ounce of Arſenick, in fine powder, to the above-mention'd mixture. But in Sores under the Foot, theſe Cauſtick

ſtick Sponges are improper, becauſe they drive the humours upwards to the Cronet; ſo that in ſuch Caſes you muſt prepare the Sponge only with melted Wax, and then make Tents of it, which will ſwell and keep down the Proud Fleſh, if the part be carefully bound up with Splents.

Cinnabar Pills for Wounds.

To promote the Succeſs of external Remedies; 'twill be proper to add inward Medicines, not Purgatives, which looſen the Humours, and occaſion Defluxions upon the part; but ſuch as purify the Blood, and reſiſt Corruption. For which end, the following Pills are of ſingular Uſe.

Take the fineſt and cleareſt Aſſa fœtida, Bayberries of Provence *or* Italy, *and Cinnabar, all in fine powder, of each a pound: With a ſufficient quantity of ſtrong Brandy,* make a Maſs in a braſs Mortar, to be form'd into Pills, weighing fourteen Drams each; two of which dried, may be given in *three half pints of Wine*, once in two Days, or once every Day, till he has taken eight or ten; making him ſtand bridled two Hours before and after the taking of every Doſe. Theſe Pills may be kept twenty Years, and are not only of wonderful Uſe againſt Wounds, eſpecially in an Army, where an expeditious Cure is requir'd; but likewiſe againſt the Farcin, and Worms, and againſt the ſhedding of the Hair from the Head and Neck; in which caſe three Doſes of theſe Pills, together with Bleeding, and the external uſe of Lime-Water; and after that, Flower of Brimſtone, given every Day in moiſten'd Bran, will compleat the Cure. Theſe Pills are alſo very proper againſt eating Scabs in the Mane and Tail, if the external uſe of Lime-Water be join'd to them, and againſt running Sores in the Legs, Warts, Bunches, Quitterbones, and ſuch like ſtubborn Diſtempers.

If the Wound be foul, it muſt be waſh'd at every dreſſing with the yellow Water, which follows. *Take two or three pounds of unſlack'd Lime, newly made; put it into a large Baſon of fine Tin, and pour upon it by degrees, five quarts of Rain-Water. Then ſet the Baſon in a convenient Place for two Days, ſtirring the Water often. Then let it ſettle, decant the Water off, ſtrain it through brown Paper; and to three pints of it, add half a pint of good Spirit of Wine; an Ounce of Spirit of Vitriol, and as much Corroſive Sublimate in fine powder.* Mix for Uſe. If the Wound be peſter'd with proud Fleſh, add to this quantity of Lime-Water, an Ounce of Arſenick in powder; if even that be too weak, you muſt burn the whole Wound with a hot Plate of Iron, taking care not to touch the Skin, Tendons, and Sinews: Then anoint the burnt Part with Oil of Bay warm, covering the whole Wound with Flax, and repeating the Application of the Oil, till the Eſcar looſens; after which, anoint it with *Baſilicum*, or Tallow, till the Scab falls off: And you will find a fair Skin underneath, without the leaſt Mark of burning.

A Lime-Water for Wounds.

The common detergent and cleanſing Remedies, are too weak for Horſes. Salt Butter cleanſes more effectually than any of them. Indeed *Unguentum Apoſtolorum*, and the Neatſherd Ointment are of very good uſe; and above all, the Ointment *Ægyptiacum*, which tho' it occaſions ſome Pain, is nevertheleſs an innocent and very uſeful Remedy. Its Compoſition is as follows.

Take a pound of common Honey, and a pint of Brandy; boil 'em over a gentle Fire, in a glaz'd Pot or Baſon, ſtirring 'em frequently with a wooden Slice, till they be perfectly united, and the Brandy diſappears. Then add two Ounces of burnt Allum, beaten ſmall, and four

The Ointment Ægyptiacum.

Ounces of powder of Verdigreaſe ſearced, ſtirring and incorporating them with the other Ingredients. At laſt put an Ounce of Sublimate in fine powder, ſtirring and boiling as before, till the whole be reduc'd to a Conſiſtency. Then remove the Pot from the Fire, and continue ſtirring till the Ointment be cold, which muſt be kept in a cover'd Pot for uſe.

If you ſee any Signs of Putrefaction in the part, mix two Ounces of *Aquafortis* with the *Ægyptiacum*. For a Cauſtick to eat the corrupt Fleſh, without hurting the Nerves or Muſcles, put the liquid Cauſtick into the Sore with a little Cotton, preſſing it on with a Bandage, otherwiſe it will have no effect. You may renew the Application till you perceive that the part is ſufficiently penetrated. As often as you dreſs the Sore, waſh it with the Lime or yellow Water, or with black Soap mix'd with unſlack'd Lime. Sometimes you may cleanſe the bottom of a Sore with a Tent, anointed with *Ægyptiacum*; and then you will find the Tent of a green colour, by reaſon of the Verdigreaſe in the Compoſition.

To make the Fleſh grow.

Sometimes after old and neglected Sores, eſpecially in the Feet, the Bones remain bare without Fleſh to cover them; in which caſe, *Take Dragon's Blood, and Bole Armoniack, of each half an Ounce; Maſtick, Olibanum and Sarcocolla, of each three Drams; Aloes, Round Birthwort, and Roots of Flower-de-Luce, of each a Dram and an half.* Mix and apply in the form of a powder; or, which is better, mix it with Turpentine in the form of an Ointment.

The Powder of Sympathy.

When the Wound is fair and clean, we uſually compleat the cure with drying Powders. But of all ſuch Powders, the moſt ſucceſsful and expeditious, is that call'd the Powder of Sympathy, *viz. Put a convevient quantity of Roman Vitriol* (that of *Cyprus* will not

not do) *in a flat bottom'd Earthen Pan, and expoſe it in the open Air, to the hotteſt Rays of the Sun, removing it always at Night, and in moiſt Weather, till the Vitriol be reduc'd to a white Calx.* In the mean time you muſt ſtir it every Day, with a Wooden Slice; for touching it with Iron, after the Sun has begun to unlock its Body, weakens its Virtue. When 'tis perfectly white, take it out, and preſerve it for the true Powder of Sympathy: Which you are to ſtrew upon a Cloth, dipp'd in the Blood of the Wound, and likewiſe upon a Cloth dipp'd in the Matter iſſuing from the Wound, if there be any; laying the Cloth afterwards in a temperate Place, or in a moiſt Place, if Suppuration be needful; or in a dry Place, if drying be requiſite; and powdering the Subſtance every Day. If the Depth of the Wound requires Tents, put them in clean and dry, and always when you take them out, ſtrew this Powder upon them. A Linnen Cloth doubled five or ſix times, and dip'd in the Solution of this Powder, and wrap'd about Wrenches and Sinew-Strains, renewing the Application twice a Day, is oftentimes more effectual than any Waters, Oils or Ointments; tho' Sympathy is not the Cauſe of its Efficacy.

Though the Powder of Sympathy is a moſt effectual Remedy for dangerous Wrenches and Strains in the Hoofs, yet ſome are ſo prejudic'd, that they will not make uſe of it. Upon which Account I ſhall ſubjoin the Deſcription of an Ointment, that promotes the cure of Wounds more in one Day than other Ointments do in a conſiderable Space of time.

The Hermit's *Ointment for Wounds.*

Take the green Leaves of long Birthwort, Paul's Betony, and Sage, of each a handful and an half; Sanicle, a handful; Roots of Marſhmallows and Comfrey dry'd in the Shade, of each an Ounce; ſlice the Roots very ſmall, and boil them in a Skillet with a pint of Cream, for the Space of a quarter of an Hour; after which,

which, add the Leaves chop'd ſmall, and boil them ſo long, till you can perceive nothing in the Skillet but a pure butter, produc'd by the boiling of the Cream. Then ſtrain it out into a Pot, and put into the ſame Skillet, a quarter of a pound of the Lard of a Hog fed with Acorns, cut into Slices, and mixt with the remaining Herbs and Roots. Boil all together about a quarter of an Hour, and ſtrain out the melted Lard upon the Butter. In the next Place boil two Ounces of Oil Olive in the Skillet, with the ſame Herbs and Roots, for the Space of a quarter of an Hour, and ſtrain it out into the Pot with the Butter and melted Lard: After which, ſqueeze out all the Juice and Fat of the Herbs and Roots in the ſame Pot; and while they are ſtill hot, add *an Ounce of melted Tar, and an Ounce and an half of burnt Allum in powder*; incorporating the whole Maſs, and ſtirring it till be cold. Melt a little of this Ointment in a Spoon, and with a ſoft Pencil anoint the Wound very lightly once a Day; covering it gently with Flax, or powder of old Ropes. If, at the ſame time you perceive ſpongy or proud Fleſh, conſume it with white Vitriol, diſſolv'd in Spirit of Wine, and after the removal of the Scab and Swelling, apply the Ointment. Giving the Fire will anſwer the ſame Indication. But to cleanſe the hidden part of a Wound, that cannot be reach'd by Fire or Cauſticks, you muſt uſe the Lime or yellow Water preſcrib'd above.

Of a Gangrene. A Wound tending to Mortification, is call'd a Gangrene; and a confirm'd Mortification is ſtyl'd a Sphacelus. The Signs of a Gangrene, are, an Inſenſibility, Lividneſs, and afterwards Blackneſs of the part; a ſudden and unwonted Softneſs, and a Smell reſembling that of a dead Carcaſs. The Cure of a Sphacelus is impoſſible: A young Gangrene is cur'd, by an early Scarification of the part to the quick, with a Fleam and

and waſhing it with ſalt Water twice a day, and covering the whole Wound with Flax ſteep'd in the ſtrongeſt Lime-Water; or if that proves too weak, in the following Water.

A Detergent for a Gangrene.

Take of Crude Allum, a pound; German *Copperas, in coarſe powder, half a pound*; *Verdigreaſe in fine powder, three Ounces*; *boil all together in a gallon of ſtrong Vinegar, to the Conſumption of one half.* Reſerve the unſtrain'd liquor for uſe, in a glaſs Viol; ſhaking the Glaſs as often as you apply it; and, in caſe it proves too weak, adding to each quart, two ounces of *Aquafortis.* Or,

Take of the ſtrongeſt White-Wine two Ounces and a half; *Brandy, half a pint*; *Spirit of Vitriol, two Ounces.* Mix in a two quart Bottle; and an hour after, add *two Ounces of Verdigreaſe, in fine powder*; *white Vitriol, four Ounces*; *and green Copperas, one pound*; *the two laſt in coarſe powder.* Stop the Bottle very cloſe with a Cork and Hog's Bladder; then let it ſtand in infuſion on hot Embers, twenty four hours, ſhaking it every ſix hours. Then preſerve it for uſe, ſhaking the Glaſs, and applying as above. 'Twill keep three Months.

A gall'd Back.

When a Horſe's back is gall'd upon a Journey, take out a little of the Stuffing of the Pannel over the ſwelling; then ſew a piece of white, and very ſoft Leather on the inſide of the Pannel. Anoint it with Salt Butter, and every Evening wipe it clean, rubbing till it grow ſoft, and anointing it again with Butter, or for want of that with Greaſe. Waſh the ſwelling or hurt every Evening with cold Water and Soap, and ſtrew it with Salt, till the Horſe be Saddled in the Morning. Above all, a large quantity of Sea-ruſh, that is uſually wrap'd about Venice Glaſſes, thruſt into that part of the Pannel that touches the Sore, is of admirable uſe for Saddle-Galls.

Harneſs Galls. Sometimes the breaſts of Coach-horſes are gall'd by their Harneſs; or riſe in hard bunches, eſpecially in rainy Weather. In which caſe ſhave off the Hair about the Sore very cloſe, and rub the whole Breaſt with a Lather of Water and black Soap; then waſh that part of the Breaſt, which is uſually cover'd with the Petrel, with Salt Water; ſuffering it to dry up of it ſelf. If the hardneſs of any part of the Harneſs occaſions the Galling, take it away, or cover it with little Bolſters.

To ſtanch Blood. To ſtop a violent flux of Blood, occaſion'd by a wound upon a large Veſſel; nothing is preferable to the powder of Sympathy. If that cannot be had, you muſt lay bare, and bind up the cut Veſſel. If that proves unpracticable, ſtop the Orifice of the Veſſel with a piece of *Roman* Vitriol, and apply a Bandage, if the Situation permits: If it does not, the ſureſt way is, to apply a Searing Iron. Thoſe who are afraid of Burning; may take equal quantities of Colcothar, Frankincenſe, and Aloes in powder; and mix 'em with the Whites of Eggs, to the thickneſs of honey; adding a convenient quantity of the hair of a Hare, cut ſmall; and in a different caſe, Dragon's Blood, Man's Blood dry'd, Plaiſter, and Calcin'd Vitriol; and apply the whole in a ſufficient quantity. After the blood is ſtopt, you muſt not touch the Wound for three days, to ſee whether the Veſſel be exactly clos'd. The Simples for ſtopping a flux of Blood are, the *Roots and Leaves of Nettles, the Bark of a Pomgranate and Pine-tree, the leaves of Plantane and Willows, Services, burnt Galls quench'd in Vinegar, Bean-flower, Starch, Soot, Litharge, Ceruſs, Vitriol, Colcothar, Allum, a dry'd and pounded Sponge, and dry'd Coriander-ſeeds.* Above all, the moſt effectual Remedies are Cauſticks, eſpecially the powder of Arſenick, which makes a large Eſcar. Only, when the Scab falls off, you muſt take care to prevent

new

new Flux of Blood, by avoiding ſharp Remedies, or the uſe of a Probe; and applying a mixture of equal quantities of a Pomgranate, *Roman* Vitriol, and Allum.

Wounds preceded by Tumors.

Having treated of Simple Wounds, I proceed to thoſe occaſion'd or preceded by Swellings. If a Horſe is bit by another Horſe on the Neck, or near the Withers; waſh it with Lime-Water, or Water and Soap, or with the ſecond Water. If there be only a ſimple Contuſion, apply Brandy; if the Wound be ſmall, apply Oil of Wallnuts cold, mixt with red Wine. If the Horſe have large and fleſhy Withers, the redundant moiſture occaſioning proud fleſh, and hindering the drying of the part, retards the Cure. A hurt in the Withers occaſion'd by the largeneſs of the Saddle-bands, provided it is not very great; will certainly be cur'd by what follows.

A Remedy for a ſmall hurt in the Withers.

Take the Whites of ſix Eggs; beat them with a piece of Allum, almoſt as big as an Egg for a quarter of an hour together; till the whole be reduc'd to a very thick ſcum or froth; with which you muſt rub the ſwelling, and afterwards cover it with the reſt of the froth, ſuffering it to dry upon the part; repeating the Application every tenth or twelfth hour; notwithſtanding that the heat and ſwelling remains.

A Remedy for a great hurt in the Withers.

If the hurt be great, divert the humors by letting Blood in the Neck at firſt, and repeating it after two days. If a Tumor and Inflammation follows a Contuſion, occaſion'd by the Saddle-Bows, anoint thrice a day with the Duke's Ointment, and cover the Withers with a Lamb's Skin, laying the woolly ſide next the part, after you have bath'd them with Lime Water prepared without Sublimate; for that Remedy does very powerfully allay the Inflammation; and in this caſe Defenſives are of no uſe.

If

If the heat, diſtention, and beating of the Tumor, ſpeak its tendency to ſuppuration; you muſt alter your method, and waſh off the Ointment with lukewarm Oxycrate, mixt with a handful of Salt; and, as ſoon as the part is dry, chafe it gently four times a day, with an Ointment made of half a pound of Populeon; Honey and black Soap, of each a quarter of a pound; mix'd cold, and diluted with a large glaſs of Spirit of Wine. After which, cover the Sore with a Lamb's Skin, to promote the operation of the Ointment, which will diſſipate the humours and remove the heat.

During the external Cure of hurts in the Withers; give your Horſe a Doſe of Cinnabar-Pills for two days together, keeping him bridled two hours before, and after the taking of them; and repeating the ſame courſe after an interval of two days.

In caſe of a tendency to Suppuration, if you cannot procure the above-mentioned Ointment; *Take an equal quantity of Cummin-ſeed and Linſeed in powder; boil them in Cow's Milk, with a large quantity of Pigeon's Dung in powder*; and make a Pultis to ripen the Swelling, and aſſuage the Pain.

Take four Ounces of the roots of Marſh-mallows beaten, boil them in Water; and afterwards add leaves of Mallows, and Bank Urſin, of each a handful. After they are well boil'd, beat them to a Maſh, adding Oil Olive and Butter, of each two Ounces. With flower of Fenugreekſeed, make a ripening Pultis to be applied warm.

When the ſwelling is ripe, make one or more holes in the lower part of the ſwelling, with a red hot Iron, about the bigneſs of the end of your finger; and having preſt out the matter, dreſs the holes with ſoft Tents, beſmear'd with the Duke's Ointment; or put in Tents of Hog's-Lard, reaching from one hole to the other; leaving no boggy or hollow place underneath, that the whole matter may be evacuated.

evacuated. If there be any hollow place, you muſt pierce the Skin at the end of it with a red hot Iron; and then put in Tents with the Duke's Ointment from one hole to another; keeping the Sore moiſt with the Duke's Ointment, to allay the Inflammation; and if there be a large hollow with a great putrefaction, injecting the yellow Water.

This method is preferable to Inciſion, when the bottom of the Sore and the Bones are ſound. But, if the Bone be foul, the ſureſt way is to cut off all that is corrupted, and even the Mane, if there be occaſion, without touching the Nerve that runs along it; diſcovering at once the bottom of the Sore, and piercing it to the quick. You muſt cut the Sore ſloping, without high or ſwelling Lips, to keep the matter from ſtagnating; and carefully ſeparate the corrupt fleſh from the Neck-Sinew; the cutting of which would certainly ſpoil the Horſe. Having thus freed the Sore of its corruption, ſtrew the place with red hot Aſhes, taken out of a burning Fire, till the Blood be ſtopt. Next day waſh it with the Water of a Smith's Forge, lukewarm, or with warm Wine, Urine, or the ſecond Water; and ſtrew it again with hot Aſhes, repeating the ſame method two or three times once in 24 hours; for the alkaline, aſhy Salt, being melted by the moiſture of the Sore, deſtroys the acid humour, and conſequently abates the Swelling, Heat and other Symptoms. In an Army where you cannot eaſily come at Aſhes; after the Inciſion, bath the Sore with Water, fully laden with diſſolv'd Vitriol, or the *German* green Copperas, and bind on it Flax dip'd in the ſame Water. After 48 hours, take off the dreſſing; and if you perceive any Inflammation, renew the application of the Flax as above, till the heat and ſwelling are aſſuag'd. Then waſh the Sore with the Water of a Smith's Forge, lukewarm, and after that with the Second Water,

Water, or Lime-Water; and beſmear it with Ox-gall; covering it very ſoftly with Flax, or powder of old Ropes; which being remov'd the next day, will leave the Sore fair and clean. Waſh it again with the ſecond Water, to allay the Itching; and afterwards continue to anoint with Ox-gall, and cover with Flax, and powder of old Ropes, till it be heal'd. If you perceive any corrupt or bruis'd Fleſh, burn the part, or apply the powder of Colcothar; and after the Scab falls off, continue to anoint as before with Ox-gall. To conſume proud-fleſh, the powder of white Vitriol will ſerve, where Cauſticks are inconvenient. If the Ox gall does not anſwer, you muſt have recourſe to the Hermit's Ointment for Wounds. To make the fleſh firm, you may ſtrew it with white Vitriol, laying a convenient Ointment over it.

Swellings or Wounds on the Reins or Back, are cur'd after the ſame manner with thoſe on the Withers. So that the above-mention'd Remedies may ſerve in all Wounds whatſoever.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the Bitings of Mad Dogs, and Venemous Beaſts.

THE Cure of Madneſs, occaſion'd by the biting of a mad Dog, whether in Men or Cattle, is commonly thought to depend either on a miracle or dipping in the Sea. But a Pamphlet lately printed at *Poictiers*, has diſcover'd an eaſy and infallible Receipt for that Diſeaſe; which was confin'd as a ſecret for ſeveral Ages to a certain Family, and at laſt diſcover'd by a Jeſuit of the ſame Family. This Medicine, ſays the Pamphleteer, is recommended

mended by ſo many Experiments, that thoſe who live near the Ocean, prefer it to the uſe of the Sea-Water. 'Tis this,

An infallible Remedy for Madneſs, occaſion'd by Biting.

If there be a Wound, cleanſe it very carefully; ſcraping it with an Iron Inſtrument, without cutting away any part of it, unleſs it be ſo torn, that it cannot be united to the member; then bathe the Wound with Water and Wine, ſomewhat warm, mix'd with a pugil of Salt. The Wound being thus cleans'd: *Take Rue, Sage, and Field-Daſies, both leaves and flowers, of each a pugil* (this will ſerve for one Wound) *with a convenient quantity of the roots of Eglantine or Sweet-briar, and of Spaniſh Scorzonera, chop'd very ſmall; and five or ſix heads of Garlick, each of the bigneſs of a ſmall Nut. Beat the Eglantine roots with the Sage, in a Mortar; then add the other Ingredients with a pugil of bay Salt, beating 'em together in the ſame Mortar, to a maſh;* a part of which, you muſt apply to the part, and, if the Wound be deep, you muſt likewiſe pour ſome of the juice of the ſame maſh into it. This done, incorporate the remaining part of the maſh with a glaſs of White-wine in a Mortar; and ſqueeze it thro' a Linnen Cloth, giving the ſtrain'd liquor to be drunk faſting, waſhing the Mouth afterwards with Wine and Water, and faſting for three hours after.

'Tis ſufficient to ſcrape and waſh the Wound the firſt day; but the Pultis and Potion muſt be repeated nine days together; after which, the Patient may freely converſe with his Friends; and, if the Wounds are not perfectly cur'd, they may be dreſs'd like ſimple Wounds. In the caſe of Dogs, you may ſhift the Wine for Milk, becauſe they drink it more eaſily.

Another eaſy Remedy for bitings of mad Beaſts.

To prevent the trouble of a Journey to be dip'd in the Sea, when one is bitten by a mad Beaſt: *Take a good quantity of Oyſter-ſhells, lay them on hot Embers, and open them with a piece of a coal; which being kindled will burn or calcine the Shell. Let them lie in the fire till they grow brittle, and perfectly white; after which, beat their lower half to a powder, which will keep as long as you will. Take this powder of the under half of the Oyſter-ſhells* (for the upper part is uſeleſs) *and fry it with Oil Olive*; of which, give to Horſes, Dogs, and other Cattle, as much as they can ſwallow, once in two days, making 'em faſt ſix hours before, and as long after it. To Men you may give *the powder of the under part of one Oyſter-ſhell, fry'd with Oil Olive*, and made into a Pancake with four Eggs; taking it faſting, and abſtaining from eating ſix hours after.

Of the bitings of a ſort of Mice, bred in rotten Straw.

There are certain venemous Creatures, reſembling Mice, which breed in rotten Straw; the bitings of which are fatal to Horſes and Dogs; and when a Cat eats them, ſhe dies in a kind of Conſumption. If they bite a Horſe in the Paſtern or Fetlock-joint, the part ſwells, extending the Tumor to the Hough, Cods and Fundament; and without timely aſſiſtance the Horſe dies in eight and forty hours: If they bite the Belly of a Horſe, the Tumor either riſes towards the Throat, or extends to the Sheath; and quickly kills him.

As for the Cure: If it be in the Leg, *Tie a Ribbon or Garter of the breadth of an Inch above the ſwelling, to ſtop its progreſs; and beat the ſwollen part with a branch of Gooſeberry-buſh, till it be all over bloody; then chafe it with a large quantity of Orvietan, or Venice Treacle; exhibiting inwardly at the ſame time, an Ounce of either of theſe Medi-*

Medicines in Wine. The next day anoint again, and exhibit half an Ounce of the ſame Remedy. After which, untie the Garter, chaſe the Leg with Spirit of Wine, ſew a Cloth dip'd in the ſame Spirit about the ſwelling; and after that, rub the part with the Duke's Ointment, to aſſuage the ſwelling.

The ſame Remedies will ſerve for all venemous Bitings follow'd by Swellings; bating the Bitings of Serpents, againſt which I take the Eſſence of Vipers to be the moſt effectual remedy.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of a Cough.

HOrſes are often ſubject to Coughs; againſt which, 'twill be proper to mix *an equal quantity of Fenugreek and flower of Brimſtone with moiſten'd Oats*; and to give 'em for ordinary drink a pailful of Water, mix'd with a pound of Honey. For fat Horſes, the continu'd uſe of a ſmall handful of Hempſeed, mix'd with Oats, is very ſerviceable; as alſo the infuſion of that ſeed, in White-Wine, given after it has infus'd a Night. The continued uſe of a handful of Juniper-Berries, or of the Wood, and green leaves of Tamariſk, ſtamp'd, and mix'd with moiſten'd Oats or Bran, riſing every day from a ſmaller to a larger quantity, is likewiſe very proper. Or,

A Remedy for a Cough.

Take newly churn'd Butter, before it is waſh'd, and Honey, of each a pound; with two Ounces of Juniper-berries, make Balls, to be rowl'd up in powder of Liquorice, and given with a pint, or a pint and a half of White-Wine, keeping the Horſe bridled two hours before, and

three hours after; repeating the ſame two or three times, interpoſing a day or two between the Doſes. Or,

Another Remedy. *Take of clear Oil of Wallnuts, newly drawn, a pint; common Honey, a pound; and thirty grains of white Pepper beaten.* Mix and give the whole once, or at moſt twice.

Two or three Nutmegs grated, with half a pint of Brandy, will cure a Cough in one Doſe, unleſs the Horſe be old. In which caſe it muſt be repeated; or elſe *infuſe all Night a ſmall Porringer of dry Pigeon's dung, beaten in a quart of White-wine; in the Morning heat it till it begins to boil, then ſtrain out the Liquor, to which add, two ounces of juice of Liquorice.* Mix and exhibit, repeating the ſame thrice, interpoſing one day between the Doſes.

The Engliſh Pills for an old Cough. In inveterate Coughs that would not yield to common Remedies, I have ſeen the following Pills of ſingular Uſe. *Take flower of Brimſtone, four Ounces; Aniſ-ſeeds beaten, two Ounces; Liquorice dried in the ſhade and beaten, four Ounces; Bayberries, in fine powder, four Ounces; brown Sugarcandy, ſix Ounces; good Treacle, four Ounces; Oil Olive, eight Ounces; Tarr, two Ounces.* Incorporate all together in a Mortar; and with four Eggs beaten in a diſh, make Pills weighing ten Drams each, to be dried in the ſhade on a Hair Sieve, turn'd upſide down. Give one of theſe Pills once a day, for twenty days together, in a pint of Red or White-wine, keeping the Horſe bridled an hour before, and two hours after; giving him at the ſame time his uſual allowance of Meat, and walking, working or riding him, as at other times. Though theſe Pills are moiſt, they'll never grow mouldy: They may alſo be beaten and mix'd with Bran.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of Obſtructions of the Lungs, Fevers, and other Sickneſſes, occaſion'd by Foundering.

A Remedy for obſtructions of the Lungs.

A Horſe, who had ſo great an oppreſſion in the Flanks, that he was thought to be purſive, and given over for loſt, was perfectly cured by the following Remedy.

Take Carduus Benedictus, Moſſy Lungwort, chop'd ſmall, of each an handful; Miſletoe of the Oak beaten, an Ounce; Roots of Marſh-mallows and Elecampane, ſtamp'd in a Mortar, half an Ounce; Hyſſop two handfuls. Boil the Ingredients about half an hour; then preſs out the liquor, and add, half an Ounce of the juice of Liquorice; an Ounce of the powder of Liquorice; Anniſſeed and Fennel-ſeed, in fine powder, of each half an Ounce; a Scruple of Saffron; half a pound of clarified Honey, and a quart of White-wine. Make a Decoction to be given blood warm at two Doſes; keeping the Horſe bridled ſix hours before, and walking him an hour after, and keeping him bridled four hours longer. Continue the uſe of this four days together; then intermit three days, and after that give him four Doſes more. If this does not ſucceed, give him a purging Medicine, and after that, the following powder, *viz.*

Take three pound of Linſeed, dried in a Furnace; three Ounces of Gentian; two Ounces of Fenugreek; of Elecampane, an Ounce and an half; Sage and Hyſſop, of each three Ounces; Brimſtone half a Pound. Make a powder; of which give two ſpoonfuls with Bran every Morning; keeping the Horſe bridled for an hour and an half after it.

A Remedy for Fevers. A Fever join'd to Foundering, requires more timely and quick aſſiſtance. In this Caſe, inject a Glyſter of the Emollient Decoction, with half a pound of Honey, lukewarm; or boil an Ounce of Crocus Metallorum in fine powder, in five pints of Beer, for half a quarter of an hour; then ſuffering it to ſettle, pour off the liquor, ſtrain it through a Linnen Cloth doubled, adding a quarter of a pound of Butter; and inject the whole lukewarm, at four in the Afternoon: At ſix exhibit the following Remedy, keeping the Horſe bridled till eight.

Take the diſtill'd Waters of Carduus Benedictus, and Scabious, of each ſix Ounces; Waters of the Queen of the Meadows, Cinnamon and Succory, of each four Ounces; thin Conſerve of Roſes, two Ounces; Confection of Alkermes, without Muſk or Ambergreaſe, an Ounce; Venice Treacle, half a Dram; powder of Oriental Saffron, ſix Grains. Mix and give it with a Horn, rinſing the Horn and the Horſe's Mouth with a mixture of the *Waters of Carduus Benedictus, Succory and Scabious, of each an Ounce and a half.* Next day at four in the Afternoon, inject the Glyſter preſcrib'd above; at ſix, let him blood in the two Plat Veins of the Thighs, keeping him bridled two hours after. Repeat the Doſe of the Remedy two or three times; but not the bleeding, without neceſſity. In the mean time let him eat a little Hay, inject Glyſters often, and waſh his Mouth frequently with Verjuice, Salt and Honey. For his ordinary Drink, *infuſe in a Pailful of Water, the Dough of a Penny-Loaf, ready to be put into the Oven*; which is infinitely better than Flower. If the Horſe continues long in a lying poſture, 'tis a very good ſign, as intimating that his difficulty of breathing is not great; and though he complains more when lying, than when ſtanding, that is not to be regarded, ſince the ſoundeſt Horſes are wont to do the ſame.

For

Another Remedy.

For another Remedy in the like caſe: *Take the Waters of Scorzonera, Queen of the Meadows, Carduus Benedictus and Scabious, of all two pints and an half, diſſolving in the ſame an Ounce of the Confection of Hyacinth, without Muſk or Ambergreaſe, and one Treacle Pill in powder.* Mix and give it with a Horn in the Morning, rinſing the Pot, Horn and the Horſe's Mouth with half a pint of wild Succory Water; and keeping him bridled three hours before, and two hours after. At Night inject a Glyſter lukewarm, of *an Ounce and a half of Sal Polychreſt, and half an Ounce of Pulp of Coloquintida, without the ſeeds*, boil'd in five pints of Beer, half a quarter of an hour; diſſolving in the ſtrain'd liquor a quarter of a pound of good Populeum. The frequent Repetition of this Glyſter, will promote the cure very much.

A Decoction againſt Fevers in Founder'd Horſes.

The *Lieutenant's Decoction* is likewiſe very proper, *viz. Take Carduus Benedictus, and Hyſſop, of each a handful; juice of Liquorice two Ounces; Roots of Gentian, ſtamp'd in a Mortar, an Ounce. Boil 'em in a pint and an half of Water for half an hour, then remove it from the Fire, and add a pint of White-wine, and as much Saffron as you can lift with three Fingers.* Strain out the Liquor for one or two Doſes; the next day after this is taken, let your Horſe blood in the Flanks, and keep him in a temperate place.

Since Horſes in this condition are wont to eat very little; they muſt be nouriſh'd with cleans'd Barley, without Butter or Fat; or with Bread or Bran; remembring to put the Bit frequently into the Horſe's Mouth; and always to offer him meat when you unbridle him.

CHAP. XXV.

Of the Preparations and Virtues of Crocus Metallorum, Sal Polychreſt, and the golden Sulphur of Antimony.

Liver of Antimony. TO prepare the *Crocus Metallorum*, *take equal quantities of the crude Antimony that is fulleſt of points and Nitre. Pound 'em ſeparately; mix 'em in a Crucible; ſet 'em on fire with a Match or live Coal. When the Flame is extinguiſh'd, ſeparate the Liver from the Scoriæ, under which you'll find it; reduce it to a a very fine powder; then throw it into Water, and beat again in the ſame Mortar, that which the Water cannot diſſolve; continuing after the ſame manner, till the whole matter be reduc'd to an impalpable powder.* Then let the Water ſettle, and at the bottom you'll find a liver-colour'd powder, which you muſt continue to waſh by pouring on freſh Water, till the Salt of the Nitre, that is not conſum'd by the flame, be wholly ſeparated from the powder. This Crocus, and its infuſion in Wine, is given only to Men: For 'tis not proper for Horſes. Inſtead of it, we prepare a Liver of Antimony thus.

Take of choice crude Antimony groſly beaten, ſix pounds; Salt-petre, of the ſecond Solution (the white and refin'd being too violent) four pounds and an half. Mix the Nitre beaten very ſmall, with the Antimony, in an Iron Pot, or Braſs Mortar, ſo that two thirds remain empty; then kindle the matter as above; ſtanding at a convenient diſtance to avoid the fumes of the Antimony. When the matter is cold, turn up the Mortar, for the Liver lies at the bottom, under the Scoriæ; and if it be

right

right prepar'd, ſhines like Glaſs, and is of a very dark brown colour. The Scoriæ, being a Combination of the Sulphur of Antimony and Nitre, are of excellent uſe in all Glyſters, where Sal Polychreſt is preſcrib'd. This Liver muſt not be waſh'd, for by that means 'tis ſtrip'd of its Virtues. Two ounces of it, reduced to a fine powder, and given to a Horſe with Oats or moiſten'd Bran once a day for the ſpace of a Month, is an univerſal Medicine for loſs of Appetite, Worms, Wounds, Farcin, Mange, Obſtructions, waſted Limbs, Cough, ſhortneſs of Breath; and in a word, for all Diſtempers that do not require hot Medicines. It operates without any ſenſible Evacuation, throwing out the impurity of the Blood, by inſenſible Tranſpiration; upon which account 'tis, that when a Horſe is curried, we find the impurity of filth ſticking to his Skin much encreas'd upon the firſt taking of this Medicine. It cools and refreſhes the Body; and by conſequence is not proper in the Glanders, Strangles, or Running at the Noſe.

I know the ancient Phyſicians decry'd Antimonial Preparations, as being full of Arſenical and Corroſive Spirits: But experience gives it againſt them; for I have given to ſeveral Horſes four or five pounds of this Remedy, in daily Doſes, without intermiſſion; and was ſo far from obſerving any Corroſion in the Stomach or Inteſtines, that it rendred them briſk, luſty, and fat. This Remedy purifies the whole maſs of Blood, by inſenſible tranſpiration, and accordingly raiſes a commotion and ebullition in the Blood, when 'tis firſt taken; upon which account, during the firſt ten days, you muſt neither gallop, nor work, nor even ride the Horſe much, for fear of Foundering him. 'Tis true moderate exerciſe, is very neceſſary for promoting the expulſion of the impure Vapours, by the pores of the Skin; but vehement exerciſe, eſpecially in the beginning, is extreamly

treamly hurtful; and when he ſweats, you muſt carefully wipe and dry him, and prevent his growing ſuddenly cold; though after the firſt Ebullition of the Blood is over, you need not confine yourſelf to ſo ſtrict an obſervance of thoſe Cautions. Neither this, nor any other Preparation of Antimony, has any purgative influence upon Horſes: For I gave to a Horſe, two Pills of the Regulus of Antimony, of the bigneſs of a large Nut; and two days and a half after, he voided them, without any alteration, or the leaſt ſign of Purgation. I gave the ſame Pills to another Horſe, who two days after, voided one, and kept the other in his body ſeven Years.

The Emetick Wine. To make Emetick Wine: Let two Ounces of Liver of Antimony in fine powder, ſtand twenty four hours in a cold infuſion in three pints of White-wine; then pour off a quart, and add another in its place; repeating the abſtraction of the old, and the addition of freſh Wine, five or ſix times. 'Tis an excellent Medicine, both for Men and Horſes.

The Analyſis of crude Antimony. To ſatisfy the curious, I ſhall here take occaſion to unfold the nature of crude Antimony. 'Tis a cheap and common Mineral, approaching to a Metallick Body; of a black colour, ſomewhat blueiſh, with large points like Needles, ſhining like poliſh'd Tin. 'Tis compos'd of a pure fix'd Sulphur, approaching to that of Gold, and an inflamable Sulphur like common Brimſtone, with a great deal of ſolid and well concocted Mercury, and a little thick and fat Earth. The *Hungarian* is the beſt. The deſign of all its Preparations, is to open and unlock the body of the Regulus, by reducing it to ſmaller and more penetrating Atoms; which aſſume the figure of the Salts, with which they are joyn'd; and may again be reinſtated in their primitive form by Nitre or Borax.

Sal Polychreſt.

Since all fuſible Medicines exert their Force more actively than indiſſolvable Lumps, it muſt needs be of great uſe to render Sulphur or its Flowers fuſible, they being juſtly reckon'd the Balſam of the Lungs. For which end, ſet a Crucible, or Iron Pot, in the midſt of an heap of live Coals, till it be all over red hot, even at the bottom; then caſt into it with a Spoon, a Mixture of Sulphur and fine Nitre, both in powder, half an Ounce of each. 'Twill break out into a Flame. When the Flame diſappears, ſtir the matter at the bottom with ſome Iron Inſtrument, to make the Fire penetrate it more effectually; and caſt in more of the ſame Mixture by Spoonfuls, ſtirring the Matter as before, after the diſappearance of the Flame between every Spoonful, continuing after the ſame manner, till all the Mixture is caſt in. Then cover the Crucible, and lay Coals on the Top, and every where round the Sides, ſuffering it to cool of it ſelf. After 'tis cold, beat the Matter to powder, which, if rightly prepar'd, will be of a pale Roſe colour; or elſe white, when the Nitre is not very pure. If it be grayiſh, 'tis naught. Four pounds of the Mixture will yield a pound and a half of Salt.

This Salt diſſolves in Water, and grows red in the Fire without waſting. 'Tis ſo very cooling, that it muſt not be given alone; but corrected with half an Ounce of Juniper-berries to an Ounce of the Salt, or with Scrapings of Nutmeg in moiſten'd Bran. If the Horſe will not eat it ſo, let it infuſe all Night in a quart of Wine, and give the Infuſion lukewarm to the Horſe, faſting. If its cooling quantity offends him, he will loſe his Appetite, and his Hair will briſtle and ſtare, eſpecially in the Flanks, in which caſe it ought to be ſhifted for Cordial Powders; for tho' the Intemperance of Men, and the inflaming Fire of their Paſſions calls for cooling

cooling Medicines; yet Horſes, who are free from ſuch Commotions, ſtand rarely in need of cooling Remedies. However for a beating of the Flanks, and a bak'd Dryneſs of the Dung, three or four Glyſters, with two Ounces of Sal Polychreſt, to each Glyſter, are of very good uſe.

An excellent Medicine for Men.

Tho' I have no Deſign to invade a Phyſician's Province, I cannot but take notice of an excellent Preparation of Sal Polychreſt of peculiar uſe to Men, in Obſtructions of the Bowels, Stoppage of the Lungs, ſpitting of Blood, and Falls; which purges gently without heating the Body. 'Tis this; *Take Sal Polychreſt, diſſolve it in Water; ſtrain the Water, and boil it till there appears a Film on the top; then put it into a Wooden Veſſel, and ſet it to Cryſtalliſe in a Cellar.* Then, *take four Drams of theſe Cryſtals, one Stalk of Liquorice beaten, two Pugils of the Flowers of double Damask Roſes, either freſh or dry; or,* inſtead of theſe, *of Violet Flowers.* Put all into an Earthen Pot, with a quart of boiling Water, and let 'em ſtand in Infuſion all Night. In a Morning drink a large glaſsful of the Water, and another about an Hour after. You may likewiſe diſſolve half an Ounce of theſe Cryſtals, in two quarts of Water, for a Diet-drink to be uſed at Meals.

The golden Sulphur of Antimony.

The true Preparation of the Golden Sulphur of Antimony, is as follows. *Take of Crude Antimony, two pounds; Tartar, a pound; fine Nitre, half a pound; make a Regulus according to Art, and boil the* Scoriæ *in a ſufficient quantity of Water, ſtirring it from time to time, till part of the* Scoriæ *be diſſolved.* Filtrate the Solution thro' brown Paper, and reſerve the ſtrain'd Liquor. At the ſame time, boil a ſufficient quantity of Tartar in Wine, ſtirring it till it be diſſolv'd, which will require a conſiderable time. Then pour by degrees the Solution of the Tartar, upon the

Solution

Solution of the *Scoriæ*, in an earthen Pot; and they'll precipitate a brown powder, throwing out a ſtrong and ſtinking ſmell. Dry this powder on brown Paper, and preſerve it for the Golden Sulphur of Antimony. Infuſe all Night from half an Ounce to an Ounce of this Sulphur, with a double quantity of fine white flower, (to keep it from falling to the bottom) in a quart of White-wine; and give the infuſion to your Horſe every Morning, for fifteen or twenty days; keeping him bridled two hours before, and three hours after.

This Remedy does admirably redreſs the lank and heated Flanks of lean and tir'd Horſes; and diſpells thoſe humours that keep them from growing fat. It does not purge Horſes; but by inſenſible Tranſpiration purifies the Blood, looſens the Skin from the Bones, cools the internal parts, opens the paſſages, and encreaſes the natural heat; for whereas other cooling Medicines make the Horſe lean, and the Hair to ſtare, and ſink the Appetite; this is attended with no ſuch inconveniency. 'Tis not only of uſe for lean and tir'd Horſes; but likewiſe for the Cure of the Farcin, Scab, Cough, Peeling of the Head, and a beginning Purſiveneſs.

A cheap method of curing tir'd Horſes.

Thoſe who cannot go to the charge of the above-mention'd Medicines for Horſes tir'd with hard riding, may bleed the Horſe in the Neck; the next day inject a Glyſter with an Ounce and an half of Sal Polychreſt; and the day following exhibit a pound and a half of Oil Olive, keeping him bridled two hours before and after; and four days after that, give him the following *Purging* and *comforting Potion.*

A Purging and Comforting Potion.

Take the Electuary of Diacarthamum, and fine Catholicum of Nicolaus, of each an Ounce; Venice Treacle, two Drams; liquid Conſerve of Red Roſes, and powder of Senna leaves, of each an Ounce; Pulp of Caſſia,

Caſſia, two Ounces; juice of Liquorice, half an Ounce; Scammony Sulphurated, two Drams; Anniſſeed and Cummin-ſeed, of each a Dram. Give all in a quart of White-Wine, keeping him bridled ſix hours before, and two hours after. If this does not make a ſufficient purgation, give him a purging Glyſter. Feed him with moiſten'd Hay and Honey'd Water. If after all you perceive no amendment, you muſt have recourſe to the Cordial Powder, the Golden Sulphur, and Glyſters; and afterwards repeat the Purgation. If the purging Potion is too chargeable, give the Medicines preſcrib'd in the next Chapter.

CHAP. XXVI.

The Method of Fattening Horſes.

FOR an eaſy, cheap, and very effectual Method of Fattening a Horſe; after you have let him blood; give him for his ordinary and only Drink, a pailful of Water, after half a Buſhel of coarſe Barley Meal has been ſtir'd in it for a conſiderable time, and then ſuffer'd to fall to the bottom, the Water being pour'd off into another Pail: Make him eat the Meal remaining at the bottom, Morning, Noon, and Night; adding to it a little Bran or Oats, if he refuſes to eat it; and afterwards leſſening the quantity of the Bran or Oats, gradually, till you bring him to eat the Meal alone. The Barley muſt be ground every day, for it quickly grows ſoure. Continue this Diet twenty days; and when your Horſe grows luſty, take him off from it by degrees, giving him at firſt Oats once a day, and the Meal twice, and afterwards the Meal but once, and the Oats twice, and ſo on. In the mean time you may give

give him Hay and good Straw; but you muſt not ride him, only walk him ſoftly about half an hour in the middle of the day.

After he has eaten Barley Meal eight days, give him the following Purgative, if you find he ſtands in need of it: *Take of the fineſt Aloes, an Ounce and a half; Agarick, and Roots of Florentine Orris, of each an Ounce*; beat all to powder, and give them with a quart of Milk warm from the Cow, keeping him bridled ſix hours before, and four hours after, without diſcontinuing his uſual Diet. Since the body was cool'd before by the Diet, the purge will occaſion no heat or diſorder. The ſame Diet is an admirable preſervative from ſeveral Diſtempers, eſpecially at the end of a Campaign, or after a long Journey.

If the Horſe loſes his Appetite, when he begins to eat the Meal, tye a chewing Ball to his Bit, renewing it often; for it not only reſtores the Appetite, but contributes to the Fattening of the Horſe.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the Palpitation of the Heart.

THE Beating, or Palpitation of the Heart, is a violent motion, by which it endeavours to expel ſomething that oppreſſes it. 'Tis occaſion'd by hard riding, violent exerciſe, corrupt Water, bad nouriſhment, and whatever produces heat or obſtructions. When 'tis violent, the motion may be perceiv'd on the ſides, as likewiſe a noiſe like the blows of a Hammer. Some Horſes bear it without loſs of Appetite, or any extraordinary beating in the Flanks. 'Tis a vehement Diſtemper, but

but not mortal, unleſs it be accompanied with a Fever. Horſes once ſeiz'd with it are uſually ſubject to it afterwards.

The Cure is perform'd by a frequent repetition of Bleeding, Glyſters, and Cordial Remedies. For Glyſters, I refer you to the foregoing Chapters. As for Cordials, you have the Electuary of Kermes, the Cordial Powder, the Lieutenant's Powder, and the Cordial Balls, which are to be repeated every day, or at leaſt once in two days. If the Palpitation be accompanied with a vehement beating in the Flanks, give him a quart of a Cordial mixture, of the Waters of Vipers-graſs, Scabious, Carduus Benedictus and Roſes, with an Ounce of the Confection of Hyacinth, without Muſk or Ambergreeſe, and one of the Cordial Balls reduc'd to powder, rinſing the Pot and Horn with half a pint of the ſame Cordial Waters. Or,

An eaſy Remedy for a Palpitation of the Heart.

Take Bugloſs, Borrage, and Bawm, of each a handful; boil them in a ſufficient quantity of Water, for the ſpace of half a quarter of an hour, till the Water be reduc'd to a pint. Then removing it from the Fire, add two handfuls of Sorrel, and let it ſtand till it be cold. Diſſolve in the ſtrain'd Liquor, an Ounce and a half of the Conſerve of Roſes, half an Ounce of the Confection of Hyacinth, without Muſk or Ambergreaſe, and ten grains of Saffron. Make your Horſe drink it lukewarm, and two hours after give him an Emollient Glyſter, with Sal Polychreſt; repeating the Glyſter every ſix hours, and the Potion once a day; keeping him to a ſpare diet of moiſten'd Bran, without Oats, and walking him frequently at a Foot-pace. When the Palpitation is perfectly cur'd, 'twill be convenient to give him the Purge preſcrib'd in the foregoing Chapter; walking him next day, till the evacuation is quite over: After which, you may give

give him his uſual allowance of Oats. This is a general method of Cure for all ſorts of Palpitations.

For a Palpitation from an exceſſive heat.

If it be Summer, and if you perceive an exceſſive heat in the Horſe's Body; let him Blood in the Neck-Vein, and make him ſtand in Water up to the Neck for an hour; then give him a Draught, compos'd of the *Waters of Vipers-graſs, Scabious, Roſes, and bitter Succory, of each a glaſsful; with an Ounce of Cream of Tartar, and four Ounces of Syrup of the juice of Sorrel, or of Violets.* You may likewiſe give him an Ounce of Sal Polychreſt, in a quart of Wine, and walk him an hour or leſs, according to his ſtrength, and afterwards give him an Emollient and Cooling Glyſter, with Sal Polychreſt in it.

For a cold Palpitation of the Heart.

If it be Winter, and no exceſſive heat be perceiv'd in the Horſe's Body; omit letting Blood, unleſs there be a great oppreſſion (in which caſe you may open the Veins of the Thighs, or that in the Briſket) and exhibit the following Cordial Potion.

Take Carduus Benedictus, Sage, and Roſemary, of each a handful; boil 'em in a pint and a half of Water, to the Conſumption of half a pint. To the ſtrain'd liquor add a pint of White-wine; Juniper Berries, round Birthwort, Myrrh, and ſhavings of Ivory, of each a Dram; Galangal, Cinnamon and Cloves, of each a Scruple; Saffron, ſix Grains; all in fine powder. Make your Horſe drink this Potion lukewarm, then walk him half an hour; and two hours after give him a Glyſter *of three quarts of the Emollient Decoction, with four Ounces of the Carminative purging Oil, a quarter of a pound of Oil of Bay; and two Ounces of Butter.*

In all caſes, you muſt be cautious of over-cooling the Horſe's Body; for, as I ſaid before, their Condition is different from that of Mens.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Fevers.

VIgorous young Horſes of a ſlender make, are often attack'd by putrid Fevers; in which caſe, they ſtupidly hang their Heads, and can ſcarce keep their Eyes open; they reel as they go; the Tongue and roof of the Mouth is blackiſh, rough and dry; a great heat is ſpread over all the Body; their Eyes are red, their Breath hot and ſharp, and their Flanks beat violently.

As for the Cure: Let Blood immediately, ſometimes in the Neck, Temple, or Eye-Veins; and ſometimes in the Briſket, Flanks, or Veins of the Thighs; for bleeding eaſes the diſtended Veſſels, allays the Heat and Ebullition; and by leſſening the quantity of the humours, gives nature an opportunity of ſubduing the reſt. Feed the Horſe with green Barley, Dandelion, and the tops of Vine-leaves; and that in ſuch a quantity, as is juſt ſufficient to keep him from ſtarving. For his ordinary drink, boil two Ounces of white Tartar, in fine powder, in two quarts of Water, for a quarter of an hour: Then pour the Decoction into a pailful of Water, with a handful of Barley-flower; and let him drink as much as he pleaſes.

An excellent cheap Remedy for Fevers.

Nothing is of more uſe for allaying the heat, and quieting the commotion of the humours, and provoking Urine powerfully; than what follows.

follows. *Put a quart of Water, with two Ounces of Salt of Tartar in a brazen Pot, with a cover, and ſet it over the Fire, till the Salt be diſſolv'd. Diſſolve after the ſame manner an Ounce of Sal Armoniack in powder, in another quart of Water.* Mix the two Solutions in a Pail, and fill up the Pail with Water, adding a little Barley-flower, to qualify the unpleaſant Taſte. This Febrifuge ought always to be mix'd with his drink, for it excels Sal Prunellæ, and all others that can be preſcrib'd. When the Horſe does not eat or drink, let him be always bridled, with a Bag ty'd to the Bit containing Aſſa fætida and Savin, both in powder, of each half an Ounce.

A Cordial Potion.

Cordial Waters are very proper in this caſe, for they inable nature to reſiſt the malignity, and by their moiſture allay the internal heat. For inſtance: *Take three pints of the Waters of Scabious, Carduus Benedictus, Scorzonera, and Queen of the Meadows, with an Ounce of the Confection of Alkermes.* Make the Horſe drink it up; and repeat it next day, if there be occaſion.

A Purging Glyſter for Fevers.

Above all, Glyſters repeated, if there be occaſion, three or four times a day, relieve the Horſe moſt effectually. *Take two Ounces of the Scoriæ of Liver of Antimony, in fine powder; boil them in five pints of Whey, made of Cow's Milk; and after two or three briſk waums, remove it from the Fire, and immediately add two heads of Coloquintida, ſlic'd ſmall;* and after 'tis half cold, preſs out the Liquor, to which add a quarter of a pound of Butter; and inject it luke-warm. This is a purgative Glyſter, that muſt not be uſed daily; but the following may be repeated ſeveral times a day.

A cooling Glyſter. *Take a ſufficient quantity of the ſoftening Herbs, and Fennel-ſeed, beaten with an Ounce and an half of Sal Polychreſt, and two handfuls of whole Barley. Boil and ſtrain, adding to the ſtrained Liquor Oil of Roſes and Violets, of each four Ounces; extracted Caſſia, or Benedictum Laxativum, three Ounces.* Inject it often, and rub the Horſe now and then againſt the Hair, to give vent to the fuliginous Vapours by opening the Pores. But if the Fever continues three days without intermiſſion, you may ſuperſede all Medicines, and throw the Horſe upon the Dunghil; for in that time, the Liver is quite conſum'd by the heat, as appears by the Diſſection of Horſes that die of Fevers.

A Purge for a Fever. In the Declenſion of the Fever, it will be neceſſary to exhibit a Purge; for which end, I recommend the following, which purges effectually, without heating the Body.

Take powder of white Tartar, and fine Nitre, of each two Ounces; put 'em in an earthen Diſh, and kindle 'em with a live Coal. After the matter is ſufficiently burnt and cold, beat it to a fine powder; put it into Water and White-wine, of each a quart, with four Ounces of Senna. Let 'em ſtand all Night in a cold infuſion. Then pour the ſtrain'd infuſion upon four or five drams of Scammony, in fine powder, incorporated with half a pound of Honey prepar'd with the Herb Mercury; ſtirring all gently with a Peſtle in a Mortar. Give the whole quantity, keeping the Horſe bridled four hours before, and three hours after. Feed him with moiſten'd Bran inſtead of Oats; and twenty four hours after, walk him gently for the ſpace of an hour. This Medicine may be ſafely adminiſtred on all occaſions, without any danger of heating, or inflaming the Body.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of the Farcin.

THE Farcin is a ſwelling, that frequently appears with an Ulcer, ſpreading almoſt over the whole Body; caus'd by a corruption in the Blood, and a certain malignity of the humors. It has ſome affinity with the *French* Pox in Men; and is cured like that, by removing the Cauſe, *i. e.* purifying and ſweetening the Blood; for which end, feed your Horſe with moiſten'd Bran, bleed him, and two days after keep him bridled ſix hours, or till Morning; at which time give him *Saſſafras Wood*, *Sarſaperilla*, *and Guaiacum*, *in groſs powder*, *of each three Ounces*; *in a quart of White-wine:* Rinſing the Pot and Horn, with half a pint of the ſame Wine; which he muſt alſo drink, and ſtand bridled ſix hours. Then give him moiſten'd Bran and Hay, and ſuffer him to eat and drink two hours. Then let him ſtand bridled all Night as before, and take the ſame Doſe next Morning; continuing the ſame method three, or, if need be, ſix days. When the knots are ripe, open 'em, if they do not break of their own accord; and having drawn out all the matter, dreſs 'em every day with the Ointment of *Portugal*.

An excellent Remedy for the Farcin.

If a Farcin be of ſo long ſtanding, that the Liver and Lungs are corrupted and waſted; or that it is accompanied with a running at the Noſe, or ſeizes on the Kernels; or that the knots void great pieces of fleſh, like large Muſhrooms; no Cure is to be expected, eſpecially after a ſucceſsleſs adminiſtration

Of an inveterate Farcin.

of the foregoing Remedies. However, if the Lungs are only dry'd, and but ſlightly ulcerated, ſomewhat may be done; or becauſe the condition of the Lungs is not eaſily trac'd, 'twill be proper to make a trial, by making the Horſe champ twenty four hours together, upon two Ounces of Aſſa fætida, ſpread upon a ſtick, and wrap'd up in a Cloth, without ſuffering him to eat or drink all the while; for a Horſe may faſt ſo long without danger. By this means he will caſt forth a prodigious quantity of filthy humours; and, if the Lungs be not conſum'd, or the Liver ulcerated, he may recover. And perhaps it would not be amiſs to put a ſecond ſtick of freſh Aſſa fætida into his Mouth, after twelve hours.

This done; if the Horſe be fleſhy and full of raw, tough and viſcous humors, like your *Dutch* bulky Horſes: *Infuſe ten Ounces of the ſhavings of Guaiacum-wood, or, for want of that, of Box-wood, in nine pints of Water, for twelve hours, on hot Aſhes. Then boil with a gentle heat in a cover'd Veſſel, to the conſumption of the third part of the Water.* Give the Horſe a quart of the ſtrain'd liquor every day, for eight days together, keeping him bridled three hours before and after, and then purge him; for the Decoction attenuates and prepares the humor for Evacuation.

If the Horſe be lean, dry and cholerick; *Put four Ounces of China Roots, cut very ſmall, into a large glaſs Bottle, well ſtop'd. After they've infus'd fifteen hours, boil 'em over a gentle Fire, in a cover'd Veſſel, to the conſumption of one half.* Give your Horſe a third part of the ſtrain'd liquor lukewarm, every Morning, keeping him bridled two hours before and after. It muſt be prepar'd freſh every three days, becauſe 'tis apt to ſowre. After eight Doſes, purge him, for this Decoction prepares

prepares the humors for Evacuation, without augmenting the heat.

For a Horſe of a middling nature, give, for ſix or eight days, the Decoction of *Sarſaperilla*, prepar'd like that of *China*, only allowing a third part more of *Sarſaperilla*, becauſe 'tis to prepare thicker humors, in order to purgation; which ſucceeds much better after a ſuitable preparation of the humors.

After Purgation, repeat the Decoctions to dry the habit of the Body. The ſame method of Cure is alſo very effectual for Coach-Horſes troubled with Pains or filthy Sores in their Legs; for this extirpates the Cauſe, and prevents Relapſes, which other methods will not do. Inſtead of the Decoctions, you may exhibit two Ounces of the powder of the reſpective Ingredients, in a quart of White-wine, tho' indeed the powders are not altogether ſo good, as the Decoctions; eſpecially that of *China* for lean, dry, and cholerick Horſes. Saſſafras in powder, is no deſpicable Medicine.

CHAP. XXX.

Of the Ebullition of the Blood, or Blood-Running Itch.

LOng reſt, and want of exerciſe, hindring the diſſipation of ſuperfluous humors; do uſually occaſion a redundancy of Blood, upon which its ſubtiler part, penetrating the ſubſtance of the fleſh, cauſes external tumors, oftentimes miſtaken for the Farcin; though the ſuddenneſs of their appearance, and their eaſy Cure, together with their ſoftneſs and looſeneſs, are plain diſtinguiſhing marks.

This Diſtemper is eaſily cured by bleeding plentifully once or twice in the Neck-Veins. If unſeaſonable bleeding occaſions a Fever, by repelling the humour, you muſt immediately inject a Glyſter; and an hour after give an ounce or two of Venice Treacle or Diateſſaron in wine; which will drive out the humour, and at laſt cure the Horſe.

Sometimes the exceſſive heat and boiling of the Blood, occaſions its forming it ſelf into little knots, or bunches, in ſeveral parts of the Body; which is effectually cur'd by giving every day an Ounce and an half of Liver of Antimony; or three or four Doſes of Cinnabar Pills; for ſuch Medicines cool and purify the Blood. Sal Prunellæ given in the Horſe's Bran, will prevent this Diſtemper, by expelling the bilious ſerioſities, and that perhaps by Urine.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the Molten Greaſe.

THE Molten Greaſe is a Diſtemper, to which fat Horſes are moſt ſubject; for their tough ſlimy humours (miſtaken for melted fat) are by virtue of an agitation and a provident ſtruggle of nature, thrown into the Guts, in order to Evacuation; and this caſe is beſt known, by putting one's hand into the Horſe's Fundament, for if the greaſe is molten, a whitiſh film will cover the Excrements thus drawn forth.

Upon the leaſt Suſpicion of the Molten Greaſe; put into the Horſe's Fundament, your Hand and Arm, anointed with freſh Butter; and draw forth not only the Dung, but all the ſlimy humours.

After

After you have rak'd him carefully, let him Blood in the Neck; and half an hour after inject a *Glyster, of two Ounces of Benedictum Laxativum, one Ounce of Sal Gemmæ, (or Sal Polychrest, or the Scoriæ of Liver of Antimony) and a quarter of a pound of Honey of Violets; all dissolved in two quarts of the common Decoction; adding Emetick Wine, and the Urine of a sound Man, of each a pint.* Then walk him gently, for half an hour, to make the Glyster work. After that, give him about half a pint of the juice of Housleek, mix'd with a pint of White-wine, walking him gently for the space of an hour; for that juice, both cools, cleanses and heals: Afterwards repeat the Glyster, and endeavour by all means to retrieve his Appetite.

I have often administred the following Glyster, with very good success. After you have rak'd your Horse, and allow'd him some time to rest, cut the Neck of a young Sheep or great Lamb in the Stable, receive the Blood into a hot Pipe, and inject it warm by way of Glyster; to be repeated every twelve hours, instead of all other Glysters; for it moistens and tempers the Guts, and is seldom or never thrown out till the usual time of dunging, when it appears clotted among the Excrements.

When the Disease is of longer standing, bleed your Horse, and half an hour after, give him two stinking Pills in a pint of Wine, or of Beer, if it be in Summer; an hour after repeat the same dose; and after a like interval, repeat it again. Half an hour after the last Dose, inject the following *Glyster. Boil two Ounces of the Scoriæ of Liver of Antimony, reduc'd to fine Powder, in five pints of Beer or Whey; after two or three brisk waums, remove the Vessel from the Fire, and adding a quarter of a pound of fresh Butter, inject the Glyster blood-warm.* For

want of the Glyſter; you may thruſt a piece of Soap into the Fundament.

If the Diſtemper be extreamly violent, and the Horſe is very reſtleſs and troubled with a vehement Palpitation of the Heart, and if a great deal of ſlime is drawn out of the Fundament; give him a Glyſter, of Sheep's Blood warm, every two hours: If the violence of the Diſeaſe ſtill continues, 'twill be convenient to give him three Doſes of the Pills, two or three hours after the laſt of the former Doſes, without fearing the ill conſequences of giving ſo large a Doſe; for the heat of theſe Pills is qualified by the Antimony, and the fix'd Salt, with which they abound.

This method will always ſucceed, if it be ſeaſonably begun; but if the firſt inſults are over-look'd, 'tis a dangerous caſe. If this Diſeaſe is attended by a running of much matter at the Noſe, 'tis a ſign of Death; eſpecially if the humors are frothy. If it be caus'd by violent exerciſe, or overheating, 'tis a hard matter to cure it. I have obſerved ſome Horſes ſeiz'd with it in the Stable, others after very moderate riding; and others again after the violent agitation of the Body, occaſion'd by Cholick Pains; in all which caſes the Cure is the ſame.

Since the ſtinking Pills, mention'd but now, are of excellent uſe for Horſes, not only in this, but in many other Diſtempers, 'twill not be improper to take a view of their Compoſition. 'Tis this,

The ſtinking Pills for Molten Greaſe, Foundering, Cholick and Fevers.

Take the reddeſt and cleareſt Aſſa fœtida, Bayberries of Provence *or* Italy, *and Liver of Antimony, of each an equal quantity; beat 'em to powder, and mix 'em carefully with a Peſtle, in a large Mortar, pouring on by degrees, a ſufficient quantity of Vinegar,*

to

to incorporate 'em. Make Pills weighing fourteen drams each, to be dried on the bottom of a hair Sieve, and kept as long as you will. In the ancient Compoſition, the Liver of Antimony was left out. But I chuſe to add it, becauſe it renders the Pills more agreeable to the Stomach, and more proper and ſafe in Fevers; and by promoting the inſenſible Tranſpiration, quickens the ſlow operation of the Aſſa fætida. This method of mixing all the powders together, is much preferable to the former way of diſſolving the Aſſa fætida in Vinegar, and evaporating the Solution to the thickneſs of Honey, and then adding the powders; for by this means the volatile Salt of the Aſſa fætida is retain'd, which in the other way would evaporate with the ſteams of the Vinegar; and the unſupportable ſtench and ſharp ſmell that uſually cauſes violent Head-aches, is corrected. Some would perſuade us, that the volatile Salt of the Aſſa fætida, is lodg'd in an Oily viſcous Subſtance, uncapable of evaporating with the Vinegar; but I am not of their opinion. Indeed, if the reddiſh pure Aſſa fætida, without any mixture of Earth or Wood, cannot be had; 'twill then be not only allowable, but neceſſary to diſſolve the impure Gum in Vinegar, and evaporate the ſtrain'd Solution to the thickneſs of Honey, and make Pills of that with the other powders; becauſe thoſe Impurities would weaken their Virtues. But at the ſame time they are certainly inferiour to thoſe prepar'd the other way. Aſſa fætida, the chief Ingredient of theſe Pills, is a Gum that grows in the *Indies* on a Buſh, with ſmall leaves reſembling Rue; and that in ſtony and dry places. It appears about the end of *Summer*, and is gather'd in *Autumn*. Notwithſtanding its ſtench, the *Indians* uſe it in their Sauces, and anoint their Pots,

Pots and drinking Veſſels with it. The beſt Aſſa fætida grows in the Province of *Utrad*, in the *Indies*; for that which comes from *Perſia*, grows on a Plant, with leaves like thoſe of a Fig-tree, and is much inferior to the other.

Theſe Pills are ſo univerſally uſeful, and withal ſo cheap and portable, that no body ſhould be without 'em. In the molting of the Greaſe, and Foundering, they are of ſingular uſe, if they be given as I directed above; only if the Horſe be founder'd, as ſoon as you let him Blood, you muſt pick his Feet, and pour Oil of Bay into his Fore-feet, ſtopping them with Flax, and laying hot Embers upon the Flax, with Splents over all; and renew the ſame Application thrice, once every ſix or four hours; and twenty four hours after ſuffer him to lie down. The Horſe muſt neither eat nor drink for four hours after the laſt of the three Doſes; nay, it would be convenient to keep him twenty four hours from drinking, and two or three days from Hay or Oats.

Three Doſes of theſe Pills, exhibited according to the above-mentioned Method, may perhaps cure that fatal kind of Cholick, call'd the red Gripes; being follow'd by a Glyſter of warm Sheep's, or Calf's Blood. In Fevers they are very proper, the Horſe being carefully cover'd up after the firſt Doſe; adding another Doſe next Morning, together with frequent Glyſters; for tho' the beating of his Flanks increaſes at firſt, it will abate quickly after.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of Worms, Bots, or Trunchions, bred in the Body of a Horſe.

WOrms are the product of crude undigeſted humors. The Remedies preſcrib'd againſt Worm-Cholicks are proper on this occaſion. To which we may add the following powder.

A powder for Worms.

Take the ſeeds of Coriander, Lettuce, Rapes and Colewort, of each two Ounces; Zedoary an Ounce; ſhavings of Hartſhorn, four Ounces: Make a powder. Doſe, two Ounces a day with Oats or Bran moiſten'd with Wine, for twelve days together; after which, give your Horſe a proper Purge; for Purgation is always neceſſary in this caſe.

A Steel Medicine for Worms.

The following Remedy is alſo very proper for killing Worms. *Take an Ounce of the filings of Steel, mixt with moiſten'd Bran*; give it to your Horſe daily, 'till he has eaten a whole pound; and then purge him. This Steel courſe is very proper for Horſes return'd from the Camp, or from a long Journey; for Worms are oftentimes the hidden cauſe of their not thriving. Beſides, Steel is an excellent Medicine againſt all obſtructions whatſoever.

The powder of Earthworms dry'd in an Oven, in an earthen Pot, cover'd, after they have vomited up all their filth by lying ſix hours in clean Water; giving every Morning from one to two Ounces in a quart of good Wine, for ſeven or eight days; is an effectual Remedy againſt Worms.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of Swaying of the Back, and Falls.

IF the Ligaments of the Bones of the Back are ſtretch'd by a fall; the Back is ſaid to be ſway'd: And if a Vein be broken within the Body, the extravaſated Blood curdles, and putrifies, and produces very dangerous Diſtempers. Mules are more ſubject to the ſwaying of the Back, than Horſes; becauſe the Ridge of their Back being higher, is not ſo firmly ſupported by their Ribs.

For the Cure: Take two pounds of Blood from the Neck-Veins immediately; and having chaf'd his Back with your hand, till it grow warm, apply two large ſcarifying Cupping-glaſſes, one on each ſide, where he complains moſt of pain, or where the extravaſated Blood is lodg'd. Then put your Horſe into a frame, and hang him up; or elſe encloſe him with Grates, ſo that he cannot move his Body, and let him remain in that poſture five or ſix Weeks. Then rub upon his Back, equal quantities of Spirit of Wine, and Oil of Turpentine, ſhaken together in a Viol till they grow white as Milk; after which, apply the red Honey Charge hot, adding half an Ounce of Galls, at every Application; and applying a freſh Charge every time, without taking away the former. This application will occaſion a ſwelling of the Back; which may afterwards be remov'd by the Baths and Fomentations preſcrib'd againſt Swellings. In want of the Honey Charge, you may apply the Ointment of *Montpelier* for two or three days; and then proceed to the Fomentations. If your Horſe voids Blood ſtill at the Mouth

Mouth or Noſe, give him every day Sal Polychreſt, and Juniper-berries beaten, of each an Ounce, in a pint of red Wine, for eight days together: And for the firſt four days inject every day an Anodyne Glyſter, after you have rak'd his Fundament.

If theſe Remedies prove ſucceſsleſs, as it often happens in very great Strains; make two or three inciſions with a large Iron ſlice, and ſeparate the Skin from the Fleſh on the Reins, (or that part of the back that lies behind a little Saddle) about the breadth of half a Foot, on each ſide of the Back-bone, 'till you come to the Hip-bone. Then ſtop the holes with ſlices of Hog's-lard, of the thickneſs of half a Crown, and two or three Fingers breadth long and broad, to hinder the Skin from growing to the Fleſh. Rub the ſeparate Skin with an Ointment made of equal parts of Populeum, and the Ointment of Marſhmallows; covering the whole part with a Lamb's-Skin, the woolly ſide inward; and laying a Saddle-cloth over all. Then hang up your Horſe, or fix him in ſuch a poſture, that he may not be able to ſtir; and give him a Glyſter every Night of Sal Polychreſt; and every day a Potion of an Ounce of Aſſa fætida in powder, mixt with a pint of Wine, for eight days together. After forty eight hours uncover the ſore place, and you will find it very much ſwollen; as it muſt be in order to the Cure. Take out the Lard, and preſs out the reddiſh matter in the Sore. Then put in freſh pieces of Lard, and chafe the whole part with the above-mention'd Ointment; after that, cover it up as before, and dreſs it after the ſame manner, once in forty eight hours, for the ſpace of twelve days. After which, omit the Lard, and dreſs it with the Duke's Ointment, keeping it cover'd and dreſſing it every day, till the Skin be reunited to the Fleſh, and the Sores heal'd. Twenty

two

two days after the beginning of the Cure, you may take away the Lamb's-Skin; and ten days after that ſuffer the Horſe to ſtir, walking him a little; and ſo accuſtoming him to Travel by degrees.

Inſtead of ſeparating the Skin, you may give the Fire (which is an eaſier, and no leſs effectual Remedy) piercing the Skin with a red hot Iron, and making holes all over the ſame part, at the diſtance of an Inch from each other. Then apply a good Plaiſter, and over that, two Sheets of Paper; after which, hang up your Horſe for a Month; and when the Scabs are fallen, dreſs the Sores with the Duke's Ointment, and proceed as before.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Of the ſwelling of the Cods or Stones; and of bruis'd or hard Stones.

THE ſwelling of the Cods or Stones, may proceed from a ſerous humor that deſcends along the production of the Peritonæum; or from a Defluxion, occaſion'd by the ſtroke of another Horſe; or from a Rupture or downfall of the Guts, occaſion'd by a Strain.

Of an Inflammation of the Cods.

If it be only a ſlight Inflammation, riding the Horſe into the cold Water will repel it. But if the Inflammation be violent, you muſt apply the following Pultis. *Take yellow Wax, freſh Butter, and Oil Olive, of each half a pound; ſtrong Vinegar, half a pint; boil 'em together, till the Vinegar be almoſt*

almoſt conſumed. Then remove the Veſſel from the Fire; and adding an Ounce of Camphyr, make a Pultis, to be applied to the ſwollen Cods, and renew'd after four Hours; without taking away the former, or covering the part. This will remove the Heat and Pain, and the Swelling too, if it be a ſimple Inflammation. But if the Swelling continues ſtill, and the Stones hang low, after the Heat and Pain are gone, 'tis a Sign of an Hydrocele, *i. e.* that by a Relaxation of the Peritonæum, the Cods are fill'd with Water; which, if retain'd, may corrupt the Stones, and occaſion a fatal Gangrene. In which caſe, after the Application of the former Pultis, you muſt make a ſort of Gruel of Barley-meal and Vinegar; and when 'tis almoſt boil'd, add half the quantity of Chalk, with a ſufficient quantity of Oil of Roſes and Quinces, and two Pugils of Salt; and apply it as hot as you can touch it with your Hand, binding it on very carefully. Or, inſtead of that, boil a ſufficient quantity of Beans in the Lees of Wine, till they grow ſoft; then beat 'em to a Maſh; to two pounds of which, add half an Ounce of Caſtor in fine powder, and ſew all up in a Bag, large enough to cover the Stones, to be bound on as hot as it can be ſuffer'd, the Cods being firſt anointed with the Ointment or Oil of Roſes. Twenty four Hours after, anoint again, and heat the Bag in the ſame Lees of Wine, in which the Beans were boil'd; continuing to renew the Application after the ſame manner, till the Swelling be abated.

Of an Hydrocele.

A Reſolvent Pultis.

If all proves ineffectual, and the Stones hang very low, and feel as if they contain'd a great deal of Water, you muſt geld your Horſe at the Full-Moon; and, if the Stones were not Ulcerated, the Wound may be eaſily heal'd.

A Cure for a Rupture. When by a Relaxation of the Peritonæum, the Guts fall into the Cods, you muſt endeavour to put up the fallen Gut with your Hands; or if you cannot do it otherwiſe, caſt the Horſe on his Back on ſoft Ground, and bind his two Legs on each Side together, and having bath'd the Stones with lukewarm Water, put up the Guts with your Hand. Then apply the following Bag.

Take the Roots of Comfrey, the Bark of the Pomgranate and Oak-Trees, Cyprus, Nuts, green Oak Apples, Sumach and Barberries, of each four Ounces; Annis and Fennel-ſeed, of each two Ounces; Flowers of Pomgranats, Chamomil, and Melilot, of each two handfuls; powder of crude Allum, half a pound. Put 'em altogether into a Bag, large enough to cover the Stones, and ſew it after the manner of a Quilt. Then boil this Bag for two Hours in a large potful of Sloe Wine; or, for want of that, of thick red Wine; after which, apply it moderately hot to the Stones, tying it on dexterouſly with a Bandage paſſing round the Flanks, and ty'd on the Rump, heating the Quilt in the ſame Wine, every twenty four Hours; and continuing the uſe of it for a conſiderable time. Afterwards the Cods may be fomented with Adſtringent Baths.

I have ſeen ſome Truſſes for Horſes, ſo dexterouſly made, that they could leap very well with them. But the ſureſt Remedy is to geld the Horſe, after the Guts are put up; for ſo the Cods ſhrink up, and the Guts fall no more down into them.

Of bruis'd or hard Stones. Sometimes the Stone grows dry and hard, by reaſon of a Contuſion, when a Horſe entangles himſelf among the Bars that are ſet up to ſeparate him from other Horſes; and ſometimes a Defluxion falls upon the

Light

Ligaments by which the Stone hangs, which is more dangerous.

If the Hardneſs and Contuſion be not very ſtubborn, it may be cur'd, by applying the following Pultis. *Take Honey and freſh Butter melted, of each half a pound; juice of green Coleworts, a pound; leaves of Rue, without the Stalks, a large handful; black Soap a quarter of a pound; Bean-flower, a pound.* Stamp the Rue in a Marble Mortar, then add the Honey, and afterwards the Juice of Coleworts, Butter, and black Soap. Mix them well without Heat, and with the Bean-flower make a Pultis to be applied cold with a Hog's Bladder, and kept on with a Bandage ty'd about the Horſe's Back; renewing the Application every Day. If the Swelling be accompanied with a great Inflammation, add to the whole Compoſition, two Drams of Camphyr, diſſolv'd in three Spoonfuls of Spirit of Wine. But if the Tumour be ſeated in the Ligaments above the Stone, you muſt chafe the part with Spirit of Wine Camphorated, before you apply the Cataplaſm.

If there is matter generated in the Stone, apply to the part where the matter ſeems to be ſeated, Emplaſtrum Divinum, ſpread on very ſoft Leather; then apply the Pultis, and, if there be any matter, the Plaiſter will draw it. The Plaiſter muſt be taken off once a Day, but needs not be chang'd.

You muſt let the Horſe Blood in the beginning and end of the Cure; and give him two Ounces of Sal Prunellæ every Day mix'd with Bran, which muſt be his only Food.

If the matter appears ſo high above the Stones, that it cannot be conveniently evacuated, you muſt open a Paſſage with a red hot Iron at the bottom of the Cod, without touching the Stone.

Then anoint the Cod with Baſilicum, and lay over it Beet-leaves ſmear'd with Butter; putting into the Hole a Tent anointed with Emplaſtrum Divinum melted in Oil of Roſes; which indeed is an excellent Remedy, in all caſes, where a Sore is required to be kept open.

This Method regularly purſu'd, will certainly cure the Horſe without Gelding; which is to no purpoſe, when the Malady is ſeated in the Ligaments; and is always dangerous, till the pain be aſſuag'd and the defluxion ſtopt.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of the Lask, Looſneſs, or Flux of the Belly.

THE Laſk or Flux, which is frequently fatal to Horſes, is occaſion'd by ſuch a Weakneſs of the Stomach, that the Food paſſes thro' the Guts almoſt without any Alteration, (which is a very dangerous Caſe;) or by the Corruption of Humours either gather'd in the Stomach, or thrown upon it from other Parts. The External Cauſes, are, eating too much Provender, feeding upon mouldy or rotten Hay, frozen Graſs, Rye-ſtraw, and other unwholeſome Nouriſhment; drinking very cold Water, immoderate Fatigue, exceſſive Fatneſs, drinking immediately after the eating of a great quantity of Oats; and ſometimes, want of Exerciſe. If the Excrements voided boil and ferment upon the Ground, the Diſtemper proceeds from over-heated Choler, and is rarely dangerous, nay ſometimes profitable. If the Excrements are white, 'tis a Sign of

of crude cold Humours; if they be watery, they denote a great Weakneſs of the Stomach. Looſneſſes occaſion'd by drinking cold Water in Summer, or melted Snow, or eating tender Graſs, or other looſening Things, are not to be regarded: But thoſe which come without a manifeſt External Cauſe, ought never to be neglected.

As for the Cure: If the Excrements are mix'd with ſmall Pieces or Scrapings of the Guts, you muſt immediately endeavour to prevent a fatal Ulcer in thoſe Parts, by giving two or three times a day a pint of a cooling ſoftning Decoction; *viz. Of two Ounces of Barley, the like quantity of the Roots of Marſh-mallows, and an Ounce of the powder of Sal Prunellæ, boiled in three quarts of Water to a quart.* If the Diſtemper is caus'd by Flegm, you muſt have recourſe to Cordial Powders, or Pills, and other hot Remedies, capable to ſtrengthen the Stomach, and relaxated Parts.

Sometimes a Looſneſs is a ſeaſonable Effort of Nature, to free it ſelf of a troubleſome Load of Humours: But if it continues above three Days, with the Loſs of Appetite, it muſt be ſeaſonably check'd; for ſometimes Horſes are founder'd by its long Continuance.

In this Caſe, the Horſe's Food may be Bran moiſten'd with Claret, or Barley parch' on a Peel, and then ground, and the beſt Hay: But Oats are altogether improper. As for Remedies, you may begin with a ſcouring Glyſter, *viz.*

A Scouring Glyſter.

Take Wheat-bran well ſifted, and whole Barley, of each two handfuls; red Roſes, a handful; true Opium ſlic'd ſmall, half a Dram; boil 'em in Whey or ſteel'd Water for the ſpace of a quarter of an hour; then add the Leaves of wild Succory, Agrimony, Beets, white Mullein, and Mercury, of each a handful.

In two quarts of the ſtrain'd Decoction diſſolve the yolks of ſix Eggs; Honey of Roſes and brown Sugar, of each four Ounces. Mix and make a Glyſter. After the Operation of the Glyſter, give him two Ounces of Liver of Antimony, or half an Ounce of the Golden Sulphur of Antimony, in moiſtened Bran, perſiſting in this Method for a conſiderable time; for theſe Medicines corroborate the Guts, and allay the Fermentation of the Humours. This done, you may inject an adſtringent Glyſter: For inſtance,

A Binding Glyſter. *Take Knotgraſs (or Shepherd's purſe) and white Mullein, of each a handful; Plantane-leaves, two handfuls; wild Pomgranate-flowers, half a handful; the ſeeds of Myrtle, Lettuce, and Plantane; of each two Ounces. Beat the ſeeds, and boil 'em in three quarts of Beer or Barley-water, with half a dram of good Opium cut into thin ſlices; then put in the Herbs, and afterwards a handful of dry'd Roſes. Add to the ſtraining, half a pound of Honey of Roſes, and four Ounces of Sugar of Roſes. Make a Glyſter.*

A Potion for the Flux. If the Flux be not ſtopp'd by the uſe of the Antimony, you may continue to repeat the Glyſters; and at the ſame time, give the following Potion. *Take eight large or ten ſmall Nutmegs, put 'em upon a point of a Knife, and hold 'em over a Candle till they be burnt to a red Coal; then caſt 'em into a quart of Claret, breaking them with your Fingers; and after they have ſtood in infuſion all Night, ſtrain out the Wine in the Morning,* and make your Horſe drink it blood-warm; keeping him bridled two hours before and after. This is an excellent Remedy for Men, as well as Horſes.

For

A Remedy for a Superpurgation.

For a Superpurgation in a Horſe: *Take of Plantane-leaves in Summer, or the ſeeds in Winter, a ſufficient quantity. Boil 'em in three quarts of Beer; and add to the ſtraining, Catholicum, two Ounces; Rhubarb and Seal'd Earth, of each four Ounces.* Make a Glyſter, to be repeated twice or thrice. In the mean time, exhibit a Potion of two quarts of Milk, in which you have quench'd Steel five or ſix times; mix'd with two Ounces of the ſtones of roaſted Grapes, and an Ounce and an half of the ſhavings of Ivory, calcin'd, and beaten to a very fine powder.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the Falling of the Fundament.

THE Falling out of the Fundament is occaſioned by a violent Flux, or the Piles, obliging the Horſe to ſtrain violently; or (as it often happens) by cutting off the Tail; in which caſe, if it is accompanied with a great ſwelling, 'tis almoſt always a fatal ſign of a Gangrene ſpreading towards the Back: And if it does not quickly yield to the ordinary Remedies, the Horſe may be given over for loſt.

This Malady ought never to be neglected; for it may be attended with dangerous Conſequences: And therefore you muſt anoint the place with Oil of Roſes bloodwarm, and afterwards endeavour to put it up. After two or three ſucceſsleſs attempts, you muſt have recourſe to what follows.

Beat ſix drams of the Salt of Lead in a Mortar, pouring on it by degrees a ſufficient quantity of

Goat's Milk, or, for want of that, of Cow's Milk, till they aſſume the Conſiſtency of a liquid Ointment. Anoint the Part with this Ointment, and put into the Fundament a Tent dip'd in the ſame; repeating the Application from time to time. Or,

Take powder of burnt Oyſter-ſhells, two Ounces; the green middle Bark of an Aſh-tree beaten, four Ounces; or, for want of that, two Ounces of the dry Bark; good Honey, a quarter of a pound; and half a pound of the leaven'd Dough of a Rye-loaf ready to be put into the Oven. Make a Pultis without heat, to be applied cold to the Fundament; renewing the Application every twelve Hours.

If theſe Applications are not attended with Succeſs, as ſoon as the Inflammation and great Heat are remov'd, you muſt cut off the part of the Fundament that hangs out, with a ſharp Knife, heated red-hot, to prevent a Flux of Blood.

If the Fundament ſhrinks into its place when the Horſe reſts, and falls out again when he trots, 'tis a Sign of a Fiſtula: In which caſe, the beſt and moſt ſucceſsful Way, is to tie a piece of ſtrong Packthread about it, and cut it quite off with a red-hot Knife; anointing the Wound afterwards every Day with Album Rhaſis, and then rubbing the Fleſh with Siccativum Rubrum.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of Warts, Chops, Pains, Ratt-tails, Mules, and other foul and watery Sores in a Horſe's Legs; and of ſwollen and gouty Legs, occaſion'd by ſuch Sores: Together with a deſcription of the Compoſition and Virtues of the white Honey-Charge.

Warts.

ONE of the beſt Secrets in the World for Warts in Horſes Limbs, and likewiſe for the Knots of the Farcin, is the following *Recipe.*

Put three Ounces of Powder of Copperas into a Crucible, with an Ounce of Arſenick in Powder. Place the Crucible in a Charcoal-fire, ſtirring the matter from time to time, but carefully avoiding the ſteams. Continue a pretty ſmart degree of heat, till the whole matter be ſomewhat reddiſh; then take the Crucible off the fire, and, after 'tis cool'd, break it, and beat the matter to a very fine Powder. Incorporate four Ounces of this Powder with five Ounces of Album Rhaſis; and make an Ointment to be applied cold to the Warts, anointing them ſlightly every day; and they will fall off like kernels of Nuts, without cauſing any ſwelling in the Legs. But you muſt take care to anoint only the Warts, and neither to work nor ride the Horſe during the application of the Ointment. When the Warts are fallen of, which will happen in a Month's time; dreſs the Sores with the Counteſs's Ointment, and in a Month more the Cure will be compleated, for the Sores are uſually very deep, when the Warts are large.

Some

Of Cracks or Chops. Sometimes a ſharp malignant Humour fretting the Skin, occaſions Clefts and Chops on the bough of the Paſterns; which are accompanied with Pain and a very noiſome ſtench. In this caſe, ſhave away the Hair from the ſore place, in order to keep it clean; and apply the white Honey Charge, or the Coachman's Ointment, which will quickly heal the Chops, if you renew the Application from time to time. If foul Fleſh retards the Cure, touch it with Spirit of Vitriol two hours before the application of the Charge. The Oil of Hempſeed, or that of Linſeed ſhak'd in a Vial with an equal quantity of Brandy, is alſo very proper to qualifie the ſharp Humours, and to heal and dry up the Chops. If theſe Remedies do not operate effectually, apply one of the drying Ointments. When a Horſe is ſubject to theſe Clefts, I take it to be the beſt way to keep the Paſterns continually ſhav'd, and to cut the Hair off thoſe places as often as the Main, taking care not to cut the Fetlock.

Of the Pains and watery Sores in the Legs. Sometimes a ſtinking fretting Matter iſſues out of the Pores, and deadens the Skin of the Paſtern and Fetlock Joynt, and even of the whole Leg, and ſometimes is ſo corroſive, that it looſens the Hoof from the Coronet at the Heel, appearing on the Skin with a white colour. This is always uſher'd in by a ſwelling, and accompanied with pain; and at laſt aſſumes ſuch a venomous quality, that 'tis ſucceeded by Warts and Clefts. It appears uſually at the firſt ſide of the Paſterns, and afterwards aſcends to the middle of the Leg, peeling off ſome part of the Hair. If it continues any time, the whole Part is over-run with Warts, Clefts, and Nodes, which make the Cure very difficult. As for the Cure: Take away two pounds of

of Blood as ſoon as you perceive it; then give him every Morning for eight days together, the Decoction of Guaiacum or Box-wood, and afterwards purge him; obſerving the ſame method as was preſcrib'd for an inveterate Farcin. This method will remove and prevent all ſorts of Infirmities in the Legs of Coach-Horſes. In the mean time you muſt immediately ſhave away the Hair, and, if the Leg be not gourded, rub the ſore places very hard with a Wiſp, and then apply the following Ointment.

An Ointment to dry up Watry Sores.

Take a pound of black Soap; an ordinary glaſs-ful of Spirit of Wine; two Ounces of common Salt beaten ſmall; three Ounces of burnt Allum, with a ſufficient quantity of Meal; make an Ointment, to be applied to the place without any bandage or cover. The next day waſh the part very clean with a new made Lye, and ſo renew the application of the Ointment from time to time.

The Ointment of Oldenburg *for the ſame uſe.*

Take two Pounds of Common Honey; put them in a new glaz'd Pot, over a very ſmall Fire. As ſoon as it begins to boil, remove it from the Fire, and incorporate with it Verdigreaſe in fine Powder, and white Vitriol groſsly beaten, of each four Ounces. Then ſet the Pot again on a ſmall Fire, ſtirring the matter, and add two Ounces of Galls, in very fine Powder. Take it off again from the Fire, and after ſtirring it for ſome time, add an Ounce of Sublimate, beaten very ſmall, ſtirring all together till they be cold. And then you may make it ſtronger, by adding four Ounces of Aqua-fortis. This Ointment may be kept a long time. Anoint the Sore ſlightly with it every day. For Warts indeed you need not be ſo cautious. If the

Legs

Legs are not gourdy, this will certainly do: But if the Legs are ſwollen and gourdy, you muſt take what follows.

A Water for Pains and Warts in ſwollen and gourdy Legs.

Take white Vitriol and Allum, of each a pound and a half; boil them in a clean glaz'd Earthen Pot, with five pints of Water, to the conſumption of one half. Cut off the Hair, and make the Sore very clean, and bathe it every Evening with this Water; which is the beſt Medicine I ever us'd.

The Coachman's Ointment for Sores in Legs that are not gourdy.

If the Legs are not Gourdy, the following Ointment is a cheap and effectual Remedy for Pains, Clefts, Mules, and Rat-Tails. *Take common Honey, and Powder of Copperas, of each a pound and a half; mix them in a Pot, over a gentle fire, ſtirring them conſtantly till they begin to boil; then take off the Pot, and when the matter is half cold, add an Ounce of Arſenick in powder. Then ſet it on the Fire again, ſtirring it till it begins to boil. Then take it off, ſtirring it perpetually till it grows cold, but ſo as to avoid the noiſome ſmell.* Anoint the parts ſlightly with this Ointment, once every two days, the part being firſt ſhav'd and rub'd with a wiſp. If you lay either this, or *Oldenburg's* Ointment, too thick upon the part, 'twill raiſe a Scab, inſtead of drying up the Sore.

A Cure for gourdy Legs, occaſion'd by theſe Sores.

The ſwellings accompanying theſe Sores, are cur'd by ſhaving the Hair about the ſore place very cloſe, and anointing every day with Oil of Linſeed, mix'd and ſhaken with Brandy; renewing the mixture every time it is uſed. If that does not ſucceed, you muſt apply the white Honey-Charge, renewing it every day, and at every dreſſing, wiping away all the matter with Flax. If the gourdy Legs are cover'd with Warts, the following

following Remedy will make them fall away by degrees; being call'd, by reaſon of the durableneſs of its effect, the Perpetual Cauſtick.

Lapis Infernalis, or the perpetual Cauſtick.

Put an Ounce of ſtrong Aqua-fortis, with half an Ounce of Silver-Lace, burnt, waſh'd, and dry'd, into a Matrice; placing it on hot Aſhes, till the Silver be diſſolv'd, which quickly turns reddiſh. Then augmenting the Fire, evaporate all the Aqua-fortis, and there will remain at the bottom a brown matter, which muſt be kept dry and cover'd. This Medicine, call'd *Lapis Infernalis*, might be made more effectual and proper for Men; by taking two Ounces of the Filings, or thin plates of fine Silver, diſſolv'd in five Ounces of ſtrong Aqua-fortis; and pouring the Solution into a glaſs Cucurbit, cover'd with its Alembick; and drawing off one half of the Aqua-fortis, with a heat of Aſhes or Sand. After the Veſſel is cool'd, you will find at the bottom a certain matter, in a ſaline form; which muſt be ſet on a ſmall Fire, in a pretty large *German* Crucible, (to prevent its boiling over) till the ebullition ceaſes, and a matter ſinks to the bottom; after which augment the Fire a little, and the matter will aſſume the form of Oil at the bottom of the Crucible. Pour this Oil-like ſubſtance, into a very clean Mould, ſomewhat hot, and anointed with Tallow, where it will grow as hard as a Stone; and afterwards keep it in a well ſtop'd Glaſs-bottle, and in a dry place. This Stone alone rubb'd upon Warts every day, will deſtroy them; or, to prevent waſte, the ſmalleſt pieces of it may be beaten to powder, and ſtrew'd upon the Warts; after which the Scabs will quickly fall away. The ſecond Preparation is very effectual againſt Cancers in Men, if they be touch'd with it every day, till they fall away. 'Tis likewiſe proper againſt Figs, proud-

proud-fleſh, and other Excreſcencies. The Silver intangling the Aqua-fortis, keeps up the ſolid form; which Copper, Iron, and ſuch like imperfect Metals would not do.

If the Hoof is ſeparated from the Coronet at the Heel, the white Honey Charge will cure it, and make the Hoof grow. The Compoſition of that Medicine is as follows.

The white Honey Charge and Plaiſter.

Boil eighteen large Lilly Roots, chopt, (or, for want of theſe, *a pound and a quarter of the powder of Linſeed) in two gallons of Whey,* which I take to be better than Beer. When the Roots begin to grow ſoft and cleave under your Finger, add *leaves of Mallows and Marſh-mallows, without the Stalks, of each ten handfuls.* Boil till all be reduc'd to a Maſh, pouring in Whey from time to time, to make up the waſt. Then ſtrain the Maſh through a hair-ſieve turn'd upſide down; and boil the ſtraining for ſome time with Tallow and Butter, of each a pound, ſtirring all the while. Then remove the Veſſel from the Fire, and as ſoon as you perceive that the boiling is perfectly ceas'd, incorporate the Ingredients with Honey and common Turpentine, of each a pound. If it be not thick enough, thicken it with Wheat-flower; but the better way is to boil the Maſh at firſt to ſuch a Conſiſtency, as ſhall not need any Flower to thicken it. It muſt be kept well cover'd; and tho' it appears mouldy, it may be very good nearer the bottom. If the moiſture was well evaporated in the boiling, 'twill keep two Months in a dry place. If it be too thick, you may add a little Beer, when you uſe it. 'Tis applied cold with Flax, to the ſore place ſhav'd, after the manner of a Pultis, renewing the application once a day, till the Sores be dry'd up; taking care to wipe off the matter from time to time, and to keep the Hair

Hair very ſhort, for it grows very faſt, during the uſe of this Remedy. It ought to be bound on with broad Liſts of Cloth, after the manner of an Expulſive Bandage. Inſtead of this Charge, Farriers are wont to apply the white Plaiſter, which does a little temper the ſharp humours, but does not aſſuage the ſwelling. 'Tis prepar'd thus. *Boil half a pound of Honey, with a Litron of fine Wheat-flower, and a pint of Milk; ſtirring them gently over a little fire, till they begin to incorporate and grow thick. Then adding four Ounces of common Turpentine, and two Ounces of Oil Olive, continue boiling and ſtirring for ſome time, and apply it as you do the Honey Charge.* This is a cheap Remedy, and not altogether ineffectual, when the ſores are ſmall, and not inveterate.

A Mercurial Ointment to diſſolve Swellings in the Legs.

Sometimes after a long Application of the Honey Charge, the humours being condenſated upon the fleſh, and the moiſture dry'd up, make the Legs ſwollen and hard. In which caſe, *Take half a pound of Quickſilver, and four Ounces of the powder of Brimſtone: Incorporate them in a Mortar with the Peſtle, till the Quickſilver be kill'd. Then adding a pound of Tallow, mix and make an Ointment.* Shave off the Hair very cloſe, and afterwards rub the part with a Surcingle till it grows hot, without making it raw; then apply this Ointment, holding a red-hot Iron-bar near the part, to make it penetrate the deeper. Wrap it about with a Hog's-Bladder, and lay a cover over that, binding on the dreſſing with a piece of Liſt, not Cords which leave an impreſſion. Renew the application as before, every 48 hours, omitting the rubbing with the Surcingle. This Ointment never fails to cure inveterate hard ſwellings, unleſs they follow a Farcin, or the Horſe be old; in which caſe the cure is abſolutely impoſſible.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of Halter-Caſt.

SOmetimes Horſes endeavouring to ſcrub their Head, Neck, or any other itching part with their hinder Feet, intangle their Foot in the Halter; and by ſtruggling violently to Diſengage themſelves, occaſion very dangerous hurts in the hollow of the Paſtern. In this caſe, clip away the Hair; and anoint the part Morning and Evening with equal quantities of Linſeed Oil and Brandy, well mix'd by ſhaking in a glaſs; taking care in the mean time to keep the Foot very clean. I once cur'd a Horſe that had cut the inſide of his Paſtern to the bone, upon the two Chains, with which he was ty'd, by clipping off the Hair, applying once a day the white Honey Charge bound up with a cover, and anointing the Leg with the Duke's Ointment, and applying at the ſame time to the Coronet, which was ſwollen and inflam'd, an adſtringent of the powder of unſlack'd Lime, mix'd with the ſecond Water; for I was afraid he ſhould have caſt his Hoof. During the Cure, there fell off Eſcars; and all the Farriers doom'd him to irrecoverable Lameneſs; but in a Month's time he was cur'd, and did not halt above ſix Weeks. 'Tis true, many Horſes do not eſcape ſo well: However this may ſerve for an Inſtance of the efficacy of the white Honey Charge. If the hurts be ſmall, without a ſwelling, black Soap with Spirit of Wine, or the Oil remaining after the evaporation of Wine, mix'd with Oil in an equal quantity, or the Duke's Ointment, will quickly heal them.

The End of the Second Part.

AN

APPENDIX

CONTAINING

A Deſcription of ſome Diſeaſes, and the Receipts of ſome noted Medicines, omitted by Monſ. *Solleyſel.* Extracted from the beſt Authors on that Subject.

Of the Anticor.

THE Anticor is a dangerous Sickneſs, ariſing from redundancy or inflammation of the Blood, occaſioned either by high Feeding, without Exerciſe; or by hard Riding. In this Diſeaſe the corrupt and inflam'd Blood rendevouzing about the Heart, gathers into a viſible Swelling in the middle of the Breaſt, juſt oppoſite to the Heart, from whence the word Anticor is deriv'd. Before this Swelling appears, the Horſe groans when laid down, and hanging down

his Head refuſes to eat. If this Swelling aſcends to the Throat, 'tis preſent Death. To prevent this Diſtemper the Horſe ought to be bled before he is turn'd to Graſs, or put to feed in the Stable, and likewiſe two or three Months after; eſpecially if his Blood be black and thick, which is a ſign of Inflammation and Corruption. As for the Cure: Immediately upon the appearance of the Swelling, draw a large quantity of Blood from the Plate-Veins, or if you cannot find them, from both ſides of the Neck. Then give him a Drink of Diapente, with Ale, adding an Ounce of brown Sugar-Candy, and half an ounce of *London* Treacle. After that rub the Swelling every Day till it become ſoft, with Hog's-greaſe, Boar's-greaſe, and Baſilicon, incorporated together in equal quantities. Then open it, and waſh the Sore with *Copperas-Water, made of two quarts of Water, half a pound of green Copperas, an handful of Salt, a Spoonful of Honey, and a Branch of Roſemary, all boil'd together, to the conſumption of half the Liquor, the quantity of a Walnut of Allum being added before it is taken off the Fire.* After you have waſh'd the Sore, apply an Ointment made of *Roſin and Wax, of each the quantity of a Walnut, melted together, half a pound of clean Hog's-greaſe, a ſpoonful of Honey, a pound of Turpentine, and an ounce of Verdigreaſe in fine powder.* Some chuſe to ſtrike the Swelling in divers places with a Fleam, that the Corruption may iſſue forth; and then anoint it with Hog's-Greaſe made warm.

Of

Of Bleymes.

A Bleyme is an Inflammation between the Sole and the Bone of the Foot towards the Heel. There are three ſorts of Bleymes: The firſt being generated in ſpoiled wrinkled Feet with narrow Heels, are uſually ſeated in the inward or weakeſt Quarter. In this caſe, pare the Hoof betimes, and let forth the Matter, which is almoſt always of a brown colour; then pour in Oil de Merveille, charging the Hoof with a Remolade of Soot and Turpentine. Theſe Bleymes are prevented by keeping the Horſe's Feet clean and moiſt, and making him ſtand five or ſix hours every Day in his own Dung, moiſten'd with Water; and knocking down the Heel when he is ſhod, that the Sinew may be extended, and ſo prevent the ſhrinking of the inſide of the Hoof, by which the Bleymes are almoſt always occaſion'd.

The ſecond ſort, beſides the uſual Symptoms of the firſt, infects the Griſtle, and muſt be extirpated, as in the cure of a Quitter-bone; giving the Horſe every Day moiſten'd Bran, with two ounces of Liver of Antimony, to divert the courſe of the Humors, and purifie the Blood.

The third ſort is occaſion'd by ſmall Stones and Gravel between the Shoe and the Sole. For cure, pare the Foot, let out the Matter, if there be any, and dreſs the Sore like a Prick of a Nail. If there is no Matter, take out the bruis'd Sole.

Of Seymes or Falſe-Quarters.

A Falſe-Quarter is a Cleft (for the moſt part) on the inſide of the Hoof, accompany'd with a violent Pain, and ſometimes bleeding, and opening as the Horſe ſets his Foot to the Ground. This Diſtemper is only the effect of a dry and brittle Hoof, and narrow Heels. For cure; cut away the old corrupt Hoof, and then take *the Whites of nine Eggs, the Powder of Incenſe, unſlack'd Lime, Maſtick, Verdigreaſe, and Salt, of each three Ounces*; mingle theſe together, then dip in as much Hurds as will cover the Fore-Hoof, lay it on, and all about it lay Swine's-greaſe, an Inch thick or more; do this alſo below it. And tie it on ſo as that it may not be ſtirr'd for a whole Fortnight at leaſt: Then apply it freſh again; and the Horſe will require no other dreſſing to accompliſh the Cure. If the Horſe ſtarts or ſhrinks when you lay your Finger on the Falſe-Quarter, 'tis a ſign Corruption is gather'd within it; in which caſe, open it with a Drawing-knife, let out the Corruption, and lay on a Plaiſter of Horſe-dung, Salt and Vinegar.

Others commend the following Method: Draw the Falſe-Quarter with a Drawing-Iron ſo near to the Quick, that a dewy moiſture flows out; then put a Hoop of Wood, about an Inch broad and very thin, twice about the Cronet, faſtening it on both ſides with a piece of Filleting; the place being firſt anointed, as well as the Hurds, with the following Ointment.

Take of the Roots of Hart's-Tongue, Comfrey and Mallows, of each half a Pound: Having ſlic'd 'em ſmall, boil 'em in two Quarts of Alicant, till the Roots become ſoft: Then ſtrain 'em thro' a fine Searcer, and add, of *Venice Turpentine, New-wax, Bur-*

Burgundy-Pitch, of each half a Pound; black Pitch, four Ounces; of the oldeſt Oil-Olive a Quart; melt and boil all (bathing the Turpentine) till they be well incorporated; then take 'em off the Fire, and put in your Turpentine, ſtirring it till it be cold.

Of the Curb.

A Curb is a long Swelling, reſembling a Pear, upon the back part of the Heel of the Knee of the Hinder-leg, occaſioned by carrying great Burthens, or Strains when Horſes are young, which weaken the great Sinew. For cure; apply whatever is good for a Spavin; or bind the Hoof ſtrait with a broad Incle a little above the Curb; then rub and beat the Curb with a ſmooth Hazel-ſtick; after that thruſt out the Corruption, and put into the Hole two Barley-corns of White-Mercury for twenty four Hours. This done, anoint it once a Day with melted Butter.

Of a Jardon.

A Jardon is a callous Humor upon the Hough, cauſing Lameneſs, and occaſion'd by ſuch Exerciſes as throw the whole weight of the Body upon the Hough, eſpecially by ſudden ſtops upon Galloping. For the moſt part it is Hereditary. For cure; apply a reſolvent Plaiſter made of *Diachylum cum Gummis, Cinnabar, Bdellium, Opopanax, and Ammoniacum, mixt with Oil of Spike, Turpentine, and new Wax:* And after the Plaiſter has been us'd ſeven or eight Days, give the Fire.

Of a String-halt.

HIgh-mettled Horſes are ſubject to an ugly Diſtemper call'd the String-halt, for the moſt part in the Hinder-Legs; in which they pull up the affected Leg much higher than the other, twitching it up as if he trod on Needles. For cure; Take up the middle Vein above, and underneath the Thigh; and under it you'll find a String, which you muſt cut away with a ſharp Knife; and then anoint the place once a day with the following Ointment.

Take of the Oil of Worms, Petroleum, Oil of Nerval, Piece-greaſe (made of the ſhreds of Shoemakers Leather) *and Oil of Spike, of each an Ounce*; London *Treacle, two Ounces*; *Hog's-greaſe, a Pound*; melt all together, and after that ſtir it till it be cold. Anoint the place every Day for eight days together, holding a hot Fire-pan to the place, to make the Ointment ſink the deeper. After the inunction, wiſp him with a ſoft Thumb-band of Hay, from the Paſtern to the top of the Hoof; taking care to keep him warm, and not to ride him hard for a Month.

Of the Bone-ſpavin.

THE Bone or Dry-ſpavin is a Swelling as big as a Walnut on the inſide of the Hoof, juſt under the Joint, and near the Maſter-Vein. 'Tis at firſt ſoft, but in time it grows as hard as a Bone, and ſticks very cloſe to the Bone, making the Horſe lame. 'Tis a hard matter to cure it; however you may try the following Remedies.

Take

Take equal quantities of *Unguentum Apoſtolorum* and White-Sublimate, and apply it upon a Pledgit to the Spavin, having firſt caſt the Horſe, and open'd and ſcal'd the Spavin with a ſharp Inſtrument; defend the adjacent Parts, eſpecially the Maſter-Vein, from the Corroſive, by applying dry Lint; and take care you do not touch the Maſter-Vein when you lay open the Spavin. Above the Corroſive lay a Plaiſter of Pitch, Roſin, Turpentine and Hog's-greaſe, round about the Hoof. After twenty four Hours open it, and if the Corroſive has not ſufficiently conſum'd it, apply a freſh one. After that dreſs the Wound with a warm Salve of Turpentine, Deer's-ſuet, and Wax.

To prevent a Swelling from running into a Spavin, ſhave away the Hair about it, and anoint it two or three Days with Natural Balſam; and then lay on a Charge made of *three Ounces of the Oil of Roſes, an Ounce of Bole-Armoniack, half an Ounce of Wheat-flower, and the White of an Egg.*

Of the Blood-ſpavin.

THE Blood or Wet-Spavin is a Swelling on the Hoof, continually ſupplied with Blood from the Maſter-Vein. 'Tis eaſier cur'd than a Bone-Spavin. The beſt Remedy is this: Having ſhav'd off the Hair, and taking up the Vein, letting it bleed as long as it will, apply twice a Day a Catapláſm of Cow's-Dung, and bruis'd Linſeed, as hot as it can be endur'd. When this has ripen'd the Spavin, break it, and lay on a Plaiſter of Pitch, which muſt not be remov'd till it falls off of it ſelf.

Of the Hough-bonny.

HOugh-bonny is a round Swelling on the Elbow of the Hoof, proceeding from a bruiſe, by beating againſt a Poſt, or otherwiſe. For cure; pull the Sore a little from the Sinew, and pierce it to the bottom with a red hot Iron, ſharp at the end like a big Bodkin, and ſomewhat bending at the point. Having thruſt out all the Jelly, tent the hole with Flax dipt in Turpentine and Hog's-greaſe melted together, and anoint the out ſide with warm Hog's-greaſe. Continue thus, making the Tent leſſer and leſſer till the Sore be cur'd. But above all, the beſt Remedy is what follows: Apply to the Swelling, Hay boil'd in old Urine; and if it comes to Suppuration, lance it in the loweſt part with a thin hot Iron: When the matter is let out, tent it with a Salve of Turpentine, Deer's-ſuet, and Wax, laying above it a Plaiſter of the ſame Ingredients.

Of a Cramp.

A Cramp is the contraction of the Sinews of any one Limb. For cure; chafe it with Vinegar and common Oil, and then wrap it all over with wet Hay, rotten Litter, or Woolen-cloaths.

Of

Of the over-ſtretching or relaxation of a Sinew.

TAke Blood from the Shackle Veins in the Paſtern, then flea a very fat Puppy Dog, of two Months old; immediately after he is kill'd bruiſe his Fleſh and Bones together, lay them on a Cloth, and bind it cloſe to the Sinew-ſtrain as warm as you can, having firſt bath'd it with Brandy, and taken care to throw away the Dog's Guts. Some prefer a fat Cat us'd in like manner.

Of Gaunt-Belly'd or Light-Belly'd Horſes.

IF a Horſe's Belly ſhrinks up towards his Flanks, you may conclude he is very coſtive, and afflicted with much unnatural Heat, and will always be very waſhy and tender, and very unhealthy after hard Labour. In order to cure, you muſt know that all Horſes have two ſmall Strings, extending from the Cods to the bottom of the Belly, one on each ſide. Theſe Strings you muſt break with your Fingers, and then anoint the place every Day with Freſh-Butter, and the Ointment Populeon mix'd in equal quantities.

Of the Ambury.

AN Ambury is a great ſpongy Wart full of Blood, with a Root like a Cock's Stone, happening for the moſt part about the Eye-brows, Noſtrils or Privy-parts. For cure; tie a Horſe-hair (which is much better than a Thread) hard about the Wart, and in ſeven or eight Days 'twill fall off. If the Wart be ſo flat that you cannot bind any thing about it, take it away with a ſharp hot Iron, cutting it round about, and ſo deep as to leave none of the Root behind; and then dry it up with the Powder of Verdigreaſe. In ſinewy places, where a hot Iron is improper, eat out the Core with White Sublimate, then ſtop the Hole with Flax dip'd in the White of an Egg for a Day or two, and at laſt dry it up with unſlack'd Lime and Honey.

Of the Cords.

THE Cords is a String that runs from the Shacle-Vein to the Griſtle in the Noſe and between the Lip; or two Strings lying betwixt the Knee and the Body, which run through the Body to the Noſtrils, making a Horſe to ſtumble and fall. As for the cure; ſome take the ſharp end of a crook'd Hart's horn, and putting it under the Cords, twine it ten or twelve times about, till the Horſe be conſtrain'd to lift up his Foot; then they cut the Cord and put a little Salt into the place. Others draw a Pottle of Blood from the Vein that deſcends on the inſide of the Leg, and after ſeven Days waſh him with Beef-Broth. Others again apply a Plaiſter of Muſtard, Aqua-Vitæ, and Sallet-Oil boil'd together.

And

And there are ſome Farriers that bathe the Horſe's Legs with the Grounds of Ale, and then rope them up with wet Hay-Ropes.

Of the Hungry-Evil.

IF a Horſe ſnatches at his Food greedily, as if he would eat a piece of the Manger, give him Milk mix'd with Wheat-Meal to drink, a Quart at a time, and feed him with Pr vender by little and little at a time.

Of the Stag-Evil, or Palſie in the Jaws.

SOmetimes a Horſe is taken with a Stiffneſs of the Neck and Jaws, ſo that he cannot move 'em, but turns up the Whites of his Eyes; and at uncertain Intervals of time is ſeiz'd with a Palpitation of the Heart, and beating of the Flanks. If this Diſeaſe be ſpread all over the Body, it uſually proves mortal. The ordinary cauſe, is the Horſe's being expos'd to the Cold after a great Heat. As for the cure; give him ſoftening Clyſters Morning and Evening, and let him Blood once in two Days, till you ſee ſome Signs of Amendment. Lay before him a little Bran, with a great quantity of Water, that it may be as thin as Broth. After the uſe of Clyſters and Bleeding, chafe the Neck and Jaws very hard with equal quantities of Spirit of Turpentine and Aqua-Vitæ, united by ſhaking. Two Hours after rub the ſame parts very hard with the Ointment of Marſh-mallows. Afterwards continue to apply Aqua-Vitæ in the Evening, and the ointment of Marſh-mallows in the Morning. If the Diſeaſe affects the whole

whole Body, give three or four good ſoftning Glyſters every Day; rub the Horſe's Veins with Ointment of Marſh-mallows and Spirit of Wine, and cover him with a Cloth dip'd in Lees of Wine heated, under his uſual Cloths.

Of Crepances.

THE Crepance is an Ulcer in the fore-part of the Foot, about an Inch above the Cronet, occaſion'd by a hurt receiv'd in leaping over a Bar or otherwiſe. Waſh it with warm Wine and Urine, and if 'tis accompanied with a Swelling or Inflammation, apply the White Honey-Charge. Black Soap with Spirit of Wine is a very effectual Remedy.

Of the Stones drawn into the Body.

IN a Stoppage of Urine, attended with an Inflammation of the Neck of the Bladder, ſometimes the Horſe's Stones are drawn into the Belly by the violent Contraction that the Pain occaſions. In this caſe all Diureticks muſt be avoided; and we muſt have recourſe to bleeding plentifully in the Flanks, ſoftning Clyſters, and the Inunction of the Sheath and Stones (after the Horſe is caſt) with an Oil made of Marſh-mallows, Linſeed, and Violet-leaves, boil'd in Oil-Olive, and then mix'd with Oil of Linſeed; and withal fomenting the parts with the warm Herbs. As ſoon as the Stones appear, tie 'em about with a ſoft Leathern Thong: After which make the Horſe riſe, and he will both ſtale and dung. In a deſperate caſe, exhibit an Ounce and an half of the Preparation of Antimony, call'd the Angelical Powder, made up into a Ball with Butter and White Wine.

Of

Of the Head-Ach.

HOrſes are ſometimes liable to Pains in the Head, occaſion'd by extream Heat or Cold, Blows or noiſome Smells. The Signs are, hanging down of the Head, dropping of his Urine, Dimneſs of Sight, ſwoll'n and wateriſh Eyes. For cure; make him ſneeze by Fumigation; then let him Blood in the Palate, keeping him faſting fourteen Hours after. This done, ſpurt into his Noſtrils Wine in which Euphorbium and Frankincenſe have been boil'd. Others adviſe to let him Blood three Mornings together, then walk him a while; and after that cloath him, and cover his Temples with a Plaiſter of Pitch. Let him eat but little, and ſtand in a dark Stable.

Of an Apoplexy or Palſie.

SOmetimes a Horſe will be ſo taken, either in the Neck, that he cannot put his Head down to the Ground, or in the After-parts, that he cannot riſe, the Sinews of his Flank being palpably hard. For cure; anoint his Neck with Oil of Peter, drying it in with a hot Iron, and then wind a little looſely about his Neck, from his Shoulders to his Ears, a Thumb band of the longeſt hotteſt Dunghil-Litter. If the Malady lies in the After-parts, lay him upon the Litter of a hot reeking Muckhil, after the parts are anointed, and lay a Cloth over that to keep it on, renewing it four times a Day.

Of

Of the falling of the Creſt, Mangineſs in the Mane, or the ſhedding of the Hair.

THeſe Diſeaſes proceed from Poverty or over-riding. Blood-letting and good keeping will certainly raiſe the Creſt. Anointing with Butter and Brimſtone will cure a Mangy-Mane. And the Application of the Aſhes of Southernwood mix'd with common Oil, will make the Hair ſmooth, thick, and fair.

Of a Canker in the Noſe, Mouth, or any other part of the Body.

TAKE equal Quantities of the Juice of Plantane, Vinegar, and Powder of Allom, and anoint the Sore twice or thrice a Day.

Of the Poll-Evil.

THE Poll-Evil ſo call'd from breeding in the Poll, behind the Ears, is a great Swelling or Inflammation, occaſion'd by a Bruiſe or Blow, or the Horſe's ſtruggling with a new Hempen Halter. There are ſome Poll-Evils in the Head, and ſome in the Neck: But for a general Cure, the following Remedy will ſerve; Shave off the Hair, and apply a Plaiſter of Black Shoemakers Wax, ſpread upon white allom'd Leather, till the Impoſthume breaks. Then apply a hot Pultis of White Wine, boiling hot, mix'd with the Lome of a Mud-Wall, Straws and all; renewing it once a Day till the Impoſthume is well.

For a Horſe burnt by a Mare, and for the Colt-Evil.

THIS is known by the Mattering of his Yard. For cure; Take a Pint of White Wine, in which boil a quarter of a Pound of Roch-Allom; and when it is cool, ſquirt it with a Syringe as far into his Yard as you can. If he ſheds Seed, give him every Morning a Ball of Turpentine and Sugar mix'd together. Some anoint the Yard with a Salve of the Powder of Avens, and Leaves of Betony ſtamp'd with White Wine.

To cauſe a Horſe to Piſs, for his Relief in ſome Cholicks.

PUT two Ounces of the Syrup of Dialthæa to a quarter of a Pound of Caſtile-Soap; beat 'em well together, make pretty big Balls, and diſſolve one of 'em in a Pint and a half of Strong Beer, ſcalding hot. When 'tis lukewarm, give it him in a Horn, and let him faſt an Hour after.

For a Horſe that Galls between the Legs, thro' Heat or ill Dreſſing.

TAKE a new Egg, cruſh it between his Legs, and rub the gall'd Places with it, after the Sores are wip'd.

To kill Lice.

TAke the Juice of Beets and Staves-acre, beaten together, and anoint the Body all over with it.

For a Horſe's Yard that is foul'd or furr'd without, ſo that he piſſes in his Sheath.

TAke freſh Butter and White Wine Vinegar, melt them, then pull out his Yard, take off the Filth, and waſh it with the Butter and Vinegar, injecting alſo ſome into his Yard.

Of the Stiffling.

A Horſe is ſaid to be Stiffled when the Stiffling-bone is out of its Place, ſo that it ſticks more out on the one Side than the other, and the Horſe dares only to touch the Ground with his Toe. For cure; ſet a Patton-ſhoe on his ſound Foot, and ſo turn him to Graſs; for that will compel him to tread upon his Lame Foot, and the ſtraining will recal the Stiffling-bone to its Place. Or ſwimming in a Mill-Pool or Pond, till he Sweats behind the Ears, will perfect the Cure; tho' ſwimming is improper for any other Strain but this. After the ſwimming lead him home cloath'd, and peg the oppoſite Foot as long as he ſtands in the Houſe: When he is dry, rub in an Ounce of the Oil of Turpentine, ſhak'd in a Glaſs with as much ſtrong Beer; tho' this makes it ſwell a little for the preſent, yet it proves an effectual and ſpeedy cure.

Schmit's

Schmit's *Ointment, very effectual in reſtoring the Hoof.*

TAke half a Pound of Roſin and a Pound of Oil Olive, melt them in a Copper Baſon tin'd; a quarter of an hour after the removal of the Veſſel from the Fire, add Maſtick and Olibanum in Powder, of each an Ounce and an half; ſtir the Ingredients together about half a quarter of an Hour, and then add half a Pound of common Turpentine, continuing to ſtir a little longer to incorporate the whole.

At the ſame time take half a Pound of Honey, and half a Pint of ſtrong Aqua-Vitæ, boil them gently till they begin to ſmoak, not forgetting to ſtir them; then add Verdigreaſe and Copperas, in very fine powder, of each three Ounces, ſtirring and boiling till all the ſubſtances be united; and as ſoon as the mixture is half cold, pour it into the firſt Baſon where the Oil is, which ought to be half cold alſo: Mix them together, and immediately add two Ounces of burnt Allum in fine Powder, one Ounce of Orpiment, ſtirring and mixing them with the reſt; and as ſoon as they are all incorporated, add Flower of Linſeed and Fenugreek, of each three Ounces, ſtirring the Maſs till it be almoſt cold; at laſt add two Ounces of Aloes in fine Powder, ſtirring till it be incorporated with the reſt of the Ointment, which will then be compleated, and muſt be kept in a Pot. Its colour is not much different from that of *Ægyptiacum.*

This Ointment cleanſes, reſiſts Corruption, heals and makes a fine Cicatrice; and this alone may ſerve to cleanſe the greateſt Wounds, to ſeparate a Felander, or any other extraneous Body, and draw them out of a Sore; mix the Ointment with an

equal quantity of Sugar, and apply it cold with a Bolſter of Flax. The ſame Application is convenient when one of the quarters of the Hoof is cut away.

Since the Hoof does not always fall quite away at once, but by degrees, and uſually after conſiderable Intervals; you muſt apply this Ointment cold to all the ſore and raw Parts; and if the Fleſh grow too faſt, or appear frothy, burn the higheſt part of it, and then apply the Ointment.

This Ointment alſo is very proper for Wounds in the Withers, and in all other parts of the Body, for it keeps them very clean, and prevents a Gangrene.

Thoſe who carry Trains of Horſes to the Army, or travel with a great number of Horſes, ſhould always make proviſion of a ſufficient quantity of this Ointment. And if Farriers had it in their Shops, they would daily make new Diſcoveries of its Virtues, and lay aſide the uſe of the *Unguentum Apoſtolorum*, and all drying Powders. The Application of this Ointment, after the uſe of an actual or potential Cautery, and after the Scabs are fall'n off, is a preſent Remedy for all Quitterbones, whether they proceed from outward or inward Cauſes.

It may be called an excellent kind of *Ægyptiacum*, and very effectually reſtores and ſtrengthens the Sole, when the ſuperfluous moiſture of the Fleſh hinders its growth.

You may cure watry or running Sores in young Coach-Horſes, by ſhaving off the Hair, and applying this Ointment daily. The ſame may be alſo uſed in the Cure of Pricks or Stubs; but there are other Ointments more effectual in that caſe.

Neat-

Neat-Herd's Ointment for the Mange.

TAke burnt Allum and Borax in fine Powder, of each two Ounces; White Vitriol and Verdigreaſe beaten to a very fine Powder, of each four Ounces; put them into a very clean Pot, with two pounds of Honey, and boil them over a clear Fire, ſtirring all the Subſtances together till they be well incorporated. After the Ointment is cold, add two Ounces of ſtrong *Aqua-fortis*, keep it well cover'd for uſe, ſtirring it once a Day, during the firſt ſix Days. One Application, or two at moſt, will perform the Cure; but you muſt take care that the Horſe may not be able to reach it with his Teeth. If his Tail be Mangy, you muſt firſt ſcrape the place.

Sometimes this Ointment, when it is laid on thick, makes the Skin fall off like Scales, but without any danger, for the Scab may be eaſily ſeparated by anointing it with Tallow; after which the Horſe is perfectly freed from the Mange, and even tho' the whole Cuticula, or Scurf-Skin fall off, it will come again with the Hair, rarely leaving any conſiderable Mark.

This Ointment is not only good for the Mange, but alſo for the Pains, running and watery Sores, foul Wounds and Ulcers, Arreſts, Mules, and other ſuch like Sores, which it dries up effectually; but it ought not to be apply'd when the Legs are ſwoll'n or gourdy; for after the drying up of the Sores, the Legs remain ſtill ſwoll'n and full of Humours, which will certainly break forth in ſome other part; and therefore the Humour muſt be firſt evacuated by the White Honey Charge, or ſome other convenient Remedy, and then dry'd up with this Ointment.

The ſame Remedy cures the Sores in the Urinary Paſſages of Oxen, that proceed from their being

naſtily kept, and heals Wounds in Horſes, but not without great Pain and Smarting. 'Tis a ſort of *Ægyptiacum*, of excellent uſe for the healing of foul Sores in the Feet, or any other part of the Horſe's Body. 'Tis ſtronger than the Counteſs's Ointment, but does not bind ſo effectually; and is not inferior to the beſt *Ægyptiacum*, for cleanſing Wounds and Sores, and conſuming corrupt Fleſh.

The Counteſs's Ointment, to heal and cloſe up the Sores occaſion'd by Impoſthumes in the hairy part of the Foot.

TAke half a pint of *Aqua-Vitæ*, and a pound of Honey, boil them over a very ſmall Fire, in a clean glaz'd Pot, ſtirring them with a Slice till the Honey be throughly heated and incorporated with the *Aqua-Vitæ*; then add Verdigreaſe, Gall, and *Venetian Borax*, of each two Ounces, ſtrain'd thro' a fine Searce, with two Ounces of White Vitriol beaten; boil them all together over a gentle Fire, ſtirring them till they be well incorporated, and keep the Ointment for uſe, in the ſame Pot, well cover'd.

Apply this Ointment cold, on a little Cotton or Flax; and, above that, charge the whole Foot with a white or black Reſtringent: Thus the Sore will be healed, and the Hoof faſten'd to the Skin, after the firſt or ſecond Application.

In this caſe, the main ſcope of the Cure ſhould be to ſtrengthen and bind the upper parts, or to drive the Matter downwards. This may be done by applying the Ointment above, with the Reſtringent Charge over it, and dreſſing the hole made in the Foot with the Vulnerary Water, the burning Balſam, or the Oil de Merville, or of Gabian.

The Duke's Ointment, proper for all ſorts of Swellings accompanied with Heat, or Inflammations.

TAke clear and pure Linſeed Oil, one Pound; Flowers of Brimſtone, four Ounces; put them into a Matraſs or Glaſs Vial with a long Neck, letting it ſtand in a moderate ſand heat for the ſpace of an hour; after which, augment the Heat, and keep it up to the ſame degree, till the Flowers be perfectly diſſolv'd. In the mean time, before the Oil grows cold, leſt part of the Brimſtone fall to the bottom, melt a Pound of Tallow, or of Boars-Greaſe, in another Veſſel, with two Ounces and an half of White-Wax; inſtead of which, if you can procure Horſe's Greaſe, the Remedy will be more effectual; but then you muſt take four Ounces of Wax, becauſe Horſe's Greaſe is not ſo thick as the Boar's Greaſe. The Greaſe and Wax being wholly melted, pour in the Linſeed Oil, and removing the Veſſel from the Fire, ſtir the Ointment with a ſlice of Alkanet-Root till it be cold.

It reſembles Ointment of Roſes; for the Brimſtone is ſo perfectly diſſolv'd, that you can hardly perceive it, otherwiſe than by the Smell. This Ointment is apply'd cold; it eaſes Pain, and aſſuages all ſorts of Swellings, Blows, Bruiſes, *&c.* in the Withers, Hams, Sheath, and other parts of the Body; provided it be applied for a conſiderable time.

The ſuppurative or ripening Ointment, call'd Baſilicum.

TAke Yellow-Wax, Sheep's-Suet, Roſin and Black-Pitch, of each half a Pound, cut them into ſmall pieces; then put five Pounds of Oil-Olive into a Baſon or Pot; ſet it over a pretty ſtrong Fire, and when the Oil is hot, add the other Ingredients; after they are wholly melted, ſtrain the Liquid Maſs through a piece of Canvaſs or coarſe Cloth, and then add a Pound of Turpentine, ſtirring it conſtantly till it be cold: So ſhall you have an excellent Suppurative; with which you may either chafe the Parts that you mean to ripen, or anoint the Tents with it, in order to digeſt and ripen the Matter.

The Liquid Cauſtick.

TAke the Spirits of Salt and Nitre, of each two Ounces; put them into a Matraſs, and after the ebullition is over, if any happen, add two Ounces of Quickſilver, and place the Matraſs in a moderate heat, till the Mercury be conſum'd or diſappear; then add two Drams of good Opium, and you will have an excellent Cauſtick, which muſt be kept in a Glaſs Phial.

The true Ointment of Montpelier.

TAke of the true Ointments of Roſes, Marſh-mallows, Populeum, and Honey, of each a Pound; mix them cold, and keep them in a Pot cloſe cover'd. This Ointment ſtrengthens without Heat, and is proper in all caſes where there is occaſion for Charges or Ointments. *Note*, The Ointment of Roſes is often adulterated, by taking Tallow, coloured red with Alkanet, and waſhing it in Roſe-Water, as well as that of Populeum, by adding Verdigreaſe, to give it a bright green colour, and ſo make it more ſaleable.

An excellent Powder for Purſive Horſes.

TAke three Pounds of Linſeed, and ſpread them in an Earthen Pan; put the Pan into an Oven, as ſoon as the Bread is taken out; ſhut the Oven, and ſtir the Seed in the Pan once every Hour. Continue after the ſame manner to put the Pan into the Oven, immediately after the Bread is taken out, till the Seeds grow dry and brittle, and all their moiſture be exhal'd. Then take two Pounds of Liquorice raſp'd, or rather a Pound of the black Juice of Liquorice, which is more effectual, and almoſt as cheap; Anniſeeds, half a Pound; Sage, and Leaves and Flowers of Hyſſop dry'd, of each half a Pound; Carduus Benedictus, and Leaves and Flowers of Leſſer Centaury, of each four Ounces; Leaves of Long Birthwort, two Ounces; Speedwel and Sanicle, of each two Handfuls; Roots of Elecampane, four Ounces; Comfrey, and Roots of Marſh-mallows, or Mallows, of each two Ounces; Gentian, half an Ounce; Miſletoe of the Oak, two Ounces; dry all

the Ingredients in the Shade, reduce each of them to Powder apart; mix them together carefully, and preſerve the Powder in a Leathern Bag cloſe ty'd. Give the Horſe every Morning two ſmall Silver Spoonfuls of this Powder in two Meaſures of moiſten'd Wheat Bran, making him faſt an Hour and an half after. At Noon and at Night mix a Spoonful with his Oats, which muſt be alſo moiſten'd; and in the mean time give him no Hay, but only good Wheat Straw. If the Horſe is not eas'd by a methodical uſe of this Remedy, you may conclude his Purſiveneſs to be incurable.

The End of the Appendix.

THE

TABLE.

A.

AGE, *how to know it while a Horſe hath Mark,* Page 14. *what is neceſſary to be kept in Memory for that end,* 15. *old Horſes labour, eat, and ſleep better than young ones,* 17. *how to know the Age of a Horſe that is paſt Mark, ſhell-tooth'd, or hollow-tooth'd, or countermark'd,* 17. *Signs of old* Age, 18, 19.
Agility, *ſee* Vigour.
Amble, *its true Motion and Difference from a Walk,* 189, 190.
Ambling, *how to know if a Horſe* ambles *well,* 61, 62. *the true and eaſieſt way to make a Horſe* amble, 175. Amble *and Trot, both prejudicial to Speed,* 158, 159.
Ambury, 362.
Anticor, 353.
Antimony, *its Analyſis,* 314.
Antimonial *Preparations,* 313. *Golden Sulphur of* Antimony, 316.
Apoplexy, 365.
Appetite, *how to know if a Horſe has a good* Appetite, 68. *a good Belly no certain Sign of a good* Appetite, 69. *how to preſerve it on a Journey,* 74, 75. Appetite *loſt,* 229.
Arched Legs, *an Imperfection in a Horſe,* 31. *why* Spaniſh *and* Barbary *Horſes are commonly* arch'd, 31. *how to ſhoe* arch'd *Horſes, ſee* Shoeing.
Arman *for a loſs of Appetite,* 230.
Arreſts, *ſee* Rat-tails.
Attaint, 275.
Ayres, *or artificial Motions of a Horſe deſcrib'd,* 191.

B.

BAck-*gall'd,* 229. *ſway'd,* 334.
Back-Sinew, *its beſt Shape,* 12. *in the Fore-leg it ſhould be large, firm, and ſeparate from the Flank-bone,* 31, 32.
The Bag *wherein the Foal came forth of its Mother's Belly, good againſt all Diſeaſes under ſix Years old,* 151.

The TABLE.

Balls *for Running Horſes*, 154. Markham's *Cordial* Balls *ſo much eſteem'd by all* Engliſh *Farriers*, 169. *Chewing* Balls *to retrieve the Appetite*, 231. *Cordial* Balls, 234, 237.
Balotade *deſcrib'd*, 192. *how to perform it*, 217.
Barbs, 227.
Barrs *deſcrib'd*, 2. *how they ſhould be ſhap'd*, 8. *if the* Barr *of the Mouth be hurt and heal'd up, 'tis a bad Sign*, 57.
A Bath *to preſerve a Horſe's Legs after a Journey*, 79. *a* Bath *to reſolve hard Humours*, 266.
Bay, *the moſt common of all Colours*, 63 *all* bay *Horſes have black Tails and Manes*, 63. *dappled* Bay *and dark* Bay, 63.
Beard, *its due Qualities*, 8.
Beating *upon the Hand, how to cure it*, 213.
Belly, *when well ſhap'd*, 11 *how to know if a Horſe has a good* Belly, 47. *ſome Horſes have the Shape of a Cow's* Belly, 48, 49. *how to recover a good* Belly, 48. *a Caution concerning* light belly'd *Horſes*, 48, 49. *how to cure* gaunt *or* light-belly'd *Horſes*, 362.
Bitt, *how to accommodate a Horſe with a* Bitt *proper for him*, 70, 135, 139. *light* Bitts *beſt upon a Journey*, 70. *a Deſcription of ſuch* Bitts *as are moſt in Uſe*, 136. *of the* Canon-Mouth *jointed in the middle*, 136. *of the* Canon *with a faſt Mouth*, 136. *of the* Canon *with a port Mouth*, 137. *of the* Canon-Mouth, *the Liberty after the Form of a Pigeon's Neck*, 137. *a* Scatch-Mouth *with an Upſet or mounting Liberty*, 137. *of a* Canon-Mouth, *the Liberty after Mr* Pignatel's *Faſhion*, 138. *gentle* Bitt-*mouths preferable to rude ones*, 138. *Horſes arm themſelves two ways againſt the Operation of the* Bitt, 143. *how to prevent their ſo doing*, 143.
Bitings *of mad Dogs and venemous Creatures*, 304. Bitings *of Mice*, 306. Bitings *of Serpents*, 307.
Blazes *divided in the middle croſs-ways, a Sign of an odd Diſpoſition*, 67.
Bleeding *at the Noſe or Mouth*, 246. *from a Wound*, 300. *after blood letting*, 229.
Bleymes, *what it is, and how it comes*, 99, 119. *how cur'd*, 355.
Blindneſs *abſolute, how diſcern'd*, 24, 25. *how occaſion'd in Foals by eating Oats*, 151.
Blood *ſtak'd*, 258. *Ebullition of the* Blood, 327. Blood-*running Itch*, 327.
Blooding *profitable in many Diſeaſes*, 128. *ſix Reaſons for* letting-blood, 128. *the Inconveniences of* letting-blood, 129. *what Parts of the Body 'tis proper to* bleed *in, and upon what Occaſions*, 129, 130. *Precautions to be obſerv'd in* Blood-letting, 131. *how to ſtop the exceſſive* Bleeding *when a Horſe is* bled *in the Palate*, 130. *how to adjuſt the Quantity and Quality of* Blood, 132, 133.
Blows, 267, 268.
Body, *how to know if a Horſe has a good* Body, 47. *a* light-body'd *Horſe that's fiery, quickly deſtroys himſelf*, 48.
Bones *broken*, 263.

Botts, 233.
Bran *wet, good for lean Horſes*, 81. *ſcalded* Bran *good after Bleeding*, 131. Bran *inſtead of Oats proper before and after Bleeding*, 132.
Branches *of a Bridle*, 139. *rude and gentle* Branches *and their Effects*, 139, 140. *how to diſcover what* Branch *is proper for a Horſe* 140. *a ſtrait* Branch *like a Piſtol*, 140. *a* Branch *after the Conſtable of* France's *Faſhion*, 140. *a* Branch *after the Form of a Gigot or Leg*, 140. *a* Branch *after the Form of a bent Knee, proper for Horſes which arm themſelves againſt the Operation of the Bitt*, 141. *a* Branch *after the* French *Faſhion proper to raiſe a Horſe's Head*, 142. *another* Branch *hardy for the ſame purpoſe*, 142. *a* Branch *more hardy to bring in a Horſe's Head*, 143. *another* Branch *more hardy than the preceding*, 143. *what* Branches *are moſt proper for ſlender Necks and tender Mouths*, 144. *how to know a rude* Branch *from a gentle one*, 144.
Bread *made of Barley and Beans proper for Racers*, 153. *Nothing is more apt to ſurfeit a Horſe than new* Bread, 162. Bread *to be given to a running Horſe in the ſecond Fortnight's Feeding*, 162.
Breaſt-plate, *its due Length and Situation*, 71.
Breath *ſhort*, 309.
Of Breeding, *and how to raiſe a good and beautiful Race of Horſes*, 145. *the Duke of* Newcaſtle, *the beſt Author upon that Subject*, 144.
Brittle *Fore-feet ſhould be anointed upon a Journey*, 77.
Burning *by a Mare, ſee* Colt-Evil.
Burſtenneſs, 338.

C.

CAlkins *ſpoil the Feet*, 119. *but are convenient in time of Froſt*, 119, 120 Calkins *faſhion'd like the Point of a Hare's Ear, not very dangerous*, 87, 120. *great ſquare* Calkins *are the worſt*, 87, 120.
Canker *in any part of the Body, how cur'd*, 366.
Canon, *ſee* Bit.
Capelet, *what it is*, 35.
Capriole, *an artificial Motion*, 192. *how to perform it*, 216.
Cavezon, *how to fix it*, 194, 195. *ſee* Inward Rein.
Perpetual Cauſtick, 349, *Liquid* Cauſtick, 374.
Champing *on the Bitt, a Token of a good Horſe*, 58.
Channel *deſcrib'd*, 2. *its beſt Shapes*, 8.
Cheſt-foundering, *its Cauſes and difference from Furſineſs*, 52.
Cheſt-foundering, 309.
Chain, *a good* Chain *makes a thick-headed Horſe light on the Hand*, 187.
Chops *or Cracks in the Legs*, 346.
Chryſtal *of the Eye, when faulty*, 22.
Cinnabar *Pills for Wounds*, 294
Circles, *the firſt riding of a Horſe upon Circles*, 194.
Clay *blue, good to recover a Horſe's Feet*, 79, 80.

Clefts *in the Legs*, 346.
Closed behind, *an Imperfection in the Hams*, 34.
Coach, *some Horses not proper for a* Coach, 30, 48. *a Caution to be observ'd in buying them*, 48. *the first shoeing of* Coach-*Horses is of Consequence*, 97.
Cods *inflam'd or swell'd*, 337.
Coffin *describ'd*, 3. Coffin-bone *describ'd*, 4. *its falling down disfigures the Foot*, 118.
Cold, *a great Enemy to Horses*, 150.
Cold *with a Cough*, 235. *with a beating in the Flanks*, 235, 236.
Cholick *in general*, 255, 256. *a* Cholick *from over-feeding*, 250. *Wind* Cholick, 251. Cholick *from a glassy Phlegm*, 252. *Worm* Cholick, 254. Cholick *from a suppression of Urine*, 256.
Colour, *Observations upon the different Colours of Horses*, 63.
Colts *of one's own Breed not to be made use of for Stallions*, 149. *when to separate 'em from the Fillies*, 152.
Colt-Evil *cur'd*, 367.
Cooling *Medicines to be cautiously used*, 315, 322.
A Cord *or hollow along the Ribbs, a forerunner of Pursiness*, 50. Cords *cur'd*, 362.
Corner Teeth *describ'd*, 2. *the Age known by them*, 3.
Coronet *describ'd*, 3. *how it should be shaped*, 12. *Ulcers in the* Coronet, 46.
Corvet, *what Motion it is*, 192. *how to make* Corvets *strait forwards, all along a Wall*, 211, 212. Corvets *side-ways*, 213. Corvets *backwards*, 214. Corvets *upon the Volts*, 214. *the Cross and Saraban upon* Corvets, 215. *how to change upon* Corvets, 225. *very dull or very fiery Horses improper for* Corvets, 216.
Couch, *how to make a Horse couch upon his out-side*, 207.
Cow-dung *softens the Sole*, 77. *but spoils the Hoof*, 79.
Cough *in Foals*, 151.
Cough, 307.
Countermark'd, *see* Age.
Cramp, *how cur'd*, 361.
Crapandine, *what it is*, 46. *how cur'd*, 364.
Crescents, *what they are*, 118.
Crest *fallen, its Cure*, 366.
Crocus Metallorum, 312.
Crown Scab, *(both moist and dry) seldom cur'd*, 34. Crown-Scab, 286.
Croup, *a Horse's* Croup *too much subjected by Circles*, 202. Croup *put too much out, or too much in, how corrected*, 205, 206. Croup, *how it should be shaped*, 11. *what a Rocking* Croup *is*, 55.
Croupade, *what it is*, 192. *how to perform it*, 217.
Crupper, *when and how to use it*, 71.
Curb, *what it is*, 35. *large* Curbs, 139. *how to cure* Curbs, 357.
Cut, *see* Interfere.

Dark,

D.

DArk, *the* darker *you keep a running Horſe the better*, 160.
Deer-colour, 65.
Lieutenants Decoction, 311.
Demy-ayre *or* Demy-volt, *what it is*, 191. *how to change upon* Demy-volts, 209.
A Detergent *for a Gangrene*, 299.
Diſunited Legs, *how to put to rights*, 191.
Dock-piece, *how to manage it upon a Journey*, 71.
Dragon, *or white Spot in the bottom of the Eye*, 85.
Drench, *how to prepare and exhibit a* Drench, 125.
Drinking *ſoon after hard riding pernicious*, 76.
Driving *muſically*, *what it is*, *deſcribed*, 23.
Dull, *a Sign of a dull lazy Horſe*, 61.
Dung *of a Horſe to be obſerv'd upon a Journey*, 78. *moiſten'd* Dung *good for a Horſe's Fore feet after ſhoeing*, 88, 92, 95, 96, 103, 109. *ſlimy and viſcous* Dung *ſhews that a running Horſe is not duly prepared*, 155.
Duſt *upon a Journey dries a Horſe's Mouth, and ſpoils his Appetite*, 74.

E.

EArs, *when well ſhap'd*, 5.
Eel-back'd *Horſes*, 65.
Electuary *of Kermes*, 233.
Emetick *Wine*, 241, 314.
Ermin'd *white Feet a good Mark*, 67.
Eſſence *of Vipers*, 251.
Eye, *how it ſhould be ſhap'd*, 6. *how to judge truly of a Horſe's* Eyes, 22. *how to know* Moon-Eyes, 23. *what Colours are moſt ſubject to weak* Eyes, 25. *what time Horſes are moſt ſubject to a weakneſs of Sight*, 25. *ſome vulgar Errors about the trying of a Horſe's* Eyes, 25. *the* Eye-pits *hollow, a Mark of old Age*, 6. *unleſs the Horſes be got by old Stallions*, 20.
Eyes, *their Diſeaſes*, 242. *Rheums*, 242, 243. *Inflammations*, 244. *Blows or Hurts*, 244. *Films*, 245. *weeping* Eyes, 244, Moon-Eye, 245.
Eye-*water*, 243. *a cheap* Eye-*water*, 243.

F.

FAlls, 334. Falling *of the Fundament*, 343. Falling *upon the Ground or in the Water corrected*, 180.
Farcy *occaſion'd by exceſſive feeding after a Journey*, 81.
Farcin *recent*, *how cur'd*, 325. *inveterate*, 326.
Faults *in Horſes*, *how diſcover'd*, 26.
Feather *in the Forehead a good Sign*, 51, 67. *as alſo upon the Ply of the hind Thigh*, 67.
Feeding, *ſee* Running *Horſes*.
Feet, *how to know a Horſe's* Feet, 41. *fat* Feet *hard to diſtinguiſh*, 42. *weak* Feet, *what it is*, 44. *too long* Feet *are bad*, 45. *foun-der'd* Feet *grow ſtill worſe*, 47. White Feet, *ſee* White. Feet *to be*

be prick'd upon a Journey, and ſtop'd over night with Cow-dung, 77. *what is meant by tender* Feet, 78. Flat Feet, *ſee* Shoeing. *Large* Feet *apteſt to be ſpoil'd,* 98. Feet, *their Diſorders,* 280. Feet *waſted or ſhrunk,* 288, 289.

Fevers, 327. Fevers *from foundering,* 310.

Figs *on the inſide of the Jaw-bone not dangerous,* 27. Figs *on the Fruſh what they are,* 39. *how to know if a Horſe has had 'em,* 39.

Fillets *deſcrib'd,* 3.

Fire, *the only Remedy for an Ox-ſpavin and Jardon,* 37. *'tis profitable to* ſhe Hoof *upon many Occaſions,* 43. Fire, *how to give it,* 269.

Flanks *deſcrib'd,* 3. *their due Form,* 11. *when a Horſe has no* Flanks, 47. *how to know when his* Flanks *are out of Order,* 49.

Flexible *Joints the chief Quality of a Horſe of manage,* 30, 31.

Foal, *how long a Mare goes with* Foal, *and which is the moſt proper time to* foal *here in* England, 146. *at what time* Foals *are to be wean'd, and how order'd,* 150.

Foal Teeth, 2.

Food, *dry, contributes much to the Beauty of Horſes,* 152, 153.

Foot, *its Parts deſcrib'd,* 3. *when it ought to have a Star,* 5. *its Heel ought to be large and open,* 42. *it ought neither to be too fat, nor too ſmall,* 46, 47.

Forehead, *how beſt ſhap'd,* 15.

Fore legs, *how they ſhould be ſhap'd,* 12.

Formes, *what they are,* 34. *they are an uncommon but dangerous Imperfection,* 34.

Foundering, *Obſtructions in the Lungs occaſion'd by* Foundering, 309. *Fevers occaſion'd by it,* 310.

Foundering, *how to prevent it after hard riding,* 80. *a Horſe* founder'd *in the Feet, ſhould neither have his Toes pared, nor his Heels much taken down,* 119.

Fret, *ſee* Cholick.

Froth *in the Mouth a good Sign,* 9, 58. *eſpecially if it be white and thick,* 58.

Fruſh *or* Frog *deſcrib'd,* 3. *how it ſhould be ſhap'd,* 13. *it ought to be par'd flat,* 101.

Fruſh *ſcab'd,* 285.

Fund, *ſee* Source.

Fundament *fallen down,* 343.

Fuzies *dangerous,* 33.

G.

GAlling *of a Horſe's Back on a Journey, how prevented and cur'd,* 76. Galling *between the Legs cur'd,* 368.

Galls *on the Back,* 299. *Saddle* Gall, 292. *Harneſs* Galls, 300.

Gallop, *its true Motion,* 190, 191. Galloping *before blood-letting unſeaſonable,* 132. Galloping *as ſoon as the Horſe comes out of the Water prejudicial,* 159.

Gangrene, 298.

Gatherers, *the Uſe and Diviſion,* 2.

Geldings *not ſo eaſily reduc'd from ſome Tricks, as Stone Horſes*, 59.
Giddineſs, 260.
Glanders, 239.
Glanders *rarely cur'd*, 27.
A Glyſter *for Coſtiveneſs in Running-Horſes*, 156.
Glyſters *always beneficial*, 125, 126. *they ought to be given in a large Quantity*, 126. *Purgative* Glyſters *ſhould not be fat*, 126. *How and with what Precautions to give* Glyſters, 126, 127. Glyſters *for a Cold with a Beating of the Flanks*, 236. *for Bleedings*, 247. *for the Vives*, 249. *a purging* Glyſter *for Fevers*, 323. *a cooling* Glyſter *for Fevers*, 323. *a ſcouring* Glyſter, 341. *a binding* Glyſter, 342.
Go, *how to know if a Horſe goes well*, 55. *a vulgar Miſtake concerning it*, 55, 56.
Going *back upon a ſtrait Line, how taught*, 199. *going back in a Circle*, 199.
Graſs *good for young Horſes if they are not purſy*, 81. May Graſs *purges by ſoftning and ſoaking the Humours*, 122.
Gray colour, 66. *Fleabitten* Gray, *Horſes of that Colour commonly good*, 66. Gray *Horſes become white when they grow old*, 21. *branded* Gray, *light or ſilver'd* Gray, *and ſad or powder'd* Gray, 63. *black, brownish, and dapple* Gray, 64. *Iron colour'd* Gray, 66.
Grinders *deſcrib'd*, 2.
Gripes, *ſee* Cholick.

H.

HÆmorrhagy, 246.
Hair-ſhedding *cur'd*, 366. *Sores in the* Hairy *part of the Foot*, 373.
Halt, *a Sign of halting*, 54.
Halter *caſt*, 352.
Ham *deſcrib'd*, 4. *how it ſhould be ſhap'd*, 13. *the Imperfection 'tis liable to*, 34 &c.
Hand, *how to correct a Horſe that's hard in the* Hand, 194. Hand *has the Preheminence of the Spur*, 223.
Harneſs *Galls*, 300.
Haunches, *when they are of a juſt Length*, 56.
Head, *when well ſhap'd*, 4. Headach, 365.
Heats, *ſee* Running Horſes.
Heavy, *a Sign of a Horſe that's heavy on the* Hand, 61.
Heel, *its beſt Shape*, 13. Kib'd Heels, *ſee* Mules Traverſe. *Low* Heels, *how diſtinguiſh'd*, 42. *narrow* Heels, 45. *one ſide of the* Heel *higher than the other, a Fault*, 45. Heel *Nails to be drawn after a Journey, and why*, 78, 79. Heels *are not to be par'd*, 82, 84. Low Heels, *ſee* Shoeing. Narrow Heels *ſee* Hoof-bound. *Taking down the* Heels *prevents Hoof-bound and Bleyms*, 99. *it helps the bending of the Paſtern*, 113. *and Arched Legs*, 115. *and treading on the Toes on the hind Feet*, 116. *how to help unequal* Heels, 109. Heels *ſcab'd*, 285.

Heels, *how to make a Horſe obedient to the* Heels, 200.
Hind-leg, *its Parts deſcrib'd*, 4. *what are its beſt Shapes*, 13. *a Weakneſs in the* Hind-leg *that is not in the Fore*, 40.
Hips *ſtrain'd or wrench'd*, 261.
Hoof *deſcrib'd*, 3. *its Shape and good Qualities*, 13. *how to diſtinguiſh a bad* Hoof, 41. Hoof-bound, 44, 288. *its Cauſes*, 99. Hoofs, *their Diſorders*, 280, 370. *thin*-hoof'd *Horſes muſt reſt after they are ſhod*, 42. *ſome Clefts in the* Hoof *dangerous*, 42. *Its good and bad Qualities*, 41. *its Thickneſs*, 85. Hoof-Salve, *ſee* Ointment. Hoof-Salve *good for flat Feet*, 91. *the Horn of the* Hoof *follows the Form of the Shoe*, 100.
Honey *Charge white*, 350.
Honey *Charge red*, 262.
Horſes *yield Profit and Pleaſure*, 1. *the Names of the Parts of a* Horſe, 1, 2, &c. *the due Shape of the Parts*, 4, &c. *how to know if a* Horſe *be well bodied*, 47. *two neceſſary Qualities in a good* Horſe, 60.
Hough-bonny, *how to cure it*, 360.
Hunting *Horſes, how to chuſe 'em*, 62.
Hurts *of all ſorts*, 290.
Hydrocele *or Cods fill'd with Water*, 337.

I.

JArdon *more dangerous than the* Spavin, 37. Jardon *and* Spavin, *joyn'd by a Circle or hereditary, incurable*, 37. *they are more to be fear'd in young Horſes than in old*, 37. *their Cure*, 358.
Jaw-bones, *their due Shape*, 6. *the Sharpneſs of the nether* Jaw-bone *a Sign of old Age*, 20. *good diſtance between the* Jaw-bones *contributes to the goodneſs of the Mouth*, 6.
Inceſt, *no ſuch thing among Horſes*, 149.
Inflammations, *a Cure for 'em*, 373.
Infuſions *ſimple will not purge Horſes*, 123. *how to make 'em purgative and exhibit them*, 125.
Injection *for promoting an Evacuation by the Noſe in the Strangles*, 235. *for the Glanders*, 239, 240.
Inſtep *deſcrib'd*, 4. *its due Qualities*, 13, 14.
Interfere, *four things occaſion it*, 120. *how to ſhoe* Interfering *Horſes*, 120.
Inward Rein *of the Cavezon ty'd to the Girths, or pull'd low, is excellent for Galloping or Trotting upon Circles of one Tread, and for Corvets upon Circles*, 203. *ty'd to the Pommel of the Saddle, or pull'd high, it works his Croup, and is moſt proper for* terra a terra, 204. *how ſtrait it ſhould be ty'd either to Pommel or Girths*, 205.
Journey, *how to preſerve Horſes ſound upon a* Journey, 70. *how to order them in the beginning of a* Journey, 72. *ſhort Marches beſt in the beginning of a* Journey, 72. *how to manage a Horſe when you come to your Inn*, 73. *how to preſerve a Horſe after a* Journey, 78. *how to recover Horſes that are harraſs'd and lean after a long* Journey, 80.
Itch, *blood-running*, 327.

K.

KErnels, *loose and moving between the Jawbones*, 26. *fix'd* Kernels, 27. Knee, *its best shape*, 12.

L.

LAmpas, 226. Lapis infernalis, 349. Lapis mirabilis, 295. Lean Horses *fatten'd*, 318. Leanness *occasion'd by Fatigue, how to remedy it*, 80. Leek-heads *of two sorts*, 38, 39.
Legs, *the Proportion of their Length to that of the Body*, 14. *sometimes they are as long at a Year old as ever, but not always*, 14. *how to know when they are good*, 28. *three Marks of bad* Legs, 29, 30, 31. *broad and fat* Legs *are best*, 31. *other Imperfections in the* Legs, 31. &c. *to* 40. *what is meant by making Use of the fifth* Leg, 70. *how to keep the* Legs *from swelling after a Journey*, 79. *how to recover the* Legs *going from the Knee to the Coronet in a strait Line*, 10, 11, &c. *how to help arched* Legs, 115. *how to help broken* Legs, 263. *tir'd, stiff, decay'd* Legs, 264, 265. *swell'd or gourdy*, 266.
Lice *kill'd*, 368.
Limbs, *how to know when a Horse is well planted on his* Limbs, 53.
Lime-water, 295. Line *of the Banquet, what it is*, 139.
Lips *ought to be thin and little*, 8.
Listenings *proper in Running*, 155.
Litter *fresh makes a Horse stale*, 73.
Long haunch'd *Horses good to climb up Hills*, 56.
Long jointed, *Imperfection in a Horse*, 29. Lungs *obstructed*, 309.
Lying down *after Riding, proceeds oftentimes from Pains in the Feet*, 77. *a Horse must be so tied that he may lie down easily*, 78.

M.

MAle, *how to make a Mare conceive with a* Male *Foal*, 145. Madness *occasion'd by bitings*, 304.
Malenders *describ'd*, 53. Malenders, 270.
Manage, 287. Manage, *the due Age and Stature of a Horse design'd for the* Manage, 187. *no Exercise more violent for a Horse than the* Manage, 188. *if a Horse's Shoulders be not very easy and supple, he is uncapable of the* Manage, 196, 197.
Mane, *how it should be shap'd*, 9. *mangy* Mane *cur'd*, 366.
Mange, 371.
Mares *should not piss often on a Journey*, 72. *after a long Journey, 'tis proper to giv 'em Horses*, 81. *when and in what manner a* Mare *should be cover'd*, 145. *how to prepare a* Mare *for the Stallion*, 148. *what* Mare *to make choice of for Breeding*, 149.
Mark, *see* Age.
Mash *proper after blood-letting and other Indispositions*, 131.
Matter *running from the Nostrils, how to judge of it*, 27, 28.
Mettle, *wherein true* Mettle *consists*, 48. *the difference between high* Mettle *and Fierinss*, 59.
Middle Teeth *or* Separators, 2. *the Age is known by them*, 3.
Molten-Grease, 328. *a Scouring to bring it away*, 166.

Ointment of Montpelier *good to make the back Sinews of the Legs ſtretch the more eaſily*, 110.
Mount, *after what manner a Man ſhould mount and try a Horſe he intends to buy*, 60.
Mouſe-colour'd *or* Dun *Horſes, the dark with black* Extremities *are moſt ſerviceable*, 65.
Mouth, *its parts deſcrib'd*, 2. *its beſt ſhape*, 7. *how to know if the* Mouth *be good*, 57.
Mules, *what Shoes are uſed for them*, 113, 116. Mules Traverſe, *what Conſequence they are of*, 39. Mules *in the Legs*, 345.
A Muſcle *near the Plat-vein, the Inciſion of which rectifies the Situation of the Paſtern, and cures arched Legs*, 111, 112, 115.
Muzzle, *its beſt ſhapes*, 7. *the uſe of* Muzzles, *and which are the beſt*, 163.

N.

NAils, *the thin and ſmall are beſt for ſhoeing*, 82. *Directions for the driving of* Nails, 85. *what is to be done before they are riveted*, 85. *what is to be done when the Rivets looſen, and appear more above the Hoof*, 86.
Narrow-cheſted *Horſes have a bad Body, and breath with* Difficulty, 47, 48.
Neck, *when well ſhap'd*, 9. Deer-Necks *deſcrib'd*, 9.
Nippers, *Teeth ſo call'd*, 2. Noſtrils, *their beſt Shapes*, 7.

O.

OAts *given in great Quantity over-heat the Horſe*, 69. *eating 'em heartily, is no certain Sign of a good Appetite*, 69. *they ſhould be given both before and after watering upon a Journey*, 75. *a Horſe ſhould be left alone when he eats his* Oats, 77. *how to prevent his eating of 'em too greedily*, 77.
Oil *of Bays ſcalding hot good for the Feet*, 80, 108, 119. Oil Carminative *for* Glyſters, 252. Oil de Merveille, 284. Oil *of Earthworms*, 264, 265. *An excellent purging* Oil, 253.
Ointment Ægyptiacum, 295, 296. Ointment Baſilicum, 374. Ointment *of Beetles, or black* May-*worms*, 272. Ointment *Coachman's*, 348. Ointment *Conneſtable's*, 281. Ointment *Counteſs's*, 373. Ointment *Duke's*, 373. Ointment *Earthworms*, 264, 265. Ointment *to make the Fleſh grow*, 296. Ointment *Hermite's for Wounds*, 297. Ointment *for the* Hoof, 280. Ointment *Mercurial*, 351. Ointment Montpelier, 375. Ointment *Neathard's*, 371. Ointment *of* Oldenburg, 347. Ointment *for Rheums in the Eyes*, 244. Ointment Schmit's, 369. Ointment *for Strains in the Shoulders or Hips*, 261, 263. Ointment *for the Strangles*, 233. Ointment *for watery Sores*, 347.
Opening *a Horſe's Heels after the common way pernicious*, 82, 100. *how to open 'em when the Sole is taken out*, 105, 106.
Oſſelets, *a dangerous Imperfection in a Horſe's Legs*, 37.
Orvietan, 250.
Overpaſſing *the Tread of the Fore-feet with the hind, a good Mark for ambling, but not for walking*, 56.

Over-reaches, *or* Calkin-treads, 42. *how to help* over-reaching, 117. Over-reach, 275, 276.
Ox legs, *what it is*, 32. Ox-feet, *what it is*, 46.

P

PAces, *Shuffling and mixt* Paces *an ill Sign*, 62. *the natural* Paces *of a Horſe*, 189.
Pains *in the hinder Quarters cauſe light Bellies*, 48,49. Pains *in the Legs*, 346. Pain *in the Feet diſtinguiſh'd from Sickneſs*, 77.
Palate *deſcrib'd*, 2. *Its due ſhape*, 8. *its Dryneſs a Sign of old Age, eſpecially in Mares*, 21. *how to ſtop a Bleeding in the* Palate 130.
Palpitation *of the Heart*, 319, 320. Palpitation *from an exceſſive Heat*, 321. *of cold* Palpitation, 321.
Panton ſhoes, *good for narrow and low Heels*, 45, 88, 103. *and to hinder the Sole to grow downwards*, 92. *and why*, 92, 93. *they are good for* Flanders *Mares, before their Feet are bad*, 93, 95. *how to be forg'd*, 94, 102. *half* Panton-ſhoes, 100, 101, 107. *how to be forg'd and fitted*, 107, 108. *why* Panton-ſhoes *help Hoof-binding*, 104.
Pare *the Feet, ſee* Shoeing.
Paſſades, *how perform'd*, 219. *how perform'd upon a full Career*, 220. Paſſading *with half Steps moſt proper for Combats*, 220, 221.
Paſſaging, *how perform'd*, 220, 221. Paſſaging *along a Wall*, 201. Paſſaging *upon Circles*, 201. 202. Paſſaging *the Croup is excellent to make a Horſe obey the Hand and Heel*, 205.
Paſtern *deſcrib'd*, 3. *It's due Shape*, 12. *long and flexible* Paſterns, *a great Imperfection*, 29. *how to help* Paſterns *caſt forwards*, 111, 113.
Paſtern *Joint deſcrib'd*, 3. *when it is ſaid to be crown'd*, 30. Paſtern *Joint ſwell'd or gourded*, 275. Paſtern *Veins to be barr'd, and how*, 89, 90. Peach-flower, *ſee* Bloſſom.
Peſate, *what it is*, 210, *without it a Horſe can never go well in any Ayre, tho' it is not to be taught at firſt riding*, 210.
Pills, *how to make up and adminiſter* Pills *to a Horſe*, 125. Pills *of* Cinnabar *for Wounds*, 294. Engliſh Pills *for an old Cough*, 308. *Stinking* Pills, 330, 331. *Stomach* Pills, 232.
Pillars, *putting a Horſe between* Pillars *after he can riſe eaſily is very pernicious*, 210, 211. *a new Invention to dreſs Horſes upon all Ayres, by the help of one ſingle* Pillar, 221.
Pinching, *what it is*, 58.
Piroyte, *its true Motions*, 218. *how to aſſiſt it*, 219.
Plaiſter *Univerſal for all Swellings*, 244. Planted, *when a Horſe is right* planted, 29, 53. Plat-vein, 111. *how to ſtop its Bleeding*, 113. Poll-Evil. 366. Potion *purging and comforting*, 317.
An Univerſal Cordial Powder, 236. Powder *of Sympathy*, 296, 297. Powder *of Worms*, 333. *An excellent* Powder *for purſive Horſes*, 375.
Pricks *in the Feet with Stubs or Nails in ſhoeing, or in the Streets*, 282. *A reſolving* Pultis *for the Glanders*, 239. *a general* Pultis *for all Swellings*, 274. *a* Pultis *for the Hoof-bound*, 289.

Of Purging, 122. Purging *not to be attempted without great Neceſſity*, 122. *ſome Remedies are rather Laxative than true* Purgatives, 123. Purgatives *ought to be given in Subſtance*, 123. *when to purge a Horſe*, 123, 124. *how to prepare a Horſe for Purgation*, 124. *how to manage him while the Purge is in his Belly*, 124. *how to order after Purgation*, 124.

A ſafe Purge *that does not heat the Body*, 324.

Purſiveneſs, *its Forerunners*, 50. *how to form a juſt Judgment of it*, 50. *it may be occaſion'd by a Horſe's not being brought in Wind before he covers*, 146. Purſiveneſs *cur'd*, 309, 375.

Pye-bald *Horſes*, 64. *the leſs white they have the better*. 64.

Q.

QUarters *deſcrib'd*, 3. *Imperfections incident to the Hind-quarters*, 34. *falſe* Quarters, *what they are*, 42, 107. *Cleſts in the* Quarters, *ſee* Seyms. Quarter *behind*, 82. Quarters *ſhrunk*, 289.

Quitter-bones, 293, 294.

R.

RAiſing *of the Legs, when good*, 54. Raiſe *a Horſe's Head, ſee* Branch.

Rattails, *what they are*, 38. *Coach-Horſes of a large ſize moſt ſubject to them*, 38. Rattails, 345.

Reaving *an end, how cur'd*, 180.

Reins, *when well ſhap'd*, 11. Reins *ſwell'd*, 304.

A Remedy *for Rheums in the Eyes*, 242. *for the Vives*, 248, 249. *for the Cholick*, 256. *for provoking Urine*, 257. *againſt a ſtaling of Blood*, 259. *to ſtanch Blood*, 300. *A* Remedy *infallible for Madneſs occaſion'd by biting*, 305.

A Remolade *for a Blow*, 267, 268. *for the Hoof-bound*, 289.

A Reſtrictive *for flat Feet and round Soles*, 90, 91, 94.

Reſty *Horſes, how to manage 'em*, 179, 180. Reſty *Jades to be rejected*, 59.

Ribs, *their due Form*, 11. Ring-bone, 278.

Ripening *Ointment, ſee* Baſilicum.

Riſing *before, the laſt thing a Horſe ſhould be taught*, 196, 199.

Rivets, *ſee* Nails.

Roan, *a good Colour*, 64. *its ſeveral Kinds*, 64.

Rubbing *a Horſe's Legs with hard Straw, is good when he is cold*, 74. *but very pernicious immediately upon his being put into the Stable*, 73.

Rubican, *a mixt Colour*, 65.

Rude *Motions in a Horſe to be oppos'd*, 194.

Running *Horſes, how to chuſe 'em*, 153, 157. *the ancient Method of preparing them*, 153. *the Duty of the Rider upon a Race*, 156. *the modern way of preparing* Running *Horſes*, 157. *the time requir'd for Preparation*, 157. *the firſt Fortnights Feeding of an Horſe, who is foul, or newly taken from the Graſs*, 158. *the ſecond Fortnights Feeding*, 161. *the firſt Bread*, 162. *what Muzles are beſt for Race-Horſes*, 163. *ſome things to be obſerv'd in giving of Heats*, 164. *two excellent Scourings, either of which may be given after a Heat*, 166. *how to order him after the Scouring*, 167. *the third Fortnight's Feeding*, 169. *the ſecond Bread*, 169. *how and in what*

what Caſes to exhibit Markham's *Cordial Balls*, 169, 170. *the fourth and laſt Fortnight's Feeding*, 170. *ſome uſeful Obſervations while a Horſe is preparing for a Match*, 173.
A Rupture, 338.

S.

SAddle, *how to know if it reſts equally upon the Horſe's Back*, 70. *the moſt proper Stuffing for* Saddles, 71. *how to contrive their ſhape*, 71. Saddle *Gall*, 292.
Sal Polychreſt *for Horſes*, 315. *for Men*, 316.
Scouring, *ſee* Running Horſes.
Scratches, 277. Scratches *ſometimes take away a Horſe's Belly*, 49.
Seat *of a Man on Horſeback*, 193.
The Secret *of raiſing fine Horſes in cold Countries*, 152.
Seeling, *a certain Sign of old Age*, 21.
Selenders, *what they are, and when to be fear'd*, 37. Selenders, 270.
Senſe, *the difference between Ticklishneſs and a quick Senſe*, 59.
Sevil *and* Sevil-hole, 139, &c.
Seymes, *incident to hoof-bound Horſes, and from what Cauſes*, 45, 46. *how to know 'em*, 46. *how to help 'em*, 107, 108, 109, 356.
Shaking *of the Head and Ears corrected*, 179. Shank *deſcrib'd*, 3.
Sharp *things purge*, 123.
Shell-tooth, *ſee* Age.
Shoes *ſhould be put on ſome days before a Journey*, 70. *how to know upon a Journey whether they reſt upon a Horſe's Soles*, 77. *the Art of ſhoeing all ſorts of Feet*, 81. *four Rules to be obſerv'd in ſhoeing*, 82. *the lighteſt* Shoes *are the beſt*, 85. *thick* Shoes *are ſooneſt loſt*, 83. *how to pare the Feet, fit the* Shoes, *and drive the Nails*, 83. *how to* ſhoe *Horſes that have low Heels*, 86. *how to* ſhoe *low and narrow Heels*, 86, 87, *how to keep a large and fat Fruſh from touching the Ground*, 87. *how to* ſhoe *Heels low and narrow near the* Shoe, *though the Fruſh be large*, 87, 88. *how Heels with a large Fruſh cannot be helped by* ſhoeing, 88. *how to* ſhoe *flat Feet and high and round Soles*, 89. *vaulted and hollow* Shoes *pernicious*, 90, 93, 94, 95. ſhoeing *at the change of the Moon cauſeth the Hoofs to grow*, 91, 92. 104. Panton-ſhoes, *ſee* Pantons. *How to* ſhoe *hoof-bound Horſes*, 98. *how to* ſhoe *a hoof-bound Horſe before a Journey*, 104, 105. *how to* ſhoe *a hoof-bound Horſe that halts to the Ground*, 105. *how to* ſhoe *Horſes that have falſe Quarters*, 107. *how to* ſhoe *Horſes whoſe Fore-Legs from the Knee to the Coronets go in a ſtrait Line, and thoſe whoſe Paſtern Joints bend too far forwards*, 110. *how to* ſhoe *Horſes which have arch'd Legs*, 115. Plaunche Shoes *made uſe of for Mules*, 115, 116. *how to* ſhoe *Horſes that tread only on the Toes of their hind Feet, and ſuch as ſtumble*, 116. *how to ſhoe an Horſe that overreaches*, 117. *how to* ſhoe *Horſes that have been founder'd in the Feet*, 119. *how to* ſhoe *Horſes which cut or interfere*, 120.
Short-jointed *Horſes apt to become ſtrait upon their Members*, 30.
Shoulders, *how they ſhould be ſhap'd*, 10. Shoulders *of a Horſe, how ſuppl'd*, 194. *how to bring in the outward* Shoulder, 196.
Shoulders *wrench'd, ſplait, or ſtrain'd*, 261.

Signs

Signs *of Sickneſs in Horſes*, 225.
Sinew *over-ſtretch'd*, 361. Sitfaſt, 292.
Skittiſh *Horſes how to manage 'em*, 181.
Small Snaffles *beſt for Running Horſes*, 156.
Sole *of the Foot deſcrib'd*, 3. *when well-ſhap'd*, 13. *Crown'd* Soles, *what they are*, 44. *upon thin weak* Soles *the Shoe muſt not reſt*, 85. Soles *round and high, ſee* Shoeing. *the* Soles *of halting Hoof-bound Horſes muſt be taken out*, 105, 106.
Sores, *watery in the Legs*, 346.
Sorrel *Horſes, moſt of 'em are good*, 64. *unleſs their Flanks are pale, and their Extremities white*, 65. *the difference of* Sorrels *conſiſts in the Colour of the Manes and Tails*, 64.
Sow-backs *deſcrib'd*, 48.
Source *or* Fund, *what it is*, 63.
Spaniſh *Horſes not the beſt Stallions*, 145.
Spavin, *what it is*, 36. Ox-Spavin *not eaſily perceiveable*, 36. Dry-Spavin *oftentimes degenerates into the* Ox-Spavin, 37. *a Cure for both*, 359, 360.
A Specifick *for all Cholicks*, 255, 256.
Splents, *what they are*, 32. *Pin'd*-Splents, 32. *a* Splent *joining to the Knee lames a Horſe*, 33. *Double* Splents *dangerous*, 35. Splents, 271.
Spunge *of the Heel, what it is*, 84. *it muſt neither be too long nor too ſhort*, ibid. *how they are to be placed*, ibid. *if great and thick they ſpoil the Heel*, 88.
A Sponge *to keep Wounds open*, 293.
Spurs, *Obedience to the* Spurs *a neceſſary Quality of a good Horſe*, 60. *Diſobedience to them a ſign of a croſs dogged Nature*, 359. *Bloſſom-colour'd Horſes rarely obey 'em*, 64. *how to make a Horſe anſwer the* Spurs *exactly*, 200. Spur *uſed as a help when a Horſe ſlacks upon* terra à terra, *or obeys not the outward Leg enough*, 223. Spurs *a Correction for many things, if uſed with Diſcretion*, 223. *but given out of time they make Horſes reſty and vicious*, 224.
Stag-Evil, 363. Staggers, 259.
Staling *often to be encourag'd in Horſes, but not in Mares*, 72. *moſt good Horſes* ſtale *when they are firſt put into the Stable*, 73.
Staling *of Blood*, 258.
Stallion, *what Horſes are fitteſt for* Stallions, 145. *how to order a* Stallion, 146. *the* Stallion *and Mare ought to feed alike*, 147. *the Age of a* Stallion, 148. Stallion *Colour*, 64.
Stars *in the Forehead, a good Mark in Horſes that are not white or gray*, 68. *how to know when they are made by Art*, ibid. *the way of making them*, ibid. Starting *remedied*, 179.
Stay *of the Legs, when good*, 54. *A* Steel *Medicine for Worms*, 333.
Step *and Leap, its motion*, 192. *how to perform it*, 217.
Stiffle *deſcrib'd*, 4. Stiffling *cur'd*, 368.
Stirrup-leathers, *how to prevent their galling of the Horſe's ſides*, 71, 72.
Stomach-Skins *bred in the* Stomachs *of Foals, occaſioning a Cough, how cur'd*, 151. Stones

Stones *ſwell'd*, 336. *Eruis'd or hard*, 339. Stones *drawn into the Body*, 364
Stopping *of a Horſe, how to be done*, 198. *how to ſtop upon a Trot or Gallop*, 211. *Stopping upon a Gallop dangerous, before a Horſe be accuſtomed to ſtop upon a Walk or Trot*, 200.
Straight, *when a Horſe is ſaid to be* ſtraight *upon his Members*, 28, 29.
Strains, 261.
Straitning, *or cloſing too much, how to prevent it*, 195.
Strangles, 232.
Straw, *cut and mixt with Oats, wholeſome Food*, 81.
Stringhalt, *its cure*, 358. Stubs *in the Foot*, 282.
Swaying *of the Back*, 334.
Swellings *on the Back occaſion'd by the Saddle, how diſcover'd and cur'd*, 76. Swellings *on the Legs*, 266. *Hard* Swellings *of long ſtanding*, ibid. Swellings *following ill-cur'd Sinew Strains*, 268. Swellings *incurable by common Remedies*, 269. Swellings *occaſion'd by Blows*, 267. 268. Swellings *in the Withers*, 302, 303. Swellings *on the Reins or Back*, 304. Swellings *in the Legs occaſion'd by watry Sores*, 348, 351.
Sulphur *of Antimony, Golden*, 316.
Super-purgation, 343. Surbated *Feet*, 281.
Sympathy *Powder*, 277, 296.
Syringe *better to give Glyſters with, than a Horn*, 127.

T.

TAil, *its due Qualities*, 12. *Its Joynts, no certain ſign of old Age*, 20.
Taſte, *how to judge of Blood by its* Taſte, 134.
Teeth, *their diviſion and number*, 2. *A Mare has fewer than a Horſe*, 3.
Teignes, *what it is, and how it comes*, 101.
Terra à Terra, *what motion it is*, 191. *The true method to make a Horſe go* Terra à Terra, 206. *The ſquare preferable to a Circle for* Terra à Terra, 208. *The Bridle-hand muſt be low, and not high for* Terra à Terra, 208. *How to change hands upon* Terra à Terra, 209.
Thigh *or Gaskin deſcrib'd*, 4. *When well ſhap'd*, 13.
Tick, *what it is*, 69. Tiger-*colour*, 65.
Toe, *treading only on the* Hind-Toes *to be remedied by methodical Shoeing*, 41. Toe *before, and Quarter behind, a Rule in Shoeing*, 82.
Tongue, *how it ſhould be ſhap'd*, 7.
Tramel *for Ambling, the form of it*, 175. Travel, *See* Journey.
Tread, *when good*, 54. *ſee* Toe. Trot, *its true motion*, 190.
Truncheons, 333. Tumors, *See* Swellings.
Tuſhes *deſcrib'd*, 2. *Mares ſeldom have any*, ibid.
Tyr'd *Horſes*, 317.

U.

URine, *its immoderate Flux*, 257. *its Stoppage*, 368.
Variſſe, *an imperfection in the Hams*, 35, 36.
Vertigon, *deſcrib'd*, 35.
Vices *in Horſes, how prevented and remedy'd*, 179.

Vigour, *how to judge of*, 58.
Vives, 248.

W.

WAlk, *the true motion of a Horſe's Legs upon his Walk*, 189. Walks, *how to know when a Horſe* walks *well*, 55. *What it is to* walk *lightly, ſurely, quickly and eaſily*, 55. Walking *a Horſe after he has taken a Glyſter, unſeaſonable*, 127.
Warts, *See* Leek-heads *and* Figs. Warts *in the Legs*, 345.
An Excellent Water *for Pains and Warts*, 348.
Water, *when good and proper to be given on a Journey*, 72. Watering *Courſes are pernicious*, ibid. *In* Watering *a Horſe's Draught ſhould be interrupted ſeveral times*, ibid. *Whether a Horſe ſhould be watered before or after his Oats*, 74, 75. *What Water is beſt, and how to correct the ſharpneſs of ſome Waters*, 75.
Waters *or Humors in the Legs return after apparent diſcuſſion*, 40. *In Winter their Cure is difficult*, ibid.
Watery *Sores in the Legs*, 346.
Weaning, *See* Foals.
Wet *upon the Ears and Neck very prejudicial to Race-Horſes*, 165.
Wheat-ſheaves *unthreſh'd, a proper Food for Running-Horſes*, 153.
Wheezing, *different from Purſineſs*, 51.
White *Horſes black about the Eyes and Noſtrils ſome of 'em very good*, 66. White *Feet, Obſervations drawn from them*, ibid. *Ermin'd* White *Feet, an excellent Mark*, 67.
Winching, *how to remedy it*, 179.
Windgalls, 270, 274. Windgalls, *a ſign that a Horſe's Legs have been too much us'd*, 32. *If they have any coherence with the Nerves, they are incurable*, 40.
Winter, *warm houſing in* Winter *contributes much to the beauty of a Horſe*, 152, 153.
Withers *deſcrib'd*, 3. *Their due ſhape*, 9, 10. Withers *hurt*, 301.
Wolf-colour, *of two kinds*, 65.
Wolves-Teeth, 227.
Worms, 333.
Wounds *of all ſorts*, 299.
Wounds *preceded by Tumors*, 301.
Wounds *in the Mouth*, 228, 229.
Wrenches *or* Strains, 261.
Wry-neck'd *Horſes how corrected*, 179.

Y.

YArd *foul or ſurr'd, a cure for it*, 368.
Yellow *Water*, 295.
Young *Horſes not ſo ſubject to tread on the Toes of their Hind-feet as old ones*, 116. Young *Horſes are not fit for the Manage*, 188. *They ſhould never be much preſs'd to any thing*, 211.

The End of the Table.